

**INDOLE, AZAINDOLE AND RELATED HETEROCYCLIC 4-ALKENYL
PIPERIDINE AMIDES**

REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application Serial
5 Number 60/383,509 filed May 28, 2002.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention provides compounds having drug and bio-affecting
properties, their pharmaceutical compositions and method of use. In particular, the
10 invention is concerned with new piperidine 4-alkenyl derivatives that possess unique
antiviral activity. More particularly, the present invention relates to compounds
useful for the treatment of HIV and AIDS.

BACKGROUND ART

15

HIV-1 (human immunodeficiency virus -1) infection remains a major medical
problem, with an estimated 42 million people infected worldwide at the end of 2002.
The number of cases of HIV and AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome) has
risen rapidly. In 2002, ~5.0 million new infections were reported, and 3.1 million
20 people died from AIDS. Currently available drugs for the treatment of HIV include
nine nucleoside reverse transcriptase (RT) inhibitors or approved single pill
combinations (zidovudine or AZT (or Retrovir[®]), didanosine (or Videx[®]), stavudine
(or Zerit[®]), lamivudine (or 3TC or Epivir[®]), zalcitabine (or DDC or Hivid[®]),
abacavir succinate (or Ziagen[®]), Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate salt (or Viread[®]),
25 Combivir[®] (contains 3TC plus AZT), Trizivir[®] (contains abacavir, lamivudine, and
zidovudine); three non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors: nevirapine (or
Viramune[®]), delavirdine (or Rescriptor[®]) and efavirenz (or Sustiva[®]), and seven
peptidomimetic protease inhibitors or approved formulations: saquinavir, indinavir,

ritonavir, nelfinavir, amprenavir, lopinavir, and Kaletra[®] (lopinavir and Ritonavir). Each of these drugs can only transiently restrain viral replication if used alone. However, when used in combination, these drugs have a profound effect on viremia and disease progression. In fact, significant reductions in death rates among AIDS
5 patients have been recently documented as a consequence of the widespread application of combination therapy. However, despite these impressive results, 30 to 50% of patients ultimately fail combination drug therapies. Insufficient drug potency, non-compliance, restricted tissue penetration and drug-specific limitations within
10 certain cell types (e.g. most nucleoside analogs cannot be phosphorylated in resting cells) may account for the incomplete suppression of sensitive viruses. Furthermore, the high replication rate and rapid turnover of HIV-1 combined with the frequent incorporation of mutations, leads to the appearance of drug-resistant variants and treatment failures when sub-optimal drug concentrations are present (Larder and
Kemp; Gulick; Kuritzkes; Morris-Jones *et al*; Schinazi *et al*; Vacca and Condra;
15 Flexner; Berkhout and Ren *et al*; (Ref. 6-14)). Therefore, novel anti-HIV agents exhibiting distinct resistance patterns, and favorable pharmacokinetic as well as safety profiles are needed to provide more treatment options.

Currently marketed HIV-1 drugs are dominated by either nucleoside reverse
20 transcriptase inhibitors or peptidomimetic protease inhibitors. Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs) have recently gained an increasingly important role in the therapy of HIV infections (Pedersen & Pedersen, Ref 15). At least 30 different classes of NNRTI have been described in the literature (De Clercq, Ref. 16) and several NNRTIs have been evaluated in clinical trials.
25 Dipyridodiazepinone (nevirapine), benzoxazinone (efavirenz) and bis(heteroaryl) piperazine derivatives (delavirdine) have been approved for clinical use. However, the major drawback to the development and application of NNRTIs is the propensity for rapid emergence of drug resistant strains, both in tissue cell culture and in treated individuals, particularly those subject to monotherapy. As a consequence, there is
30 considerable interest in the identification of NNRTIs less prone to the development of resistance (Pedersen & Pedersen, Ref 15). A recent overview of non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors: perspectives on novel therapeutic compounds and strategies for the treatment of HIV infection. has appeared (Buckheit, reference 99).

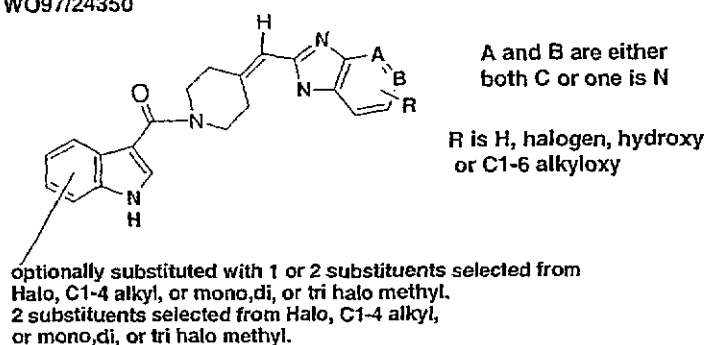
A review covering both NRTI and NNRTIs has appeared (De clerq, reference 100). An overview of the current state of the HIV drugs has been published (De clerq, reference 101)

5 Several indole derivatives including indole-3-sulfones, piperazino indoles, pyrazino indoles, and 5H-indolo[3,2-b][1,5]benzothiazepine derivatives have been reported as HIV-1 reverse transcriptase inhibitors (Greenlee et al, Ref. 1; Williams et al, Ref. 2; Romero et al, Ref. 3; Font et al, Ref. 17; Romero et al, Ref. 18; Young et al, Ref. 19; Genin et al, Ref. 20; Silvestri et al, Ref. 21). Indole 2-carboxamides have
10 also been described as inhibitors of cell adhesion and HIV infection (Boschelli et al, US 5,424,329, Ref. 4). 3-substituted indole natural products (Semicochliodinol A and B, didemethylasterriquinone and isocochliodinol) were disclosed as inhibitors of HIV-1 protease (Fredenhagen et al, Ref. 22).

15 Structurally related aza-indole amide derivatives have been disclosed previously (Kato et al, Ref. 23; Levacher et al, Ref. 24; Dompe Spa, WO-09504742, Ref. 5(a); SmithKline Beecham PLC, WO-09611929, Ref. 5(b); Schering Corp., US-05023265, Ref. 5(c)). However, these structures differ from those claimed herein in that they are aza-indole mono-amide rather than unsymmetrical aza-indole piperidine
20 4-alkenyl derivatives, and there is no mention of the use of these compounds for treating viral infections, particularly HIV. Indole and azaindole piperazine containing derivatives have been disclosed in three different PCT and issued U.S. patent applications (Reference 93-95, 106) Those compounds describe oxo acetyl substituted piperazine amides. None of these applications discloses piperidine
25 alkenyl compounds such as described in this invention. The selection of the group attached to the oxoacetyl moiety is critical for the activity of the compounds and only certain groups provide compounds which exhibit useful levels of antiviral potency and drug like properties.

30 A PCT application WO 97/24350 describes Tachychin antagonists some of which are similar in structure to a very minor portion of the structures in this application:

Part of Claims in WO97/24350



These compounds are outside the scope of claims for this invention.

- 5 Nothing in these references can be construed to disclose or suggest the novel compounds of this invention and their use to inhibit HIV infection.

REFERENCES CITED

10 Patent documents

1. Greenlee, W.J.; Srinivasan, P.C. Indole reverse transcriptase inhibitors. U.S. Patent 5,124,327.
- 15 2. Williams, T.M.; Ciccarone, T.M.; Saari, W. S.; Wai, J.S.; Greenlee, W.J.; Balani, S.K.; Goldman, M.E.; Theohrides, A.D. Indoles as inhibitors of HIV reverse transcriptase. European Patent 530907.
3. Romero, D.L.; Thomas, R.C.; Preparation of substituted indoles as anti-AIDS
20 pharmaceuticals. PCT WO 93 / 01181.
4. Boschelli, D.H.; Connor, D.T.; Unangst, P.C. Indole-2-carboxamides as inhibitors of cell adhesion. U.S. Patent 5,424,329.
- 25 5. (a) Mantovanini, M.; Melillo, G.; Daffonchio, L. Tryptyl 7-azaindol-3-ylcarboxyamides as antitussive agents. PCT WO 95/04742 (Dompe Spa). (b) Cassidy, F.; Hughes, I.; Rahman, S.; Hunter, D. J. Bisheteroaryl-carbonyl and

carboxamide derivatives with 5HT 2C/2B antagonists activity. PCT WO 96/11929.
(c) Scherlock, M. H.; Tom, W. C. Substituted 1*H*-pyrrolopyridine-3-carboxamides.
U. S. Patent 5,023,265.

5 Other Publications

6. Larder, B.A.; Kemp, S.D. Multiple mutations in the HIV-1 reverse
transcriptase confer high-level resistance to zidovudine (AZT). *Science*, **1989**,
246,1155-1158.
- 10 7. Gulick, R.M. Current antiretroviral therapy: An overview. *Quality of Life
Research*, **1997**, 6, 471-474.
8. Kuritzkes, D.R. HIV resistance to current therapies. *Antiviral Therapy*, **1997**,
15 2 (Supplement 3), 61-67.
9. Morris-Jones, S.; Moyle, G.; Easterbrook, P.J. Antiretroviral therapies in
HIV-1 infection. *Expert Opinion on Investigational Drugs*, **1997**, 6(8),1049-1061.
- 20 10. Schinazi, R.F.; Larder, B.A.; Mellors, J.W. Mutations in retroviral genes
associated with drug resistance. *International Antiviral News*, **1997**, 5,129-142,.
11. Vacca, J.P.; Condra, J.H. Clinically effective HIV-1 protease inhibitors.
Drug Discovery Today, **1997**, 2, 261-272.
- 25 12. Flexner, D. HIV-protease inhibitors. *Drug Therapy*, **1998**, 338, 1281-1292.
13. Berkhout, B. HIV-1 evolution under pressure of protease inhibitors: Climbing
the stairs of viral fitness. *J. Biomed. Sci.*, **1999**, 6, 298-305.
- 30 14. Ren, S.; Lien, E. J. Development of HIV protease inhibitors: A survey.
Prog. Drug Res., **1998**, 51, 1-31.

15. Pedersen, O.S.; Pedersen, E.B. Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors: the NNRTI boom. *Antiviral Chem. Chemother.* **1999**, *10*, 285-314.

16. (a) De Clercq, E. The role of non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors
 5 (NNRTIs) in the therapy of HIV-1 infection. *Antiviral Research*, **1998**, *38*, 153-179.
 (b) De Clercq, E. Perspectives of non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs) in the therapy of HIV infection. *IL Farmaco*, **1999**, *54*, 26-45.

17. Font, M.; Monge, A.; Cuartero, A.; Elorriaga, A.; Martinez-Irujo, J.J.;
 10 Alberdi, E.; Santiago, E.; Prieto, I.; Lasarte, J.J.; Sarobe, P. and Borrás, F. Indoles and pyrazino[4,5-*b*]indoles as nonnucleoside analog inhibitors of HIV-1 reverse transcriptase. *Eur. J. Med. Chem.*, **1995**, *30*, 963-971.

18. Romero, D.L.; Morge, R.A.; Genin, M.J.; Biles, C.; Busso, M.; Resnick, L.;
 15 Althaus, I.W.; Reusser, F.; Thomas, R.C and Tarpley, W.G.
 Bis(heteroaryl)piperazine (BHAP) reverse transcriptase inhibitors: structure-activity relationships of novel substituted indole analogues and the identification of 1-[(5-methanesulfonamido 1*H* indol 2-yl) carbonyl] 4-[2-[1-methyl-ethyl)amino]pyridinyl]piperazine momomethansulfonate (U-90152S), a second generation clinical
 20 candidate. *J. Med. Chem.*, **1993**, *36*, 1505-1508.

19. Young, S.D.; Amblard, M.C.; Britcher, S.F.; Grey, V.E.; Tran, L.O.; Lumma, W.C.; Huff, J.R.; Schleif, W.A.; Emini, E.E.; O'Brien, J.A.; Pettibone, D.J. 2-
 25 Heterocyclic indole-3-sulfones as inhibitors of HIV-reverse transcriptase. *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, **1995**, *5*, 491-496.

20. Genin, M.J.; Poel, T.J.; Yagi, Y.; Biles, C.; Althaus, I.; Keiser, B.J.; Kopta, L.A.; Friis, J.M.; Reusser, F.; Adams, W.J.; Olmsted, R.A.; Voorman, R.L.; Thomas, R.C. and Romero, D.L. Synthesis and bioactivity of novel bis(heteroaryl)piperazine
 30 (BHAP) reverse transcriptase inhibitors: structure-activity relationships and increased metabolic stability of novel substituted pyridine analogs. *J. Med. Chem.*, **1996**, *39*, 5267-5275.

21. Silvestri, R.; Artico, M.; Bruno, B.; Massa, S.; Novellino, E.; Greco, G.; Marongiu, M.E.; Pani, A.; De Montis, A and La Colla, P. Synthesis and biological evaluation of 5*H*-indolo[3,2-*b*][1,5]benzothiazepine derivatives, designed as conformationally constrained analogues of the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 reverse transcriptase inhibitor L-737,126. *Antiviral Chem. Chemother.* **1998**, *9*, 139-148.
22. Fredenhagen, A.; Petersen, F.; Tintelnot-Blomley, M.; Rosel, J.; Mett, H and Hug, P. J. Semicochlodinol A and B: Inhibitors of HIV-1 protease and EGF-R protein Tyrosine Kinase related to Asterriquinones produced by the fungus *Chrysosporium nardarium*. *Antibiotics*, **1997**, *50*, 395-401.
23. Kato, M.; Ito, K.; Nishino, S.; Yamakuni, H.; Takasugi, H. New 5-HT₃ (Serotonin-3) receptor antagonists. IV. Synthesis and structure-activity relationships of azabicycloalkaneacetamide derivatives. *Chem. Pharm. Bull.*, **1995**, *43*, 1351-1357.
24. Levacher, V.; Benoit, R.; Duflos, J.; Dupas, G.; Bourguignon, J.; Queguiner, G. Broadening the scope of NADH models by using chiral and non chiral pyrrolo [2,3-*b*] pyridine derivatives. *Tetrahedron*, **1991**, *47*, 429-440.
25. Shadrina, L.P.; Dormidontov, Yu.P.; Ponomarev, V.G.; Lapkin, I.I. Reactions of organomagnesium derivatives of 7-aza- and benzoindoles with diethyl oxalate and the reactivity of ethoxalylindoles. *Khim. Geterotsikl. Soedin.*, **1987**, 1206-1209.
26. Sycheva, T.V.; Rubtsov, N.M.; Sheinker, Yu.N.; Yakhontov, L.N. Some reactions of 5-cyano-6-chloro-7-azaindoles and lactam-lactim tautomerism in 5-cyano-6-hydroxy-7-azaindolines. *Khim. Geterotsikl. Soedin.*, **1987**, 100-106.
27. (a) Desai, M.; Watthey, J.W.H.; Zuckerman, M. A convenient preparation of 1-aroypiperazines. *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.*, **1976**, *8*, 85-86. (b) Adamczyk, M.; Fino, J.R. Synthesis of procainamide metabolites. N-acetyl desethylprocainamide and desethylprocainamide. *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **1996**, *28*, 470-474. (c) Rossen,

- K.; Weissman, S.A.; Sager, J.; Reamer, R.A.; Askin, D.; Volante, R.P.; Reider, P.J. Asymmetric Hydrogenation of tetrahydropyrazines: Synthesis of (*S*)-piperazine 2-tert-butylcarboxamide, an intermediate in the preparation of the HIV protease inhibitor Indinavir. *Tetrahedron Lett.*, **1995**, *36*, 6419-6422. (d) Wang, T.; Zhang, Z.; Meanwell, N.A. Benzoylation of Dianions: Preparation of mono-Benzoylated Symmetric Secondary Diamines. *J. Org. Chem.*, **1999**, *64*, 7661-7662.
28. Li, H.; Jiang, X.; Ye, Y.-H.; Fan, C.; Romoff, T.; Goodman, M. 3-(Diethoxyphosphoryloxy)-1,2,3-benzotriazin-4(3*H*)-one (DEPBT): A new coupling reagent with remarkable resistance to racemization. *Organic Lett.*, **1999**, *1*, 91-93.
29. Harada, N.; Kawaguchi, T.; Inoue, I.; Ohashi, M.; Oda, K.; Hashiyama, T.; Tsujihara, K. Synthesis and antitumor activity of quaternary salts of 2-(2'-oxoalkoxy)-9-hydroxyellipticines. *Chem. Pharm. Bull.*, **1997**, *45*, 134-137.
30. Schneller, S. W.; Luo, J.-K. Synthesis of 4-amino-1*H*-pyrrolo[2,3-*b*]pyridine (1,7-Dideazaadenine) and 1*H*-pyrrolo[2,3-*b*]pyridin-4-ol (1,7-Dideazahypoxanthine). *J. Org. Chem.*, **1998**, *45*, 4045-4048.
31. Shiotani, S.; Tanigochi, K. Furopyridines. XXII [1]. Elaboration of the C-substituents *alpha* to the heteronitrogen atom of furo[2,3-*b*]-, -[3,2-*b*]-, -[2,3-*c*]- and -[3,2-*c*]pyridine. *J. Het. Chem.*, **1997**, *34*, 901-907.
32. Minakata, S.; Komatsu, M.; Ohshiro, Y. Regioselective functionalization of 1*H*-pyrrolo[2,3-*b*]pyridine via its N-oxide. *Synthesis*, **1992**, 661-663.
33. Klemm, L. H.; Hartling, R. Chemistry of thienopyridines. XXIV. Two transformations of thieno[2,3-*b*]pyridine 7-oxide (1). *J. Het. Chem.*, **1976**, *13*, 1197-1200.
34. Antonini, I.; Claudi, F.; Cristalli, G.; Franchetti, P.; Crifantini, M.; Martelli, S. Synthesis of 4-amino-1- β -D-ribofuranosyl-1*H*-pyrrolo[2,3-*b*]pyridine (1-

- Deazatubercidin) as a potential antitumor agent. *J. Med. Chem.*, **1982**, *25*, 1258-1261.
35. (a) Regnouf De Vains, J.B.; Papet, A.L.; Marsura, A. New symmetric and
5 unsymmetric polyfunctionalized 2,2'-bipyridines. *J. Het. Chem.*, **1994**, *31*, 1069-1077. (b) Miura, Y.; Yoshida, M.; Hamana, M. Synthesis of 2,3-fused quinolines from 3-substituted quinoline 1-oxides. Part II, *Heterocycles*, **1993**, *36*, 1005-1016. (c) Profft, V.E.; Rolle, W. Uber 4-merkaptoverbindungendes 2-methylpyridins. *J. Prakt. Chem.*, **1960**, *283* (11), 22-34.
- 10 36. Nesi, R.; Giomi, D.; Turchi, S.; Tedeschi, P.; Ponticelli, F. A new one step synthetic approach to the isoxazolo[4,5-*b*]pyridine system. *Synth. Comm.*, **1992**, *22*, 2349-2355.
- 15 37. (a) Walser, A.; Zenchoff, G.; Fryer, R.L. Quinazolines and 1,4-benzodiazepines. 75. 7-Hydroxyaminobenzodiazepines and derivatives. *J. Med. Chem.*, **1976**, *19*, 1378-1381. (b) Barker, G.; Ellis, G.P. Benzopyrone. Part I. 6-Amino- and 6-hydroxy-2-substituted chromones. *J. Chem. Soc.*, **1970**, 2230-2233.
- 20 38. Ayyangar, N.R.; Lahoti, R J.; Daniel, T. An alternate synthesis of 3,4-diaminobenzophenone and mebendazole. *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.*, **1991**, *23*, 627-631.
39. Mahadevan, I.; Rasmussen, M. Ambident heterocyclic reactivity: The alkylation of pyrrolopyridines (azaindoles, diazaindenes). *Tetrahedron*, **1993**, *49*,
25 7337-7352.
40. Chen, B.K.; Saksela, K.; Andino, R.; Baltimore, D. Distinct modes of human immunodeficiency type 1 proviral latency revealed by superinfection of nonproductively infected cell lines with recombinant luciferase-encoding viruses. *J.*
30 *Viol.*, **1994**, *68*, 654-660.
41. Bodanszky, M.; Bodanszky, A. "The Practice of Peptide Synthesis" 2nd Ed., Springer-Verlag: Berlin Heidelberg, Germany, **1994**.

42. Albericio, F. *et al. J. Org. Chem.* **1998**, *63*, 9678.
43. Knorr, R. *et al. Tetrahedron Lett.* **1989**, *30*, 1927.
- 5 44. (a) Jaszay Z. M. *et al. Synth. Commun.*, **1998** *28*, 2761 and references cited therein; (b) Bernasconi, S. *et al. Synthesis*, **1980**, 385.
45. (a) Jaszay Z. M. *et al. Synthesis*, **1989**, 745 and references cited therein; (b) Nicolaou, K. C. *et al. Angew. Chem. Int. Ed.* **1999**, *38*, 1669.
- 10 46. Ooi, T. *et al. Synlett.* **1999**, 729.
47. Ford, R. E. *et al. J. Med. Chem.* **1986**, *29*, 538.
48. (a) Yeung, K.-S. *et al.* Bristol-Myers Squibb Unpublished Results. (b) Wang,
15 W. *et al. Tetrahedron Lett.* **1999**, *40*, 2501.
49. Brook, M. A. *et al. Synthesis*, **1983**, 201.
50. Yamazaki, N. *et al. Tetrahedron Lett.* **1972**, 5047.
- 20 51. Barry A. Bunin "The Combinatorial Index" 1998 Academic Press, San Diego / London pages 78-82.
52. Richard C. Larock Comprehensive Organic Transformations 2nd Ed. 1999,
25 John Wiley and Sons New York.
53. M.D. Mullican *et al. J. Med. Chem.* **1991**, *34*, 2186-2194.
54. Protective groups in organic synthesis 3rd ed. / Theodora W. Greene and
30 Peter G.M. Wuts. New York : Wiley, 1999.
55. Katritzky, Alan R. Lagowski, Jeanne M. The principles of heterocyclic Chemistry New York : Academic Press, 1968

56. Paquette, Leo A. Principles of modern heterocyclic chemistry New York : Benjamin.
57. Katritzky, Alan R.; Rees, Charles W.; Comprehensive heterocyclic chemistry: the structure, reactions, synthesis, and uses of heterocyclic compounds 1st ed. Oxford (Oxfordshire) ; New York : Pergamon Press, 1984. 8 v.
58. Katritzky, Alan R. Handbook of heterocyclic 1st ed Oxford (Oxfordshire); New York : Pergamon Press, 1985.
59. Davies, David I Aromatic Heterocyclic Oxford ; New York : Oxford University Press, 1991.
60. Ellis, G. P. Synthesis of fused Chichester [Sussex] ; New York : Wiley, c1987-c1992. Chemistry of heterocyclic compounds ; v. 47.
61. Joule, J. A Mills, K. ,Smith, G. F. Heterocyclic Chemistry , 3rd ed London; New York Chapman & Hall, 1995.
62. Katritzky, Alan R., Rees, Charles W. , Scriven, Eric F. V. Comprehensive heterocyclic chemistry II : a review of the literature 1982-1995.
63. The structure, reactions, synthesis, and uses of heterocyclic compounds 1st ed. Oxford; New York : Pergamon, 1996. 11 v. in 12 : ill. ; 28 cm.
64. Eicher, Theophil, Hauptmann, Siegfried. The chemistry of heterocycles : structure, reactions, syntheses, and applications Stuttgart ; New York : G. Thieme, 1995.
65. Grimmett, M. R. Imidazole and benzimidazole Synthesis London; San Diego: Academic Press, 1997.

66. Advances in heterocyclic chemistry. Published in New York by Academic Press, starting in 1963- present.
67. Gilchrist, T. L. (Thomas Lonsdale) Heterocyclic chemistry 3rd ed. Harlow,
5 Essex : Longman, **1997**. 414 p. : ill. ; 24 cm.
68. Farina, Vittorio; Roth, Gregory P. Recent advances in the Stille reaction;
Adv. Met.-Org. Chem. **1996**, 5, 1-53.
69. Farina, Vittorio; Krishnamurthy, Venkat; Scott, William J. The Stille
10 reaction; *Org. React. (N. Y.)* (1997), 50, 1-652.
70. Stille, J. K. *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **1986**, 25, 508-524.
71. Norio Miyaura and Akiro Suzuki *Chem Rev.* **1995**, 95, 2457.
- 15 72. Home, D.A. *Heterocycles* **1994**, 39, 139.
73. Kamitani, T. et.al. *Heterocycles*, **1994**, 37(1), 153.
- 20 74. Shawali, J. *Heterocyclic Chem.* **1976**, 13, 989.
75. a) Kende, A.S.et al. *Org. Photochem. Synth.* **1972**, 1, 92. b) Hanks, L.V.;
Biochem. Prep. **1966**, 11, 63. c) *Synth. Meth.* 22, 837.
- 25 76. Hulton et. al. *Synth. Comm.* **1979**, 9, 789.
77. Pattanayak, B.K. et.al. *Indian J. Chem.* **1978**, 16, 1030.
78. *Chemische Berichte* **1902**, 35, 1545.
- 30 79. *Chemische Berichte* Ibid **1911**, 44, 493.
80. Moubarak, L, Vessiere, R. *Synthesis* **1980**, Vol. 1, 52-53.

81. *Ind J. Chem.* **1973**, *11*, 1260.
82. Roomi et.al. *Can J. Chem.* **1970**, *48*, 1689.
- 5 83. Sorrel, T.N. *J. Org. Chem.* **1994**, *59*, 1589.
84. Nitz, T.J. et. al. *J. Org. Chem.* **1994**, *59*, 5828-5832.
85. Bowden, K. et.al. *J. Chem. Soc.* **1946**, 953.
- 10 86. Nitz, T.J. et. al. *J. Org. Chem.* **1994**, *59*, 5828-5832.
87. Scholkopf et. al. *Angew. Int. Ed. Engl.* **1971**, *10*(5), 333.
- 15 88. (a) Behun, J. D.; Levine, R. *J. Org. Chem.* **1961**, *26*, 3379. (b) Rossen, K.; Weissman, S.A.; Sager, J.; Reamer, R.A.; Askin, D.; Volante, R.P.; Reider, P.J. Asymmetric Hydrogenation of tetrahydropyrazines: Synthesis of (*S*)-piperazine 2-tert-butylcarboxamide, an intermediate in the preparation of the HIV protease inhibitor Indinavir. *Tetrahedron Lett.*, **1995**, *36*, 6419-6422. (c) Jenneskens, L. W.; Mahy, J.; den Berg, E. M. M. de B.-v.; Van der Hoef, I.; Lugtenburg, J. *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **1995**, *114*, 97.
- 20 89. Wang, T.; Zhang, Z.; Meanwell, N.A. Benzoylation of Dianions: Preparation of mono-Benzoylated Symmetric Secondary Diamines. *J. Org. Chem.*, **1999**, *64*, 7661-7662.
- 25 90. (a) Adamczyk, M.; Fino, J.R. Synthesis of procainamide metabolites. N-acetyl desethylprocainamide and desethylprocainamide. *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **1996**, *28*, 470-474. (b) Wang, T.; Zhang, Z.; Meanwell, N.A. Regioselective mono-Benzoylation of Unsymmetrical Piperazines. *J. Org. Chem.*, in press.
- 30 91. Masuzawa, K.; Kitagawa, M.; Uchida, H. *Bull Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **1967**, *40*, 244-245.

92. Furber, M.; Cooper, M. E.; Donald, D. K. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1993**, *34*, 1351-1354.
93. Blair, Wade S.; Deshpande, Milind; Fang, Haiquan; Lin, Pin-fang; Spicer, Timothy P.; Wallace, Owen B.; Wang, Hui; Wang, Tao; Zhang, Zhongxing; Yeung, Kap-sun. Preparation of antiviral indoleoxoacetyl piperazine derivatives US patent 6,469,006. Preparation of antiviral indoleoxoacetyl piperazine derivatives. PCT Int. Appl. (PCT/US00/14359), WO 0076521 A1, filed May 24, 2000, published December 21, 2000.
94. Wang, Tao; Wallace, Owen B.; Zhang, Zhongxing; Meanwell, Nicholas A.; Bender, John A. Antiviral azaindole derivatives. U.S. patent 6476034 and Wang, Tao; Wallace, Owen B.; Zhang, Zhongxing; Meanwell, Nicholas A.; Bender, John A. Preparation of antiviral azaindole derivatives. PCT Int. Appl. (PCT/US01/02009), WO 0162255 A1, filed January 19, 2001, published August 30, 2001.
95. Wallace, Owen B.; Wang, Tao; Yeung, Kap-Sun; Pearce, Bradley C.; Meanwell, Nicholas A.; Qiu, Zhili; Fang, Haiquan; Xue, Qinfen May, Lin, Zhiwei. Composition and antiviral activity of substituted indoleoxoacetic piperazine derivatives. U.S. Patent Application Serial Number 10/027,612 filed December 19, 2001, which is a continuation-in-part application of U.S. Serial Number 09/888,686 filed June 25, 2001 (corresponding to PCT Int. Appl. (PCT/US01/20300), WO 0204440 A1, filed June 26, 2001, published January 17, 2002.
96. J. L. Marco, S. T. Ingate, and P. M. Chinchon *Tetrahedron* **1999**, *55*, 7625-7644.
97. C. Thomas, F. Orecher, and P. Gmeiner *Synthesis* **1998**, 1491.
98. M. P. Pavia, S. J. Lobbestael, C. P. Taylor, F. M. Hershenson, and D. W. Miskell

99. Buckheit, Robert W., Jr. *Expert Opinion on Investigational Drugs* 2001, 10(8), 1423-1442.
100. Balzarini, J.; De Clercq, E.. *Antiretroviral Therapy* 2001, 31-62.
- 5 101. E. De clercq *Journal of Clinical Virology*, 2001, 22, 73-89.
102. Merour, Jean-Yves; Joseph, Benoit. *Curr. Org. Chem.* (2001), 5(5), 471-506.
- 10 103. T. W. von Geldern et al. *J. Med. Chem* 1996, 39, 968.
104. M. Abdaoui et al. *Tetrahedron* 2000, 56, 2427.
- 15 105. W. J. Spillane et al. *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1*, 1982, 3, 677
106. Wang, Tao; Wallace, Owen B.; Zhang, Zhongxing; Meanwell, Nicholas A.; Kadow, John F. Yin, Zhiwei. *Composition and Antiviral Activity of Substituted Azaindoleoxoacetic Piperazine Derivatives*. U.S. Patent Application Serial Number 10/214,982 filed August 7, 2002, which is a continuation-in-part application of U.S. Serial Number 10/038,306 filed January 2, 2002 (corresponding to PCT Int. Appl. (PCT/US02/00455), WO 02/062423 A1, filed January 2, 2002, published August 15, 2002.

25

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention comprises compounds of Formula I, their pharmaceutical formulations, and their use in patients suffering from or susceptible to a virus such as HIV. The compounds of Formula I, which include nontoxic

30 pharmaceutically acceptable salts and/or hydrates thereof, have the formula and meaning as described below. Each embodiment of a particular aspect of the invention depends from the preceding embodiment unless otherwise stated.

SUMMARY DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention comprises compounds of Formula I, or pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, which are effective antiviral agents, particularly as inhibitors of HIV.

5

A first embodiment of the invention are compounds of Formula I, including pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof,



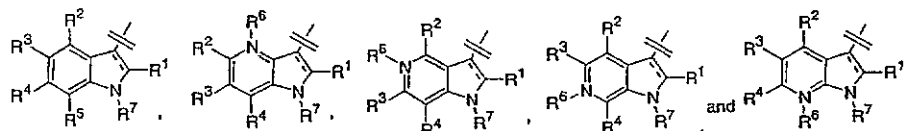
10

(I)

wherein:

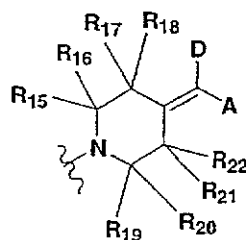


15 Q is selected from the group consisting of:



-W- is

20



R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , and R^5 , are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, cyano, nitro, COOR^8 , XR^9 , and B;

m is 1 or 2;

R^6 is O or does not exist;

5 R^7 is $(CH_2)_nR^{10}$;

n is 0-6;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of H, (C_{1-6}) alkyl, $-C(O)-(C_{1-6})$ alkyl,
10 $C(O)$ -phenyl and $CONR^{11}R^{12}$;

R^{11} and R^{12} are each independently H, (C_{1-6}) alkyl or phenyl;

- - represents a carbon-carbon bond or does not exist;

15

D is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, (C_{1-6}) alkyl, (C_{1-6}) alkynyl, (C_{3-6}) cycloalkyl, halogen, cyano, $-CONR^{32}R^{33}$, $-SO_2R^{32}$, COR^{32} , $COOR^8$, tetrahydrofuryl, pyrrolidinyl, phenyl and heteroaryl ; wherein said (C_{1-6}) alkyl, (C_{1-6}) alkynyl, phenyl and heteroaryl are each independently optionally substituted
20 with one to three same or different members selected from the group G; heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of furanyl, thienyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, triazolyl, pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, and pyrimidinyl;

25 A is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said phenyl and heteroaryl are each independently optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group K; and heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, furanyl, thienyl, benzothieryl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, benzooxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, benzoimidazolyl, 1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl, 1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-yl,
30 oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, tetrazinyl, triazinyl and triazolyl; with the proviso that when m is 1 and A is benzoimidazolyl, 1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl or 1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-yl, D is not -H;

$R^{15}, R^{16}, R^{17}, R^{18}, R^{19}, R^{20}, R^{21}, R^{22}$ are each independently selected from the group consisting of H and (C₁₋₆)alkyl; wherein (C₁₋₆)alkyl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogen, amino, OH, CN or NO₂;

- 5 B is selected from the group consisting of (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, C(O)NR²³R²⁴, phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkyl, phenyl and heteroaryl are independently optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogens or from one to three same or different substituents selected from F; heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, furanyl, thienyl, benzothienyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, benzooxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, benzoimidazolyl, 1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl, 1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-yl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, tetrazinyl, triazinyl and triazolyl;
- 15 F is selected from the group consisting of (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl cyano, phenyl, heteroaryl, heteroalicyclic, hydroxy, (C₁₋₆)alkoxy, halogen, benzyl, -NR²⁵C(O)-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NR²⁶R²⁷, morpholino, nitro, -S(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -SPh, NR²⁵S(O)₂-R²⁶, piperidinyl, N-Me piperazinyl, C(O)H, (CH₂)_nCOOR²⁸ and -CONR²⁹R³⁰; wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkyl, heteroaryl, or phenyl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogens or one to three methyl groups; heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of furanyl, thienyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, triazolyl, pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, and pyrimidinyl; heteroalicyclic is selected from the group consisting of aziridine, azetidine, pyrrolidine, piperazine, N-methyl piperazine, piperidine, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydropyran, azepine and morpholine;

- G is selected from the group consisting of (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl cyano, trimethylsilyl, phenyl, heteroaryl, heteroalicyclic, hydroxy, (C₁₋₆)alkoxy, halogen, benzyl, -NR²⁵C(O)-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NR²⁶R²⁷, -C(O)NR²⁶R²⁷, morpholino, nitro, -S(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -SPh, NR²⁵S(O)₂-R²⁶, piperazinyl, N-Me piperazinyl, (CH₂)_nCOOR²⁸ and -CONR²⁹R³⁰; wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkyl, heteroaryl, or phenyl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogens or one to three methyl groups; heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of furanyl, thienyl, thiazolyl,

isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, triazolyl, pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, and pyrimidinyl; heteroalicyclic is selected from the group consisting of aziridine, azetidine, pyrrolidine, piperazine, N-methyl piperazine, piperidine, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydropyran, azepine and
 5 morpholine;

K is selected from the group consisting of (C₁₋₃)alkyl, hydroxy, (C₁₋₃)alkoxy, halogen and -NR²⁶R²⁷; wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkyl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogens;

10

R⁸, R⁹ and R²⁸ are selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and (C₁₋₆)alkyl;

X is selected from the group consisting of NR³¹, O and S;

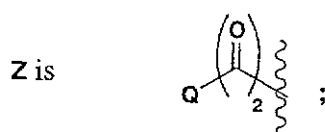
15 R²³, R²⁴, R²⁵, R²⁶, R²⁷, R²⁹, R³⁰, R³¹ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkoxy, phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkyl, phenyl, and heteroaryl are independently optionally substituted with one to three same or different group J; heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of furanyl, thienyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, triazolyl, pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, and
 20 pyrimidinyl;

J is selected from the group consisting of (C₁₋₆)alkyl, phenyl, heteroaryl, hydroxy, (C₁₋₆)alkoxy, halogen, benzyl, -NR³²C(O)-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NR³²R³³, morpholino, nitro, 25 -S(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -SPh, NR³²S(O)₂-R³³, piperazinyl, N-Me piperazinyl, (CH₂)_nCOOR²⁸ and -CONR³²R³³; wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkyl, heteroaryl, or phenyl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogens, amino, or methyl groups; heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of furanyl, thienyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, triazolyl, pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, and pyrimidinyl; and
 30

R³² and R³³ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and

(C₁₋₆)alkyl; wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkyl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogen, methyl, or CF₃ groups.

A preferred embodiment of the invention are compounds of Formula I,
 5 wherein:



R¹ is hydrogen;
 10 -- represents a carbon-carbon bond; and

R⁶ does not exist.

15 A more preferred embodiment of the invention are compounds of Formula I
 wherein:

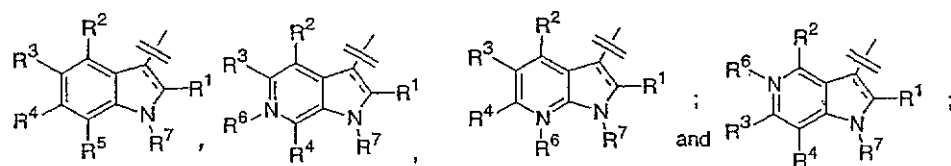
R⁷ is hydrogen; and

20 R¹⁵, R¹⁶, R¹⁷, R¹⁸, R¹⁹, R²⁰, R²¹, R²² are each independently H or methyl with the
 proviso that a maximum of one of R¹⁵-R²² is methyl.

A more preferred embodiment are compounds of formula I wherein:

25 Q is a member selected from groups (A) and (B) consisting of:

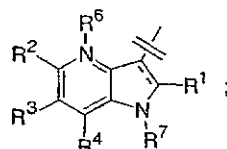
(A)



21

provided R^2 and R^3 are each independently hydrogen, methoxy or halogen; and

(B)



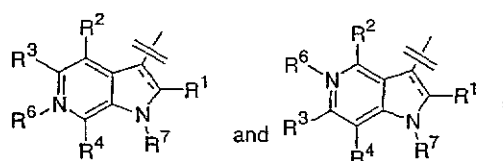
5

provided R^2 is hydrogen, methoxy or halogen.

Another preferred embodiment are compounds of formula I wherein:

10 Q is a member selected from groups (A), (B) and (C) consisting of:

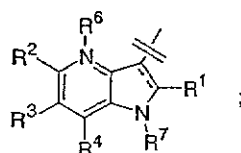
(A)



15 provided R^2 is hydrogen, methoxy or halogen;

R^3 is hydrogen;

(B)

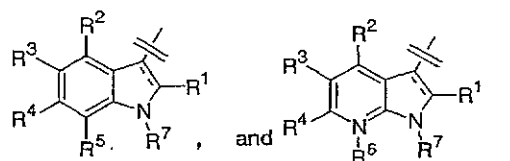


20

provided R^2 and R^3 are hydrogen; and

25

(C)



provided R^2 is hydrogen, methoxy or halogen; and

R^3 and R^4 are hydrogen.

Another preferred embodiment of the present invention are compounds of formula I wherein:

D is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, (C_{1-6}) alkyl, (C_{1-6}) alkynyl, (C_{3-6}) cycloalkyl, halogen, cyano, $-CONR^{32}R^{33}$, $-SO_2R^{32}$, COR^{32} , $COOR^8$, tetrahydrofuryl, pyrrolidinyl, phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said (C_{1-6}) alkyl, (C_{1-6}) alkynyl, phenyl and heteroaryl are each independently optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group G; heteroaryl is (1) a five membered ring selected from the group consisting of furanyl, thienyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, and triazolyl or (2) a six membered ring selected from the group consisting of pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl and pyrimidinyl; and

A is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said phenyl and heteroaryl are each independently optionally substituted with one fluorine, hydroxy, methyl or amino; and heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of pyridinyl, furanyl and thienyl.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating mammals infected with a virus, especially wherein said virus is HIV, comprising administering to said mammal an antiviral effective amount of a compound of Formula I, and one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients or diluents; optionally the compound of Formula I can be administered in combination

with an antiviral effective amount of an AIDS treatment agent selected from the group consisting of: (a) an AIDS antiviral agent; (b) an anti-infective agent; (c) an immunomodulator; and (d) HIV entry inhibitors.

- 5 Another embodiment of the present invention is a pharmaceutical composition comprising an antiviral effective amount of a compound of Formula I and one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients, diluents and optionally in combination with an antiviral effective amount of an AIDS treatment agent selected from the group consisting of: (a) an AIDS antiviral agent; (b) an anti-infective agent;
10 (c) an immunomodulator; and (d) HIV entry inhibitors.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

- Since the compounds of the present invention may possess asymmetric centers, the present invention includes the individual diastereoisomeric and
15 enantiomeric forms of the compounds of Formula I in addition to the mixtures thereof.

DEFINITIONS

- 20 The term "C₁₋₆ alkyl" as used herein and in the claims (unless specified otherwise) mean straight or branched chain alkyl groups such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, t-butyl, amyl, hexyl and the like.

- "Halogen" refers to chlorine, bromine, iodine or fluorine.
25

- An "aryl" group refers to an all carbon monocyclic or fused-ring polycyclic (i.e., rings which share adjacent pairs of carbon atoms) groups having a completely conjugated pi-electron system. Examples, without limitation, of aryl groups are phenyl, naphthalenyl and anthracenyl. The aryl group may be substituted or
30 unsubstituted. When substituted the substituted group(s) is preferably one or more selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, heteroalicyclic, hydroxy, alkoxy,

aryloxy, heteroaryloxy, heteroalicycloxy, thiohydroxy, thioaryloxy, thioheteroaryloxy, thioheteroalicycloxy, cyano, halogen, nitro, carbonyl, O-carbamyl, N-carbamyl, C-amido, N-amido, C-carboxy, O-carboxy, sulfinyl, sulfonyl, sulfonamido, trihalomethyl, ureido, amino and $-NR^xR^y$, wherein R^x and R^y are independently
 5 selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, carbonyl, C-carboxy, sulfonyl, trihalomethyl, and, combined, a five- or six-member heteroalicyclic ring.

As used herein, a "heteroaryl" group refers to a monocyclic or fused ring (i.e.,
 10 rings which share an adjacent pair of atoms) group having in the ring(s) one or more atoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur and, in addition, having a completely conjugated pi-electron system. Unless otherwise indicated, the heteroaryl group may be attached at either a carbon or nitrogen atom within the heteroaryl group. It should be noted that the term "heteroaryl" is intended to
 15 encompass an N-oxide of the parent heteroaryl if such an N-oxide is chemically feasible as is known in the art. Examples, without limitation, of heteroaryl groups are furyl, thienyl, benzothienyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, oxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, benzothiazolyl, thiazolyl, tetrazolyl, isoxazolyl, isothiazolyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrahydropyranyl, pyrazolyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, quinoliny, isoquinoliny, purinyl, carbazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzimidazolyl, indolyl, isoindolyl, pyrazinyl, diazinyl,
 20 pyrazine, triazinyltriazine, tetrazinyl, and tetrazolyl. When substituted the substituted group(s) is preferably one or more selected from alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, heteroalicyclic, hydroxy, alkoxy, aryloxy, heteroaryloxy, heteroalicycloxy, thioalkoxy, thiohydroxy, thioaryloxy, thioheteroaryloxy, thioheteroalicycloxy, cyano, halogen, nitro, carbonyl, O-carbamyl, N-carbamyl, C-amido, N-amido, C-carboxy, O-
 25 carboxy, sulfinyl, sulfonyl, sulfonamido, trihalomethyl, ureido, amino, and $-NR^xR^y$, wherein R^x and R^y are as defined above.

As used herein, a "heteroalicyclic" group refers to a monocyclic or fused ring
 30 group having in the ring(s) one or more atoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur. Rings are selected from those which provide stable arrangements of bonds and are not intended to encompass systems which would not exist. The rings may also have one or more double bonds. However, the rings do not

have a completely conjugated pi-electron system. Examples, without limitation, of heteroalicyclic groups are azetidiny, piperidyl, piperazinyl, imidazolinyl, thiazolidinyl, 3-pyrrolidin-1-yl, morpholinyl, thiomorpholinyl and tetrahydropyranyl. When substituted the substituted group(s) is preferably one or more selected from

5 alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, heteroalicyclic, hydroxy, alkoxy, aryloxy, heteroaryloxy, heteroalicycloxy, thiohydroxy, thioalkoxy, thioaryloxy, thioheteroaryloxy, thioheteroalicycloxy, cyano, halogen, nitro, carbonyl, thiocarbonyl, O-carbamyl, N-carbamyl, O-thiocarbamyl, N-thiocarbamyl, C-amido, C-thioamido, N-amido, C-carboxy, O-carboxy, sulfinyl, sulfonyl, sulfonamido,

10 trihalomethanesulfonamido, trihalomethanesulfonyl, silyl, guanyl, guanidino, ureido, phosphonyl, amino and $-NR^xR^y$, wherein R^x and R^y are as defined above.

An "alkyl" group refers to a saturated aliphatic hydrocarbon including straight chain and branched chain groups. Preferably, the alkyl group has 1 to 20 carbon

15 atoms (whenever a numerical range; e.g., "1-20", is stated herein, it means that the group, in this case the alkyl group may contain 1 carbon atom, 2 carbon atoms, 3 carbon atoms, etc. up to and including 20 carbon atoms). More preferably, it is a medium size alkyl having 1 to 10 carbon atoms. Most preferably, it is a lower alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms. The alkyl group may be substituted or unsubstituted.

20 When substituted, the substituent group(s) is preferably one or more individually selected from trihaloalkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, heteroalicyclic, hydroxy, alkoxy, aryloxy, heteroaryloxy, heteroalicycloxy, thiohydroxy, thioalkoxy, thioaryloxy, thioheteroaryloxy, thioheteroalicycloxy, cyano, halo, nitro, carbonyl, thiocarbonyl, O-carbamyl, N-carbamyl, O-thiocarbamyl, N-thiocarbamyl, C-amido,

25 C-thioamido, N-amido, C-carboxy, O-carboxy, sulfinyl, sulfonyl, sulfonamido, trihalomethanesulfonamido, trihalomethanesulfonyl, and combined, a five- or six-member heteroalicyclic ring.

A "cycloalkyl" group refers to an all-carbon monocyclic or fused ring (i.e.,

30 rings which share an adjacent pair of carbon atoms) group wherein one or more rings does not have a completely conjugated pi-electron system. Examples, without limitation, of cycloalkyl groups are cyclopropane, cyclobutane, cyclopentane, cyclopentene, cyclohexane, cyclohexadiene, cycloheptane, cycloheptatriene and

adamantane. A cycloalkyl group may be substituted or unsubstituted. When substituted, the substituent group(s) is preferably one or more individually selected from alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, heteroalicyclic, hydroxy, alkoxy, aryloxy, heteroaryloxy, heteroalicycloxy, thiohydroxy, thioalkoxy, thioaryloxy, thioheteroaryloxy, thioheteroalicycloxy, cyano, halo, nitro, carbonyl, thiocarbonyl, O-carbamyl, N-carbamyl, O-thiocarbamyl, N-thiocarbamyl, C-amido, C-thioamido, N-amido, C-carboxy, O-carboxy, sulfinyl, sulfonyl, sulfonamido, trihalo- methanesulfonamido, trihalomethanesulfonyl, silyl, guanyl, guanidino, ureido, phosphonyl, amino and –
NR^xR^y with R^x and R^y as defined above.

10

An “alkenyl” group refers to an alkyl group, as defined herein, consisting of at least two carbon atoms and at least one carbon-carbon double bond.

An “alkynyl” group refers to an alkyl group, as defined herein, consisting of at least two carbon atoms and at least one carbon-carbon triple bond.

15

A “hydroxy” group refers to an –OH group.

An “alkoxy” group refers to both an –O-alkyl and an –O-cycloalkyl group as defined herein.

20

An “aryloxy” group refers to both an –O-aryl and an –O-heteroaryl group, as defined herein.

A “heteroaryloxy” group refers to a heteroaryl-O- group with heteroaryl as defined herein.

25

A “heteroalicycloxy” group refers to a heteroalicyclic-O- group with heteroalicyclic as defined herein.

30

A “thiohydroxy” group refers to an –SH group.

A “thioalkoxy” group refers to both an S-alkyl and an –S-cycloalkyl group, as defined herein.

5 A “thioaryloxy” group refers to both an –S-aryl and an –S-heteroaryl group, as defined herein.

A “thioheteroaryloxy” group refers to a heteroaryl-S- group with heteroaryl as defined herein.

10 A “thioheteroalicycloxy” group refers to a heteroalicyclic-S- group with heteroalicyclic as defined herein.

A “carbonyl” group refers to a --C(=O)R group, where R” is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl
15 (bonded through a ring carbon) and heteroalicyclic (bonded through a ring carbon), as each is defined herein.

An “aldehyde” group refers to a carbonyl group where R” is hydrogen.

20 A “thiocarbonyl” group refers to a --C(=S)R group, with R” as defined herein.

A “Keto” group refers to a --CC(=O)C-- group wherein the carbon on either or both sides of the C=O may be alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl or a carbon of a heteroaryl or
25 heteroalicyclic group.

A “trihalomethanecarbonyl” group refers to a $\text{Z}_3\text{CC(=O)--}$ group with said Z being a halogen.

30 A “C-carboxy” group refers to a --C(=O)O-R groups, with R” as defined herein.

An "O-carboxy" group refers to a $R''C(-O)O$ -group, with R'' as defined herein.

5 A "carboxylic acid" group refers to a C-carboxy group in which R'' is hydrogen.

A "trihalomethyl" group refers to a $-CZ_3$, group wherein Z is a halogen group as defined herein.

10 A "trihalomethanesulfonyl" group refers to an $Z_3CS(=O)_2$ - groups with Z as defined above.

A "trihalomethanesulfonamido" group refers to a $Z_3CS(=O)_2NR^X$ - group with Z and R^X as defined herein.

15

A "sulfinyl" group refers to a $-S(=O)-R''$ group, with R'' as defined herein and, in addition, as a bond only; i.e., $-S(O)-$.

A "sulfonyl" group refers to a $-S(=O)_2R''$ group with R'' as defined herein and, in addition as a bond only; i.e., $-S(O)_2-$.

20

A "S-sulfonamido" group refers to a $-S(=O)_2NR^XR^Y$, with R^X and R^Y as defined herein.

25 A "N-Sulfonamido" group refers to a $R''S(=O)_2NR_X$ - group with R_X as defined herein.

A "O-carbamyl" group refers to a $-OC(=O)NR^XR^Y$ as defined herein.

30 A "N-carbamyl" group refers to a $R^XOC(=O)NR^Y$ group, with R^X and R^Y as defined herein.

A "O-thiocarbamyl" group refers to a $-\text{OC}(=\text{S})\text{NR}^x\text{R}^y$ group with R^x and R^y as defined herein.

5 A "N-thiocarbamyl" group refers to a $\text{R}^x\text{OC}(=\text{S})\text{NR}^y-$ group with R^x and R^y as defined herein.

An "amino" group refers to an $-\text{NH}_2$ group.

10 A "C-amido" group refers to a $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^x\text{R}^y$ group with R^x and R^y as defined herein.

A "C-thioamido" group refers to a $-\text{C}(=\text{S})\text{NR}^x\text{R}^y$ group, with R^x and R^y as defined herein.

15 A "N-amido" group refers to a $\text{R}^x\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^y-$ group, with R^x and R^y as defined herein.

20 An "ureido" group refers to a $-\text{NR}^x\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^y\text{R}^{y2}$ group with R^x and R^y as defined herein and R^{y2} defined the same as R^x and R^y .

A "guanidino" group refers to a $-\text{R}^x\text{NC}(=\text{N})\text{NR}^y\text{R}^{y2}$ group, with R^x , R^y and R^{y2} as defined herein.

25 A "guanyl" group refers to a $\text{R}^x\text{R}^y\text{NC}(=\text{N})-$ group, with R^x and R^y as defined herein.

A "cyano" group refers to a $-\text{CN}$ group.

30 A "silyl" group refers to a $-\text{Si}(\text{R}')_3$, with R' as defined herein.

A "phosphonyl" group refers to a $\text{P}(=\text{O})(\text{OR}^x)_2$ with R^x as defined herein.

A "hydrazino" group refers to a $-NR^xNR^yR^{y2}$ group with R^x , R^y and R^{y2} as defined herein.

Any two adjacent R groups may combine to form an additional aryl,
5 cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocyclic ring fused to the ring initially bearing those R groups.

It is known in the art that nitrogen atoms in heteroaryl systems can be
"participating in a heteroaryl ring double bond", and this refers to the form of double
10 bonds in the two tautomeric structures which comprise five-member ring heteroaryl groups. This dictates whether nitrogens can be substituted as well understood by chemists in the art. The disclosure and claims of the present invention are based on the known general principles of chemical bonding. It is understood that the claims do not encompass structures known to be unstable or not able to exist based on the
15 literature.

Physiologically acceptable salts and prodrugs of compounds disclosed herein
are within the scope of this invention. The term "pharmaceutically acceptable salt" as
used herein and in the claims is intended to include nontoxic base addition salts.
20 Suitable salts include those derived from organic and inorganic acids such as, without limitation, hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, phosphoric acid, sulfuric acid, methanesulfonic acid, acetic acid, tartaric acid, lactic acid, sulfinic acid, citric acid, maleic acid, fumaric acid, sorbic acid, aconitic acid, salicylic acid, phthalic acid, and the like. The term "pharmaceutically acceptable salt" as used herein is also intended
25 to include salts of acidic groups, such as a carboxylate, with such counterions as ammonium, alkali metal salts, particularly sodium or potassium, alkaline earth metal salts, particularly calcium or magnesium, and salts with suitable organic bases such as lower alkylamines (methylamine, ethylamine, cyclohexylamine, and the like) or with substituted lower alkylamines (e.g. hydroxyl-substituted alkylamines such as
30 diethanolamine, triethanolamine or tris(hydroxymethyl)-aminomethane), or with bases such as piperidine or morpholine.

In the method of the present invention, the term "antiviral effective amount" means the total amount of each active component of the method that is sufficient to show a meaningful patient benefit, i.e., healing of acute conditions characterized by inhibition of the HIV infection. When applied to an individual active ingredient,
 5 administered alone, the term refers to that ingredient alone. When applied to a combination, the term refers to combined amounts of the active ingredients that result in the therapeutic effect, whether administered in combination, serially or simultaneously. The terms "treat, treating, treatment" as used herein and in the claims means preventing or ameliorating diseases associated with HIV infection.

10

The present invention is also directed to combinations of the compounds with one or more agents useful in the treatment of AIDS. For example, the compounds of this invention may be effectively administered, whether at periods of pre-exposure and/or post-exposure, in combination with effective amounts of the AIDS antivirals,
 15 immunomodulators, antiinfectives, or vaccines, such as those in the following table.

ANTIVIRALS

<u>Drug Name</u>	<u>Manufacturer</u>	<u>Indication</u>
097	Hoechst/Bayer	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC (non-nucleoside reverse trans- criptase (RT) inhibitor)
25 Amprenavir 141 W94 30 GW 141	Glaxo Wellcome	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC (protease inhibitor)
35 Abacavir (1592U89) GW 1592	Glaxo Wellcome	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC (RT inhibitor)
Acemannan	Carrington Labs (Irving, TX)	ARC

	Acyclovir	Burroughs Wellcome	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC, in combination with AZT
5	AD-439	Tanox Biosystems	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC
	AD-519	Tanox Biosystems	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC
10	Adefovir dipivoxil AL-721	Gilead Sciences Ethigen (Los Angeles, CA)	HIV infection ARC, PGL HIV positive, AIDS
15	Alpha Interferon	Glaxo Wellcome	Kaposi's sarcoma, HIV in combination w/Retrovir
20	Ansamycin LM 427	Adria Laboratories (Dublin, OH) Erbamont (Stamford, CT)	ARC
25	Antibody which Neutralizes pH Labile alpha aberrant Interferon	Advanced Biotherapy Concepts (Rockville, MD)	AIDS, ARC
30	AR177	Aronex Pharm	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC
	Beta-fluoro-ddA	Nat'l Cancer Institute	AIDS-associated diseases
35	BMS-232623 (CGP-73547)	Bristol-Myers Squibb/ Novartis	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC (protease inhibitor)
40	BMS-234475 (CGP-61755)	Bristol-Myers Squibb/ Novartis	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC (protease inhibitor)
	CI-1012	Warner-Lambert	HIV-1 infection

	Cidofovir	Gilead Science	CMV retinitis, herpes, papillomavirus
5	Curdan sulfate	AJI Pharma USA	HIV infection
	Cytomegalovirus Immune globin	MedImmune	CMV retinitis
10	Cytovene	Syntex	Sight threatening
	Ganciclovir		CMV peripheral CMV retinitis
15	Delaviridine	Pharmacia-Upjohn	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC (RT inhibitor)
20	Dextran Sulfate	Ueno Fine Chem. Ind. Ltd. (Osaka, Japan)	AIDS, ARC, HIV positive asymptomatic
25	ddC Dideoxycytidine	Hoffman-La Roche	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC
	ddI Dideoxyinosine	Bristol-Myers Squibb	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC; combination with AZT/d4T
30	DMP-450	AVID (Camden, NJ)	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC (protease inhibitor)
35	Efavirenz (DMP 266) (-)-6-Chloro-4-(S)- cyclopropylethynyl- 4(S)-trifluoro- methyl-1,4-dihydro-	DuPont Merck	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC (non-nucleoside RT inhibitor)
40	2H-3,1-benzoxazin- 2-one, STOCRINE		

	EL10	Elan Corp, PLC (Gainesville, GA)	HIV infection
5	Famciclovir	Smith Kline	herpes zoster, herpes simplex
10	FTC	Emory University	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC (reverse transcriptase inhibitor)
15	GS 840	Gilead	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC (reverse transcriptase inhibitor)
20	HBV097	Hoechst Marion Roussel	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC (non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor)
25	Hypericin	VIMRx Pharm.	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC
	Recombinant Human Interferon Beta	Triton Biosciences (Alameda, CA)	AIDS, Kaposi's sarcoma, ARC
30	Interferon alfa-n3	Interferon Sciences	ARC, AIDS
35	Indinavir	Merck	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC, asymptomatic HIV positive, also in combination with AZT/ddI/ddC
	ISIS 2922	ISIS Pharmaceuticals	CMV retinitis
40	KN1-272	Nat'l Cancer Institute	HIV-assoc. diseases

5	Lamivudine, 3TC	Glaxo Wellcome	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC (reverse transcriptase inhibitor); also with AZT
	Lobucavir	Bristol-Myers Squibb	CMV infection
10	Nelfinavir	Agouron Pharmaceuticals	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC (protease inhibitor)
15	Nevirapine	Boehringer Ingelheim	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC (RT inhibitor)
20	Novapren	Novaferon Labs, Inc. (Akron, OH)	HIV inhibitor
	Peptide T Octapeptide Sequence	Peninsula Labs (Belmont, CA)	AIDS
25	Trisodium Phosphonoformate	Astra Pharm. Products, Inc.	CMV retinitis, HIV infection, other CMV infections
30	PNU-140690	Pharmacia Upjohn	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC (protease inhibitor)
	Probucol	Vyrex	HIV infection, AIDS
35	RBC-CD4	Sheffield Med. Tech (Houston, TX)	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC
40	Ritonavir	Abbott	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC (protease inhibitor)
	Saquinavir	Hoffmann-LaRoche	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC (protease inhibitor)

	Stavudine; d4T Didehydrodeoxy- thymidine	Bristol-Myers Squibb	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC
5	Valaciclovir	Glaxo Wellcome	Genital HSV & CMV infections
10	Virazole Ribavirin	Viratek/ICN (Costa Mesa, CA)	asymptomatic HIV positive, LAS, ARC
	VX-478	Vertex	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC
15	Zalcitabine	Hoffmann-LaRoche	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC, with AZT
20	Zidovudine; AZT	Glaxo Wellcome	HIV infection, AIDS, ARC, Kaposi's sarcoma, in combination with other therapies
25	Tenofovir disoproxil, fumarate salt (Viread [®])	Gilead	HIV infection, AIDS, (reverse transcriptase inhibitor)
30	Combivir [®]	GSK	HIV infection, AIDS, (reverse transcriptase inhibitor)
35	abacavir succinate (or Ziagen [®])	GSK	HIV infection, AIDS, (reverse transcriptase inhibitor)

IMMUNOMODULATORS

40	<u>Drug Name</u>	<u>Manufacturer</u>	<u>Indication</u>
	AS-101	Wyeth-Ayerst	AIDS

	Bropirimine Acemannan	Pharmacia Upjohn Carrington Labs, Inc. (Irving, TX)	Advanced AIDS AIDS, ARC
5	CL246,738	American Cyanamid Lederle Labs	AIDS, Kaposi's sarcoma
10	EL10	Elan Corp, PLC (Gainesville, GA)	HIV infection
	FP-21399	Fuki ImmunoPharm	Blocks HIV fusion with CD4+ cells
15	Gamma Interferon	Genentech	ARC, in combination w/TNF (tumor necrosis factor)
20	Granulocyte Macrophage Colony Stimulating Factor	Genetics Institute Sandoz	AIDS
25	Granulocyte Macrophage Colony Stimulating Factor	Hoechst-Roussel Immunex	AIDS
	Granulocyte Macrophage Colony Stimulating Factor	Schering-Plough	AIDS, combination w/AZT
30	HIV Core Particle Immunostimulant	Rorer	Seropositive HIV
35	IL-2 Interleukin-2	Cetus	AIDS, in combination w/AZT
	IL-2 Interleukin-2	Hoffman-LaRoche Immunex	AIDS, ARC, HIV, in combination w/AZT
40	IL-2 Interleukin-2 (aldeshukin)	Chiron	AIDS, increase in CD4 cell counts

	Immune Globulin Intravenous (human)	Cutter Biological (Berkeley, CA)	Pediatric AIDS, in combination w/AZT
5	IMREG-1	Imreg (New Orleans, LA)	AIDS, Kaposi's sarcoma, ARC, PGL
10	IMREG-2	Imreg (New Orleans, LA)	AIDS, Kaposi's sarcoma, ARC, PGL
	Imuthiol Diethyl Dithio Carbamate	Merieux Institute	AIDS; ARC
15	Alpha-2 Interferon	Schering Plough	Kaposi's sarcoma w/AZT, AIDS
	Methionine- Enkephalin	TNI Pharmaceutical (Chicago, IL)	AIDS, ARC
20	MTP-PE Muramyl-Tripeptide	Ciba-Geigy Corp.	Kaposi's sarcoma
25	Granulocyte Colony Stimulating Factor	Amgen	AIDS, in combination w/AZT
	Remune	Immune Response Corp.	Immunotherapeutic
30	rCD4 Recombinant Soluble Human CD4	Genentech	AIDS, ARC
35	rCD4-IgG hybrids		AIDS, ARC
	Recombinant Soluble Human CD4	Biogen	AIDS, ARC
40	Interferon Alfa 2a	Hoffman-La Roche	Kaposi's sarcoma AIDS, ARC, in combination w/AZT

	SK&F106528 Soluble T4	Smith Kline	HIV infection
5	Thymopentin	Immunobiology Research Institute (Annandale, NJ)	HIV infection
10	Tumor Necrosis Factor; TNF	Genentech	ARC, in combination w/gamma Interferon

ANTI-INFECTIVES

	<u>Drug Name</u>	<u>Manufacturer</u>	<u>Indication</u>
15	Clindamycin with Primaquine	Pharmacia Upjohn	PCP
20	Fluconazole	Pfizer	Cryptococcal meningitis, candidiasis
	Pastille Nystatin Pastille	Squibb Corp.	Prevention of oral candidiasis
25	Ornidyl Eflornithine	Merrell Dow	PCP
30	Pentamidine Isethionate (IM & IV)	LyphoMed (Rosemont, IL)	PCP treatment
	Trimethoprim		Antibacterial
	Trimethoprim/sulfa		Antibacterial
35	Piritrexim	Burroughs Wellcome	PCP treatment
40	Pentamidine Isethionate for Inhalation	Fisons Corporation	PCP prophylaxis

	Spiramycin	Rhone-Poulenc diarrhea	Cryptosporidial
5	Intraconazole- R51211	Janssen-Pharm.	Histoplasmosis; cryptococcal meningitis
	Trimetrexate	Warner-Lambert	PCP
10	Daunorubicin	NeXstar, Sequus	Kaposi's sarcoma
	Recombinant Human Erythropoietin	Ortho Pharm. Corp.	Severe anemia assoc. with AZT therapy
15	Recombinant Human Growth Hormone	Serono	AIDS-related wasting, cachexia
20	Megestrol Acetate	Bristol-Myers Squibb	Treatment of anorexia assoc. W/AIDS
	Testosterone	Alza, Smith Kline	AIDS-related wasting
25	Total Enteral Nutrition	Norwich Eaton Pharmaceuticals	Diarrhea and malabsorption related to AIDS

30 Additionally, the compounds of the invention herein may be used in combination with another class of agents for treating AIDS which are called HIV entry inhibitors. Examples of such HIV entry inhibitors are discussed in DRUGS OF THE FUTURE 1999, 24(12), pp. 1355-1362; CELL, Vol. 9, pp. 243-246, Oct. 29, 1999; and DRUG DISCOVERY TODAY, Vol. 5, No. 5, May 2000, pp. 183-194.

35 It will be understood that the scope of combinations of the compounds of this invention with AIDS antivirals, immunomodulators, anti-infectives, HIV entry inhibitors or vaccines is not limited to the list in the above Table, but includes in

principle any combination with any pharmaceutical composition useful for the treatment of AIDS.

Preferred combinations are simultaneous or alternating treatments of with a
5 compound of the present invention and an inhibitor of HIV protease and/or a non-nucleoside inhibitor of HIV reverse transcriptase. An optional fourth component in the combination is a nucleoside inhibitor of HIV reverse transcriptase, such as AZT, 3TC, ddC or ddI. A preferred inhibitor of HIV protease is indinavir, which is the sulfate salt of N-(2(R)-hydroxy-1-(S)-indanyl)-2(R)-phenylmethyl-4-(S)-hydroxy-5-
10 (1-(4-(3-pyridyl-methyl)-2(S)-N'-(t-butylcarboxamido)-piperazinyl))-pentaneamide ethanolate, and is synthesized according to U.S. 5,413,999. Indinavir is generally administered at a dosage of 800 mg three times a day. Other preferred protease inhibitors are nelfinavir and ritonavir. Another preferred inhibitor of HIV protease is saquinavir which is administered in a dosage of 600 or 1200 mg tid. Preferred non-
15 nucleoside inhibitors of HIV reverse transcriptase include efavirenz. The preparation of ddC, ddI and AZT are also described in EPO 0,484,071. These combinations may have unexpected effects on limiting the spread and degree of infection of HIV. Preferred combinations include those with the following (1) indinavir with efavirenz, and, optionally, AZT and/or 3TC and/or ddI and/or ddC; (2) indinavir, and any of
20 AZT and/or ddI and/or ddC and/or 3TC, in particular, indinavir and AZT and 3TC; (3) stavudine and 3TC and/or zidovudine; (4) zidovudine and lamivudine and 141W94 and 1592U89; (5) zidovudine and lamivudine.

In such combinations the compound of the present invention and other active
25 agents may be administered separately or in conjunction. In addition, the administration of one element may be prior to, concurrent to, or subsequent to the administration of other agent(s).

Abbreviations

30

The following abbreviations, most of which are conventional abbreviations well known to those skilled in the art, are used throughout the description of the invention and the examples. Some of the abbreviations used are as follows:

	h	=	hour(s)
	rt	=	room temperature
	mol	=	mole(s)
	mmol	=	millimole(s)
5	g	=	gram(s)
	mg	=	milligram(s)
	mL	=	milliliter(s)
	TFA	=	Trifluoroacetic Acid
	DCE	=	1,2-Dichloroethane
10	CH ₂ Cl ₂	=	Dichloromethane
	TPAP	=	tetrapropylammonium perruthenate
	THF	=	Tetrahydrofuran
	DEPBT	=	3-(Diethoxyphosphoryloxy)-1,2,3-benzotriazin-4(3H)-one
15	DMAP	=	4-dimethylaminopyridine
	P-EDC	=	Polymer supported 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide
	EDC	=	1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide
	DMF	=	<i>N,N</i> -dimethylformamide
20	Hunig's Base	=	<i>N,N</i> -Diisopropylethylamine
	mCPBA	=	<i>meta</i> -Chloroperbenzoic Acid
	azaindole	=	1 <i>H</i> -Pyrrolo-pyridine
	4-azaindole	=	1 <i>H</i> -pyrrolo[3,2- <i>b</i>]pyridine
	5-azaindole	=	1 <i>H</i> -Pyrrolo[3,2- <i>c</i>]pyridine
25	6-azaindole	=	1 <i>H</i> -pyrrolo[2,3- <i>c</i>]pyridine
	7-azaindole	=	1 <i>H</i> -Pyrrolo[2,3- <i>b</i>]pyridine
	PMB	=	4-Methoxybenzyl
	DDQ	=	2, 3-Dichloro-5, 6-dicyano-1, 4-benzoquinone
	OTf	=	Trifluoromethanesulfonyl
30	NMM	=	4-Methylmorpholine
	PIP-COPh	=	1-Benzoylpiperazine
	NaHMDS	=	Sodium hexamethyldisilazide
	EDAC	=	1-(3-Dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide

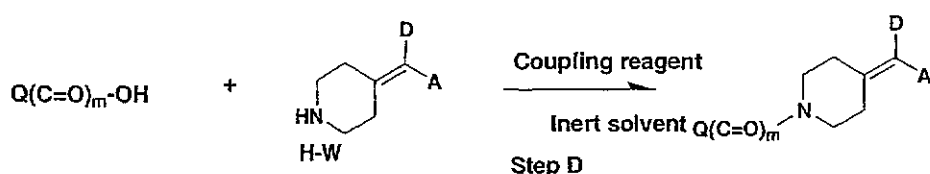
	TMS	=	Trimethylsilyl
	DCM	=	Dichloromethane
	DCE	=	Dichloroethane
	MeOH	=	Methanol
5	THF	=	Tetrahydrofuran
	EtOAc	=	Ethyl Acetate
	LDA	=	Lithium diisopropylamide
	TMP-Li	=	2,2,6,6-tetramethylpiperidinyllithium
	DME	=	Dimethoxyethane
10	DIBALH	=	Diisobutylaluminum hydride
	HOBT	=	1-hydroxybenzotriazole
	CBZ	=	Benzyloxycarbonyl
	PCC	=	Pyridinium chlorochromate

15 The synthesis procedures and anti-HIV-1 activities of 4-alkenyl piperidine amide containing analogs are below.

Preparation of the Compounds of the Invention:

20

Scheme A



25 **Step D description:** As shown in Scheme A, intermediate H-W (where W corresponds to claim 1 and H is hydrogen) can be coupled with the acid QC(O)C(O)OH (which can also be depicted as Z-OH) using standard amide bond or peptide bond forming coupling reagents. The combination of EDAC and triethylamine in tetrahydrofuran or BOPCl and diisopropyl ethyl amine in chloroform have been utilized most frequently but DEPBT, or other coupling reagents such as

30 PyBop could be utilized. Another useful coupling condition employs HATU (L.A. Carpino et. al. J.Chem.Soc. Chem Comm. 1994, 201-203; A. Virgilio et.al. J.Am. Chem. Soc. 1994, 116,11580-11581). A general procedure for using this reagent is

Acid (1eq) and H-W-A or HCl salt (2eq) in DMF are stirred at rt for between 1 h and 2 days. HATU (2eq) was added in one portion and then DMAP(3eq). The reaction was stirred at rt for 2 to 15h (reaction progress monitored by standard methods ie TLC, LC/MS) The mixture is filtered through filter paper to collect the solid. The filtrate is concentrated and water is added. The mixture is filtered again and the solid is washed with water. The solid is combined and washed with water. Many reagents for amide bond couplings are known by an organic chemist skilled in the art and nearly all of these are applicable for realizing coupled amide products.

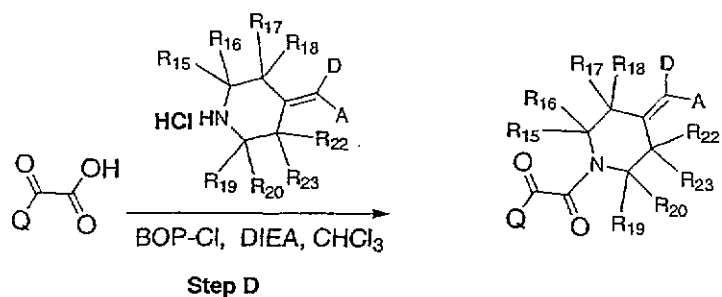
As mentioned above, DEPBT (3-(diethoxyphosphoryloxy)-1,2,3-benzotriazin-4(3H)-one) and *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine, commonly known as Hunig's base, represents another efficient method to form the amide bond (step D) and provide compounds of Claim I. DEPBT is either purchased from Adrich or prepared according to the procedure of Ref. 28, Li, H.; Jiang, X.; Ye, Y.-H.; Fan, C.; Romoff, T.; Goodman, M. *Organic Lett.*, **1999**, *1*, 91-93. Typically an inert solvent such as DMF or THF is used but other aprotic solvents could be used.

The amide bond construction reaction could be carried out using the preferred conditions described above, the EDC conditions described below, other coupling conditions described in this application, or alternatively by applying the conditions or coupling reagents for amide bond construction described later in this application for construction of substituents R₂-R₅. Some specific nonlimiting examples are given in this application.

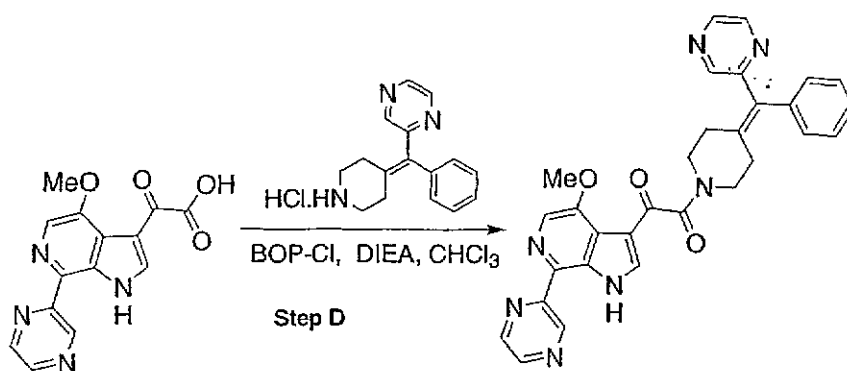
Alternatively, the acid could be converted to a methyl ester using excess diazomethane in THF/ether. The methyl ester in dry THF could be reacted with the lithium amide of intermediate H-W. The lithium amide of H-W, Li-W is formed by reacting intermediate 1 with lithium bistrimethylsilylamide in THF for 30 minutes in an ice water cooling bath. Sodium or potassium amides could be formed similarly and utilized if additional reactivity is desired. Other esters such as ethyl, phenyl, or pentafluorophenyl could be utilized and would be formed using standard methodology. Scheme A1 depicts the general coupling reaction using the BOP-Cl coupling method while Scheme A2 depicts a specific reaction, which typifies the coupling reactions used to make the compounds of formula I or precursors to them.

45

Scheme A1

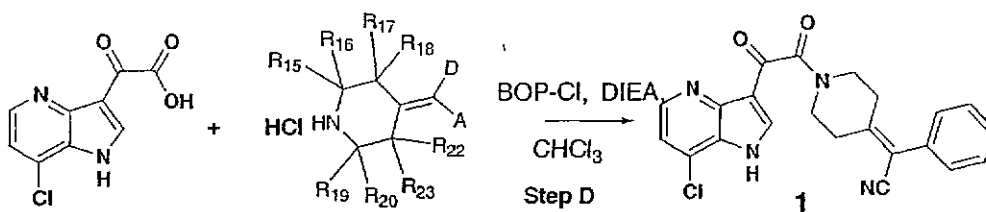


Scheme A2

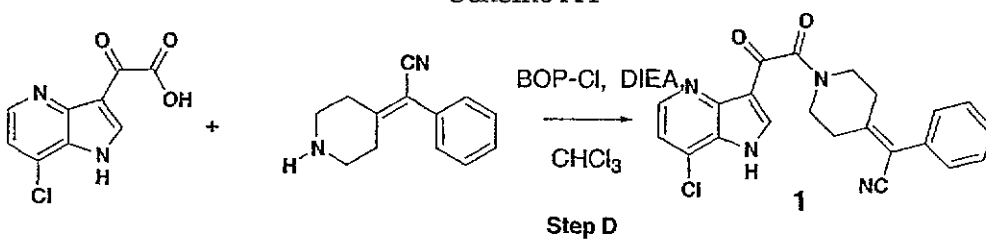


5

Scheme A3

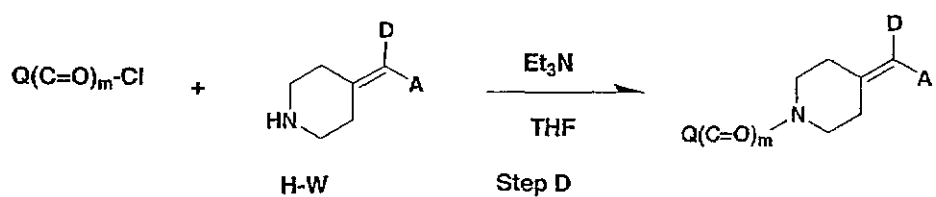


Scheme A4



10

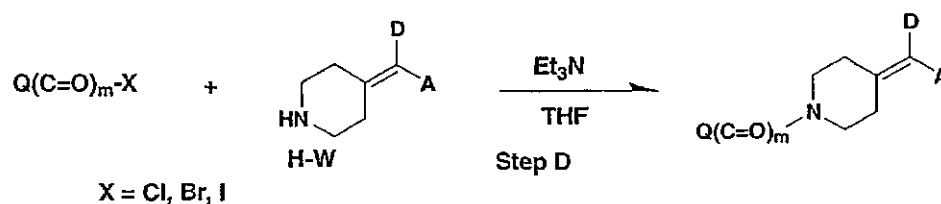
Scheme B



As shown in Schemes B and C, Compounds of formula I can also be obtained from reacting the amine, H-W with an acid halide $QC(O)C(O)-Cl$ (also depicted as Z-Cl) typically in the presence of a tertiary amine base to provide the desired compounds of the invention. Such reactions would usually be started at a temperature of approximately 2° C and allowed to warm to ambient temperature but lower temperatures or even heating could be utilized if needed. The reaction of $QC(O)C(O)-Cl$ (Z-Cl) by reaction with the appropriate H-W-A in the presence of a tertiary amine (3-10 eq.) such as triethylamine or diisopropylethylamine in an anhydrous aprotic solvent such as dichloromethane, dichloroethane, diethyl ether, dioxane, THF, acetonitrile, DMF or the like at temperatures ranging from 0°C to reflux. Most preferred are dichloromethane, dichloroethane, or THF. The reaction can be monitored by LC/MS.

The acids $QC(O)C(O)OH$ (Z-OH) can be converted to the acid chlorides $QC(O)C(O)-Cl$ (Z-Cl) using oxalyl chloride in a solvent such as benzene or thionyl chloride either neat or containing a catalytic amount of DMF. Temperatures between 0°C and reflux may be utilized depending on the substrate.

Scheme C



Procedures for coupling piperazine amides to oxoacetyl derivatives are described in the Blair, Wang, Wallace, or Wang references 93-95 and 106 respectively. The entire disclosures in U.S. Patent 6,469,006 granted October 22, 2002; U.S. Patent 6,476,034 granted November 5, 2002; U.S. Patent Application Serial Number 10/027,612 filed December 19, 2001, which is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Serial Number 09/888,686 filed June 25, 2001 (corresponding to PCT WO 02/04440, published January 17, 2002); and U.S. Patent Application Serial Number 10/214,982 filed August 7, 2002, which is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Serial Number 10/038,306 filed January 2, 2002 (corresponding to PCT WO 02/62423

published August 15, 2002) are incorporated by reference herein. The procedures used to couple indole or azaindole oxoacetic acids to piperazine amides in these references can be used analogously to form the compounds of this invention except the piperidine alkenes are used in place of the piperazine benzamides.

5

General Schemes:

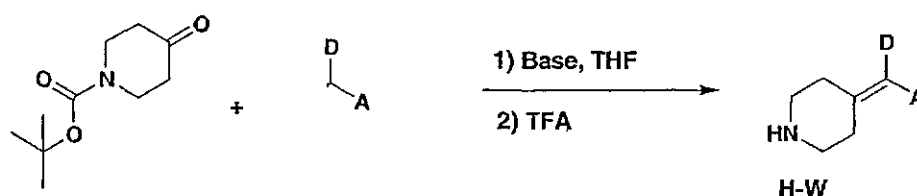
Scheme D describes a useful method for preparing the compounds described by H-W where W is as defined in the description and claims of the invention.

10 Typically, this methodology will work best when D is a group which lowers the PKA of the hydrogens on the adjacent methylene moiety. For example cyano, sulfonyl, amido and the like as specified in the claim. A preferably could be aryl or heteroaryl moieties as described in claim 1. A could also be other groups described in claim 1. Alkoxide bases of C1 to C4 alcohols can be utilized but other bases such as lithium, 15 sodium, or potassium dialkyl amides or the corresponding bistrimethylsilyl amides could also be utilized.

Preparation of intermediates:

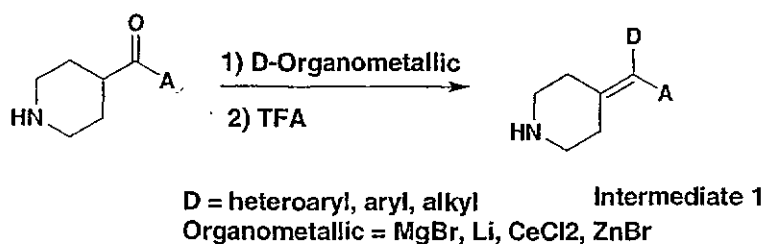
20

Scheme D



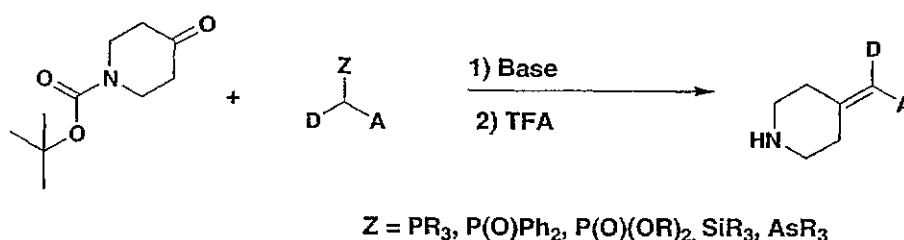
25

Scheme E



As shown in Scheme E, addition of an organometallic reagent to a ketone can provide an intermediate tertiary alkoxide which undergoes protonation and acid catalyzed elimination to form the desired double bond. A number of organo metallic reagents could suffice as shown but an extra equivalent (at least two total) could be needed to compensate for deprotection of the amine nitrogen in many cases.

Scheme F



10

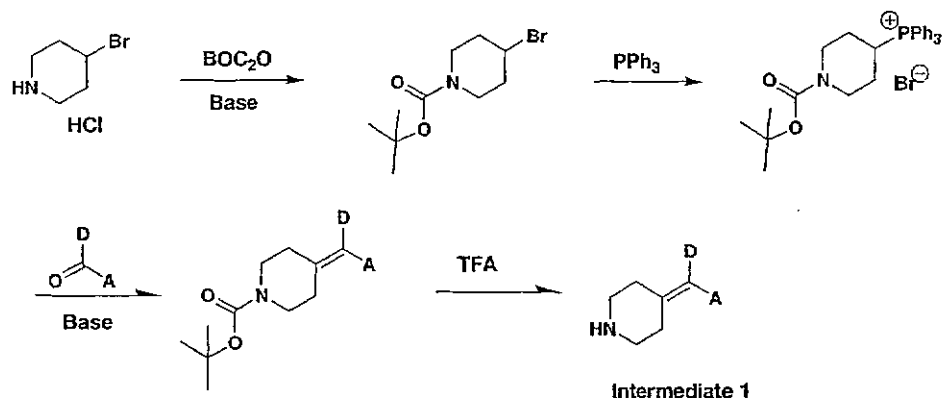
Standard olefination conditions such as Wittig, Horner Emmons, Petersen or Arsenic based can be used to convert the ketone to the desired products. Some general reviews of this methodology and directions for use are contained in the following references: Wadsworth, W.S., Jr., in "Organic Reactions", Dauben, W.G.,
 Ed., Wiley, New York, 1977, 25, 73. McMurry, J.E. *Acct. Chem. Res.* 1983, 16, 405.
 Cushman, M., et al. *Bioorg. Med. Chem.* 2002, 10, 2807. When Z= triphenyl phosphine, butyl lithium or LDA could be used to generate the phosphorus ylide in THF and then the ylide reacted with the ketone to provide the desired product. The phosphinate or phosphine oxide based reagents could be used with similar bases or
 with sodium or potassium methoxide or ethoxide in the corresponding alcohol solvents.

25

30

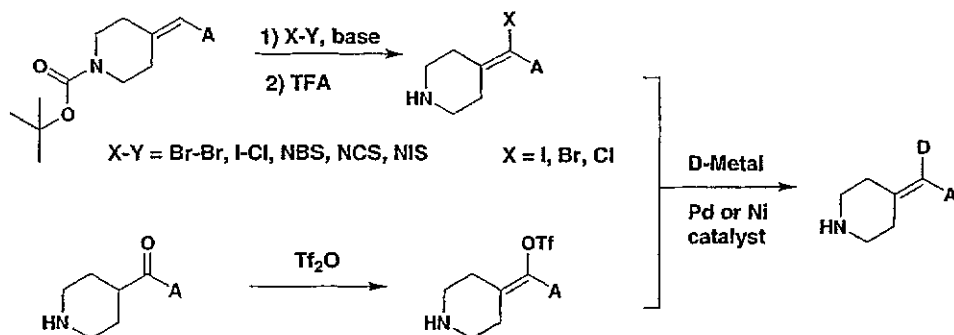
49

Scheme G



5

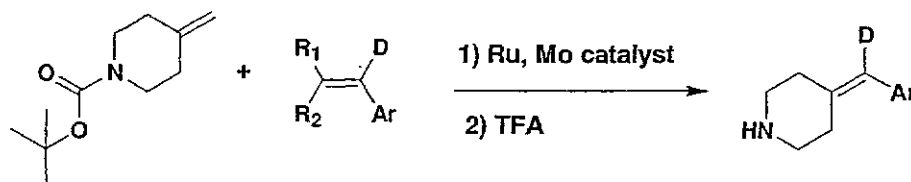
Scheme H



As shown above in Scheme H, substituted azaindoles containing a chloride, bromide, iodide, triflate, or phosphonate undergo coupling reactions with a boronate (Suzuki type reactions) or a stannane to provide substituted azaindoles. Stannanes and boronates are prepared via standard literature procedures, or as described in the experimental section of this application. The vinyl bromides, chlorides, triflates, or phosphonates may undergo metal mediated coupling to provide compounds of formula W-H. Stille or Suzuki couplings are particularly useful. A detailed discussion of the references and best conditions for these kinds of metal mediated coupling is described later in this application where the discussion is combined with a description of how these types of reactions may also be used to functionalize indoles and azaindoles.

When Ar is benzene, starting materials are commercially available

Scheme J



5

Alternatively, the compounds W-H could be prepared via olefin metathesis using highly active Rhodium catalysts. The methylene starting material can be prepared via simple Wittig methylenation of the precursor ketone which is prepared via literature methods. The olefin metathesis is preferably carried out using 1% of the imadazoylidene ruthenium benzylidene catalyst described in the following reference.

The reaction is carried out starting at low temperatures (-40°) or similar. Starting methylene material is mixed with excess olefin (5 to 100equivalents) and the reaction is warmed to ~40°C. **Synthesis of Symmetrical Trisubstituted Olefins by Cross**

15 **Metathesis.** Chatterjee, Arnab K.; Sanders, Daniel P.; Grubbs, Robert H.. *Organic Letters* ACS ASAP.

Additional references are listed below which show additional conditions and substrates which may be used with this catalysts.

20

Functional group diversity by ruthenium-catalyzed olefin cross-metathesis. Toste, F. Dean; Chatterjee, Arnab K.; Grubbs, Robert H.. The Arnold and Mabel Beckman Laboratory of Chemical Synthesis, Division of Chemistry and Chemical Engineering, California Institute of Technology, Pasadena, CA, USA. *Pure and Applied Chemistry* (2002), 74(1), 7-10. **A Versatile Precursor for the Synthesis of New Ruthenium Olefin Metathesis Catalysts.** Sanford, Melanie S.; Love, Jennifer A.; Grubbs, Robert H.. Arnold and Mabel Beckman Laboratories for Chemical Synthesis Division of Chemistry and Chemical Engineering, California Institute of Technology, Pasadena, CA, USA. *Organometallics* (2001), 20(25), 5314-5318.

25

30

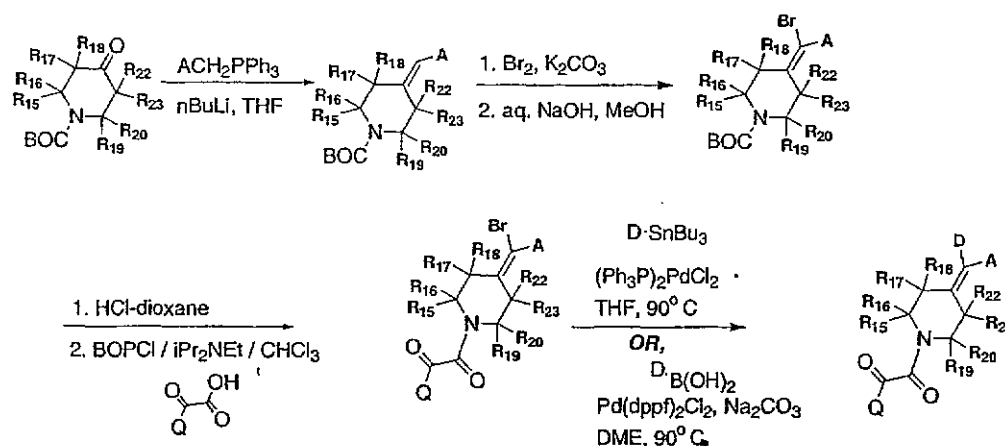
Olefin metathesis with 1,1-difluoroethylene. Trnka, Tina M.; Day, Michael W.; Grubbs, Robert H.. Arnold and Mabef Beckman Lab. of Chemical Synthesis, California Institute of Technology, Pasadena, CA, USA. *Angewandte Chemie, International Edition* (2001), 40(18), 3441-3444.

5

Scheme K shows a sequence in which a piperidone is converted to a monofunctionalized olefin via Wittig olefination. Bromination and dehydrobromination provides a versatile vinyl bromide intermediate. This intermediate is coupled to the $QC(O)C(O)OH$ acid with $BOPCl$ to provide a compound of formula I. This intermediate is then functionalized using palladium mediated couplings to either boronates or stannanes. Conditions for these couplings are described in this application.

15

SCHEME K

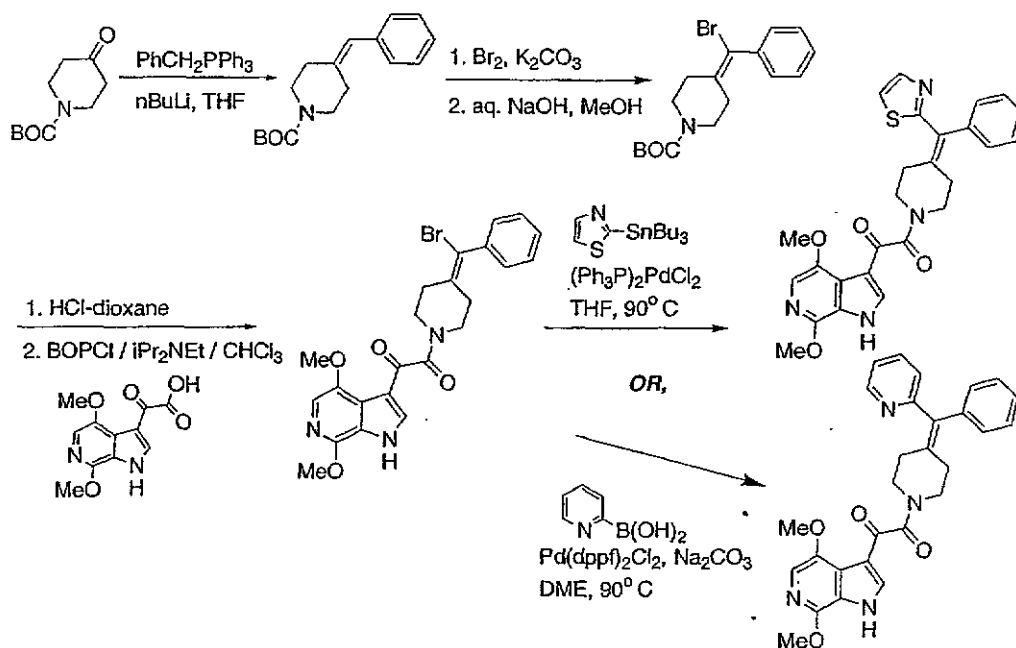


Scheme L shows specific examples of general Scheme K which are some of those described in the experimental section.

20

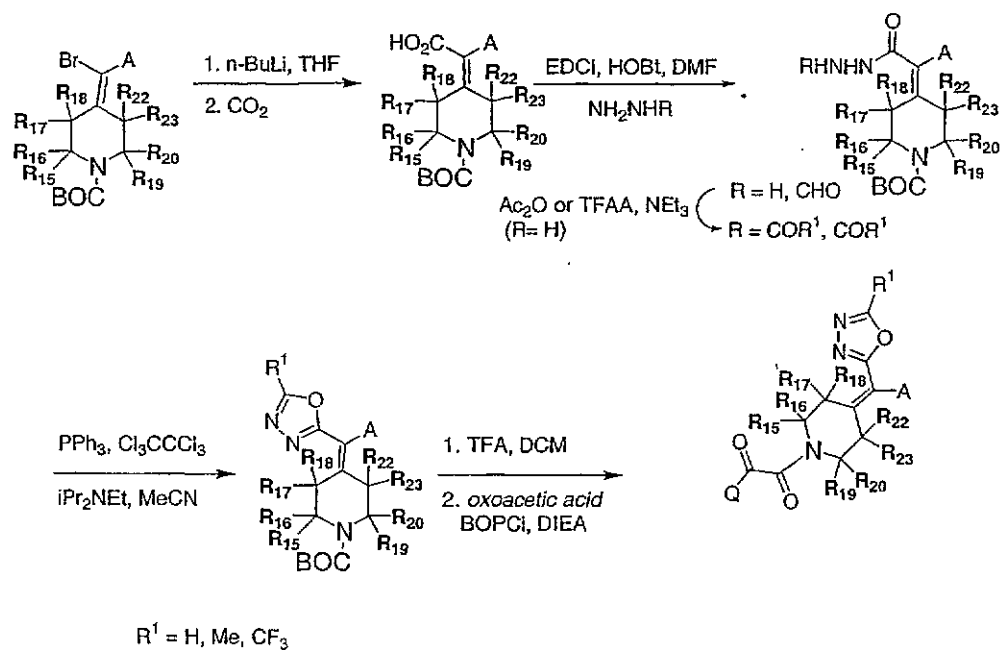
25

Scheme L



Scheme M shows how a protected vinyl bromide can be converted to a carboxylic acid via lithium bromide exchange and reaction with carbon dioxide. As described in this application and the incorporated ones, carboxylic acids are excellent precursors to many heterocycles or amides. The rest of Scheme M shows conversion to functionalized oxadiazoles. Other chemistry described in this application depicts other methods for converting acids to groups of other compounds of the invention.

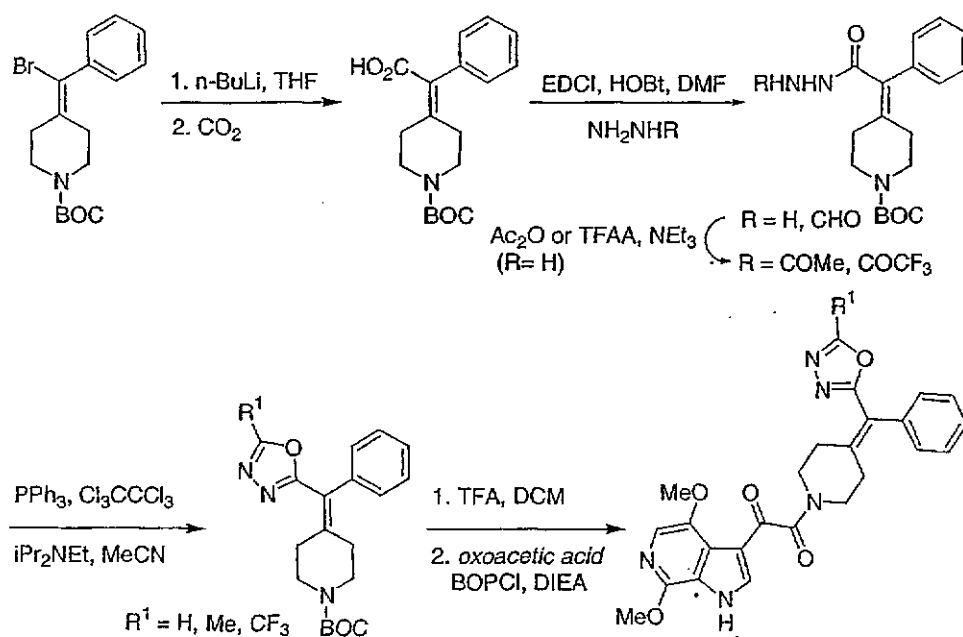
SCHEME M



Scheme N depicts a more specific example of Scheme M.

5

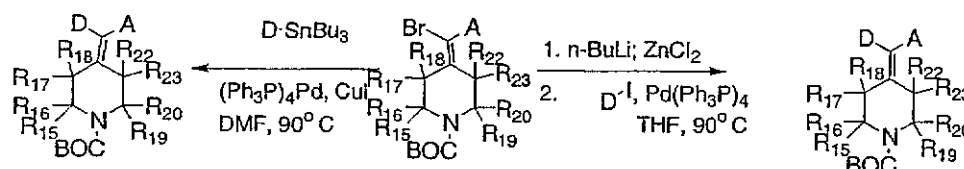
Scheme N



Scheme P depicts methods for functionalizing the vinyl bromide to install groups D (or A). Either a modified Stille coupling or a zinc mediated coupling are depicted. Details of these transformations are discussed later in the section on metal couplings.

5

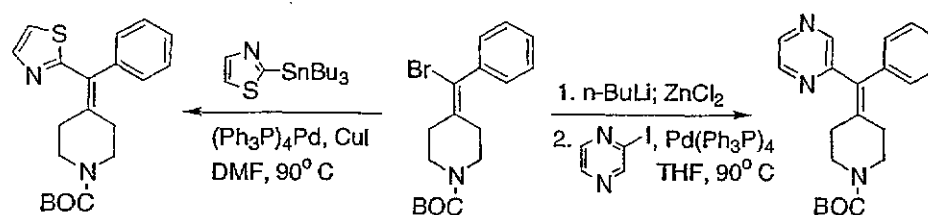
SCHEME P



Scheme Q depicts some specific examples of Scheme P.

10

SCHEME Q



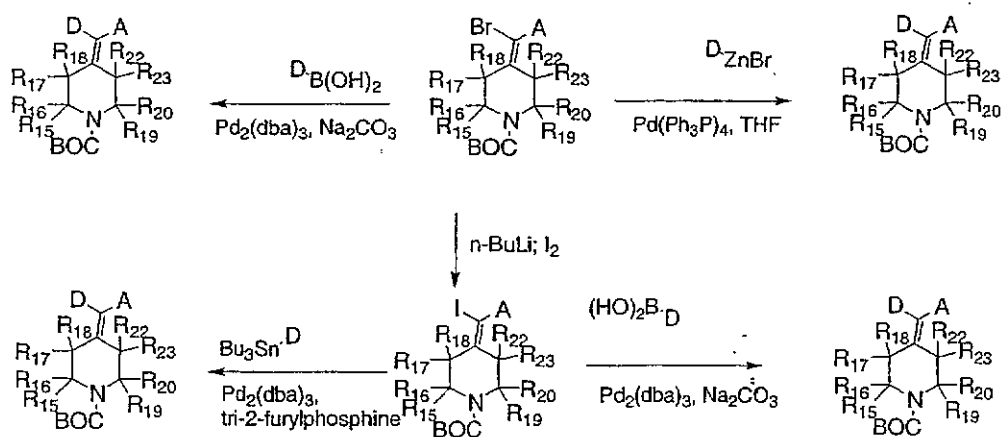
15 Scheme R depicts methods for functionalizing the vinyl bromide to install groups D (or A). Either a modified Stille coupling, zinc mediated coupling, or a Suzuki boronic acid coupling are depicted. A method for converting the vinyl bromide to vinyl iodide is shown. If the vinyl bromide fails to undergo efficient reaction, the more reactive iodide can be prepared as a better partner. Details of these
20 transformations are discussed later in the section on metal couplings.

25

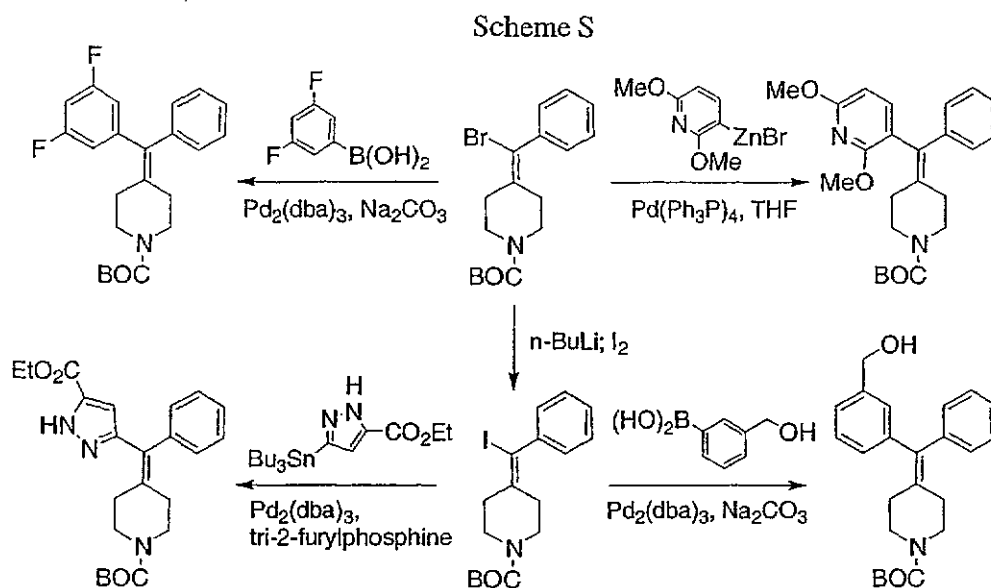
30

55

SCHEME R

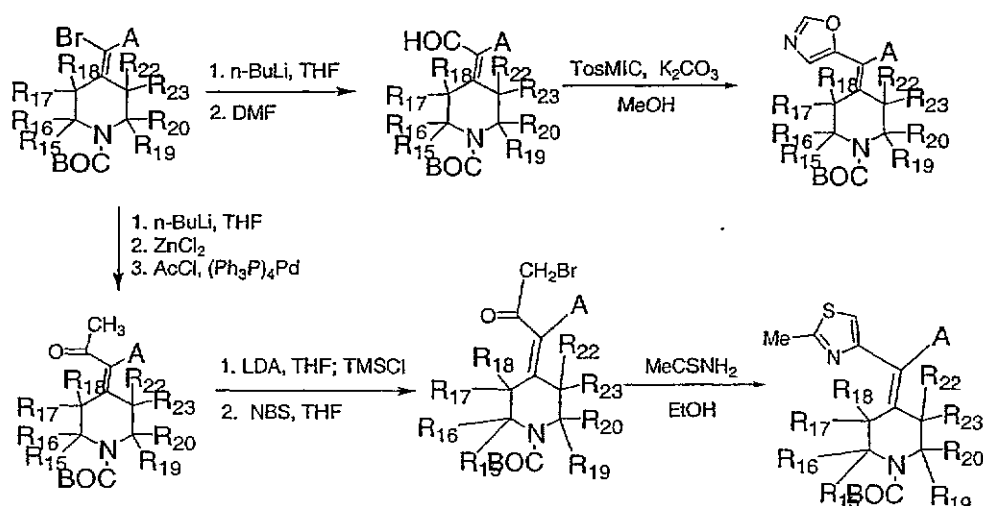


5 Scheme S provides specific examples of Scheme R.



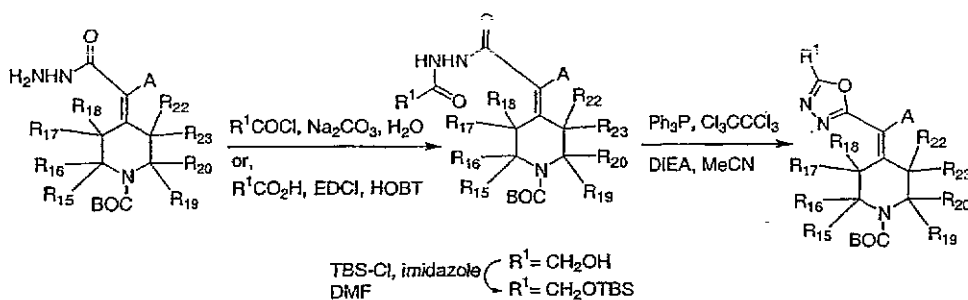
10 Scheme T shows methods for converting the vinyl bromide into more functionalized groups D (or A). A key aldehyde intermediate is generated from the vinyl bromide and can be used to generate heteroaryls such as the oxazole via reaction with Tosmic.

SCHEME T



- 5 Scheme U shows how a hydrazide (generated from the acid) can be used to prepare oxadiazoles with different substituents.

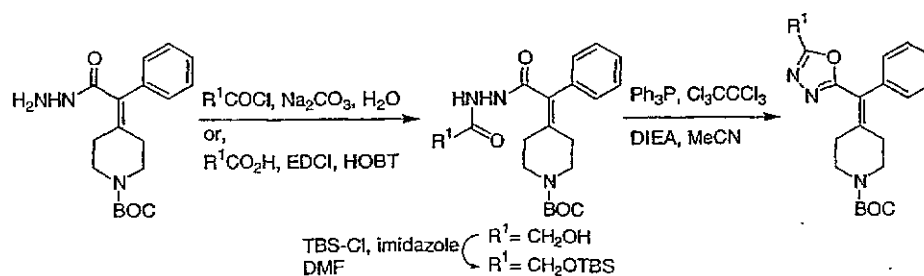
SCHEME U



10

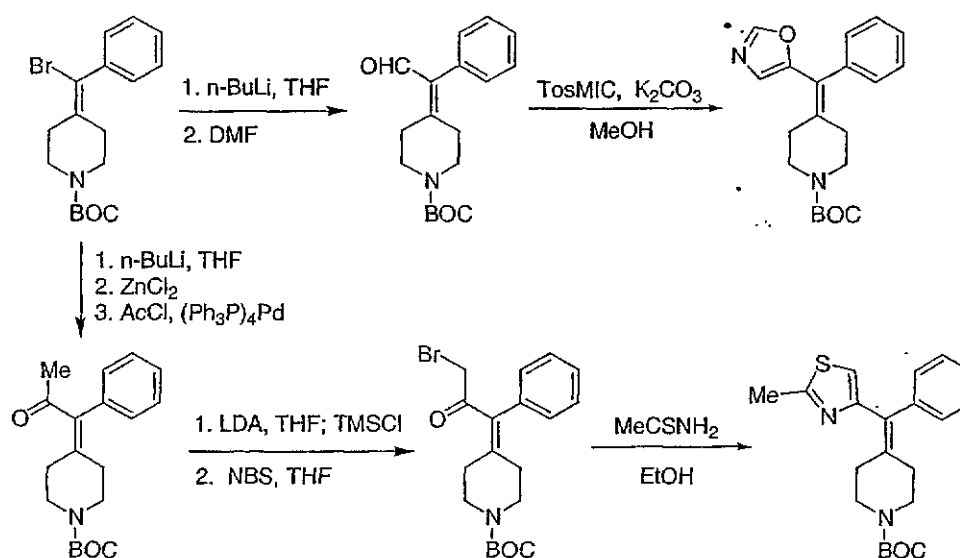
Scheme V provides more specific examples of Scheme U. ∴

Scheme V



Scheme W shows some other methods for installing D (or A).

Scheme W

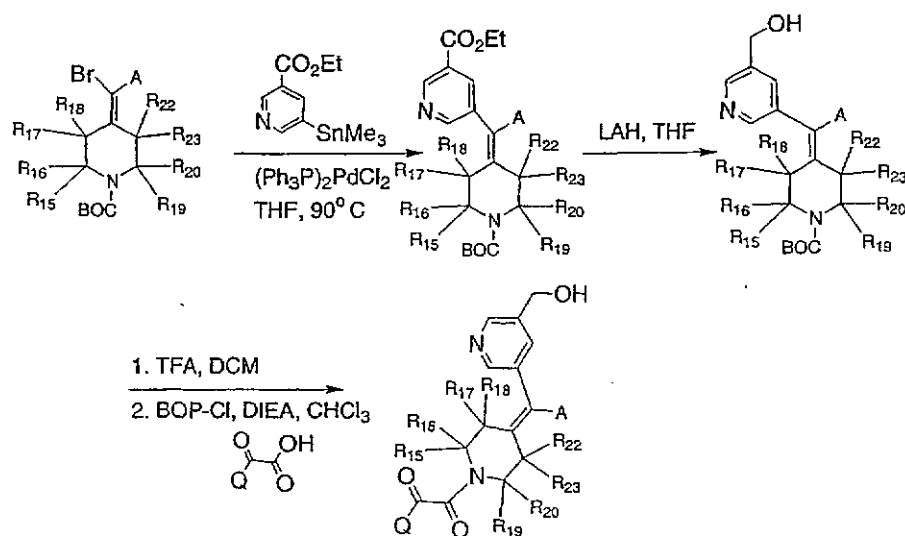


5

Scheme X shows a particular example where a functionalized heteroaryl or in this case aryl are coupled and then further functionalization can occur (in this case reduction of an ester to an alcohol).

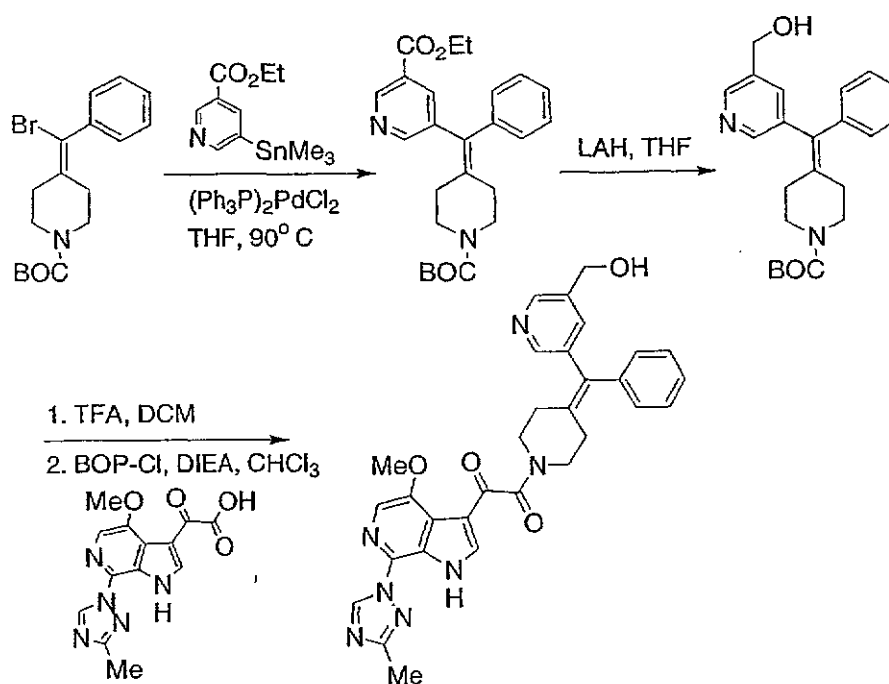
10

Scheme X



Scheme Y provides more specific examples of Scheme X.

Scheme Y



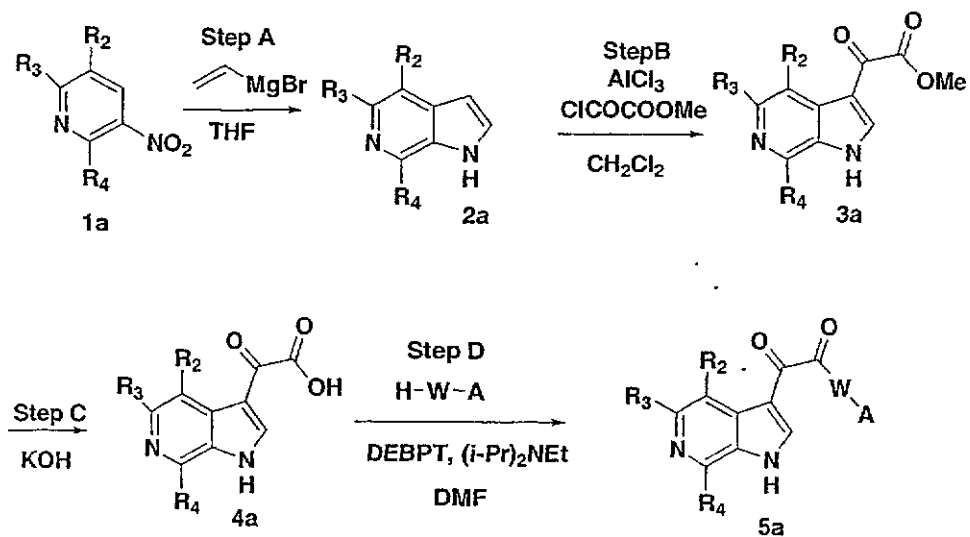
5

Procedures for making $Q(C-O)_m-OH$ or $Q(C-O)_m-X$ (as defined in formula I

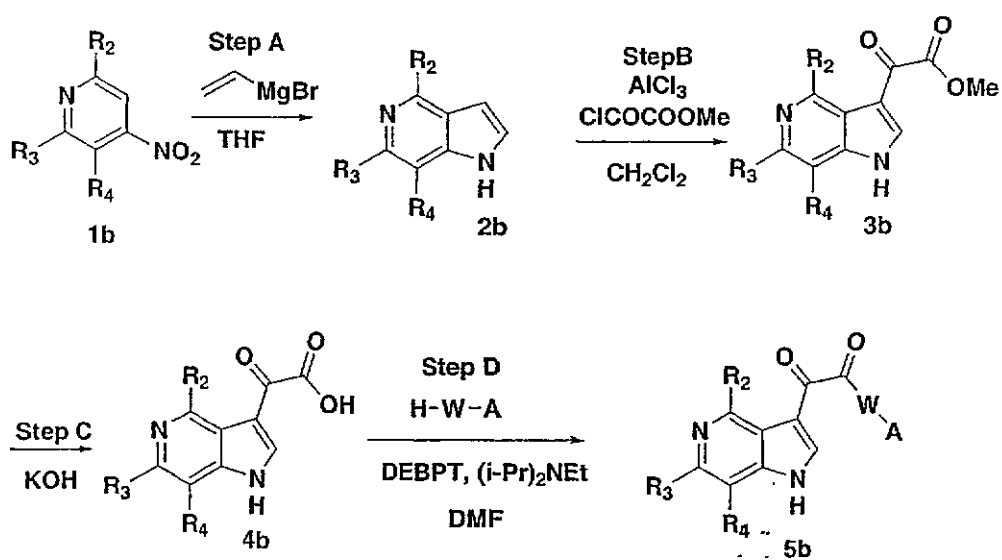
of the description of the invention and in schemes A-C above) are described herein and in the same references just cited for the coupling reaction (Blair, Wang, Wallace, or Wang references 93-95 and 106 respectively). Additional general procedures to construct substituted azaindole Q and Z of Formula I and intermediates useful for their synthesis are described in the following Schemes. The following Schemes provide specific examples of methodology which can be used to prepare Q or $Q(CO)_m-OH$ or derivatives in which the acid has been converted to an acid halide or ester.

15

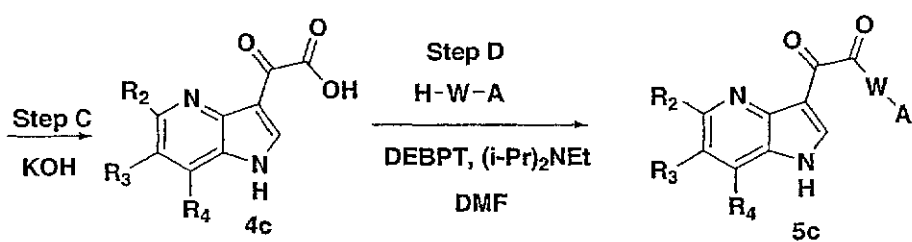
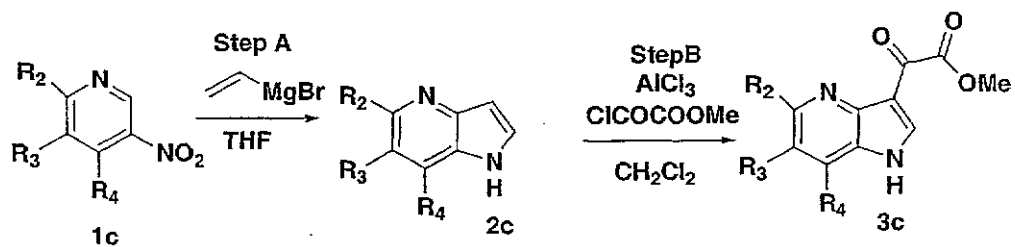
Scheme 1a



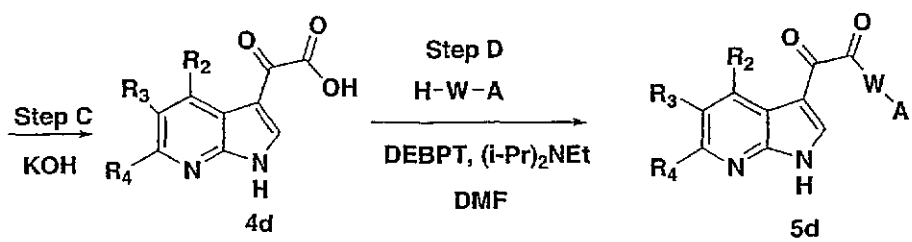
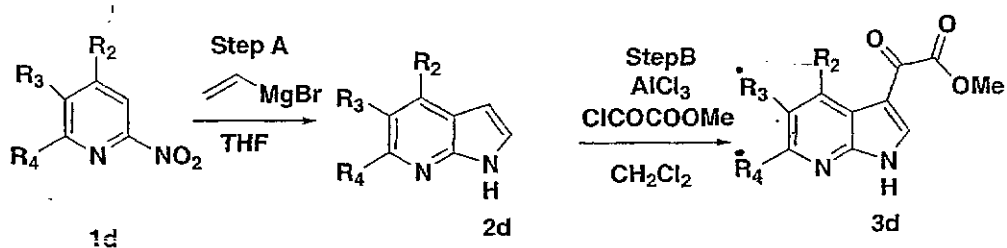
Scheme 1b



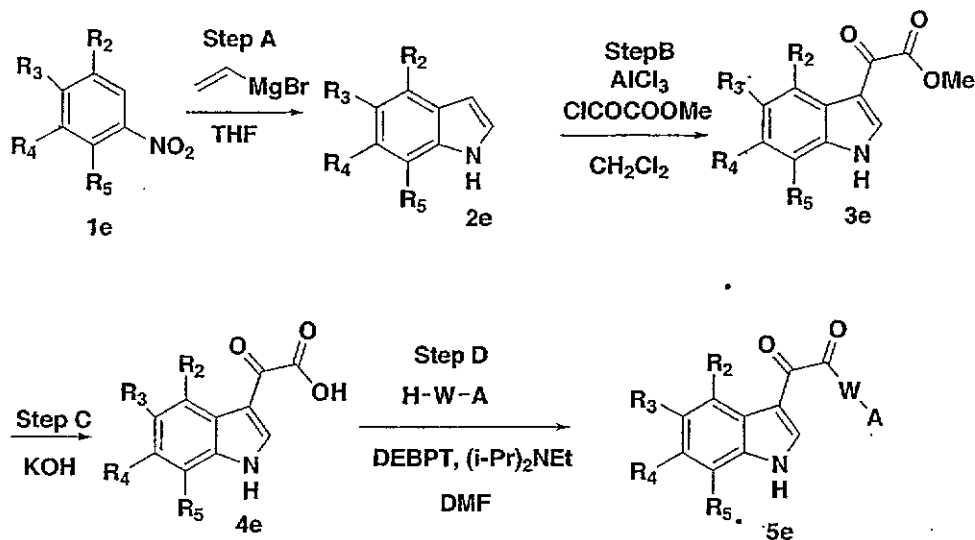
Scheme 1c



Scheme 1d



Scheme 1e



Step A in Schemes 1a-1e depict the synthesis of a aza indole or indole intermediates, 2a-2e via the well known Bartoli reaction in which vinyl magnesium bromide reacts with an aryl or heteroaryl nitro group, such as in 1a-1e, to form a five-membered nitrogen containing ring as shown. Some references for details on how to carry out the transformation include: Bartoli et al. a) *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1989**, 30, 2129. b) *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. I* **1991**, 2757. c) *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. II* **1991**, 657. d) *Synthesis* (1999), 1594. e) Zhang, Zhongxing; Yang, Zhong; Meanwell, Nicholas A.; Kadow, John F.; Wang, Tao. "A General Method for the Preparation of 4- and 6-Azaindoles". *Journal of Organic Chemistry* **2002**, 67 (7), 2345-2347 WO 0262423 August 15, 2002 "Preparation and antiviral activity for HIV-1 of substituted azaindoxoxoacetyl piperazines" Wang, Tao; Zhang, Zhongxing; Meanwell, Nicholas A.; Kadow, John F.; Yin, Zhiwei.

15

In the preferred procedure, a solution of vinyl Magnesium bromide in THF (typically 1.0M but from 0.25 to 3.0M) is added dropwise to a solution of the nitro pyridine in THF at -78° under an inert atmosphere of either nitrogen or Argon. After addition is completed, the reaction temperature is allowed to warm to -20° and then is stirred for approximately 12h before quenching with 20% aq ammonium chloride solution. The reaction is extracted with ethyl acetate and then worked up in a typical manner using a drying agent such as anhydrous magnesium sulfate or sodium sulfate.

20

Products are generally purified using chromatography over Silica gel. Best results are generally achieved using freshly prepared vinyl Magnesium bromide. In some cases, vinyl Magnesium chloride may be substituted for vinyl Magnesium bromide. In some cases modified procedures might occasionally provide enhanced yield. An inverse
 5 addition procedure can sometimes be employed (The nitro pyridine solution is added to the vinyl Grignard solution). Occasionally solvents such as dimethoxy ethane or dioxane may prove useful. A procedure in which the nitro compound in THF is added to a 1M solution of vinyl magnesium bromide in THF at -40°C may prove beneficial. Following completion of the reaction by TLC the reaction is quenched
 10 with sat ammonium chloride aqueous solution and purified by standard methods. A reference for this alternative procedure is contained in M.C. Pirrung, M. Wedel, and Y. Zhao et. al. *Syn Lett* 2002, 143-145.

Substituted azaindoles may be prepared by methods described in the literature
 15 or may be available from commercial sources. Thus there are many methods for synthesizing intermediates 2a-2d and the specific examples are too numerous to even list. Methodology for the preparation of many compounds of interest is described in references of Bian, Wang, Wallace, and Wang references 93-95 and 103 respectively. A review on the synthesis of 7-azaindoles has been published (Merour et. al.
 20 reference 102). Alternative syntheses of aza indoles and general methods for synthesizing intermediates 2 include, but are not limited to, those described in the following references (a-k below): a) Prokopov, A. A.; Yakhontov, L. N. *Khim. - Farm. Zh.* 1994, 28(7), 30-51; b) Lablache-Combier, A. **Heteroaromatics. Photoinduced Electron Transfer** 1988, Pt. C, 134-312; c) Saify, Zafar Said. *Pak. J. Pharmacol.* 1986, 2(2), 43-6; d) Bisagni, E. *Jerusalem Symp. Quantum Chem. Biochem.* 1972, 4, 439-45; e) Yakhontov, L. N. *Usp. Khim.* 1968, 37(7), 1258-87; f) Willette, R. E. *Advan. Heterocycl. Chem.* 1968, 9, 27-105; g) Mahadevan, I.; Rasmussen, M. *Tetrahedron* 1993, 49(33), 7337-52; h) Mahadevan, I.; Rasmussen, M. *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* 1992, 29(2), 359-67; i) Spivey, A. C.; Fekner, T.; Spey, S.
 30 E.; Adams, H. *J. Org. Chem.* 1999, 64(26), 9430-9443; j) Spivey, A.C.; Fekner, T.; Adams, H. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1998, 39(48), 8919-8922; k) *Advances in Heterocyclic Chemistry* (Academic press) 1991, Vol. 52, pg 235-236 and references therein. Other references later in this application. Starting indole intermediates of formula 2e

(Scheme 1e) are known or are readily prepared according to literature procedures, such as those described in Gribble, G. (Refs. 24 and 99), Bartoli et al (Ref. 36), reference 37, or the book by Richard A. Sundberg in reference 40. Other methods for the preparation of indole intermediates include: the Leimgruber-Batcho Indole
5 synthesis (reference 93); the Fisher Indole synthesis (references 94 and 95); the 2,3-rearrangement protocol developed by Gassman (reference 96); the annelation of pyrroles (reference 97); tin mediated cyclizations (reference 98); and the Larock palladium mediated cyclization of 2-alkynyl anilines. Many other methods of indole synthesis are known and a chemist with typical skill in the art can readily locate
10 conditions for preparation of indoles which can be utilized to prepare compounds of Formula I.

Step B. Intermediate 3a-e can be prepared by reaction of intermediates 2, with an excess of ClCOCOOME in the presence of AlCl₃ (aluminum chloride)
15 (Sycheva et al, Ref. 26, Sycheva, T.V.; Rubtsov, N.M.; Sheinker, Yu.N.; Yakhontov, L.N. Some further descriptions of the exact procedures to carry out this reaction are contained in a) Zhang, Zhongxing; Yang, Zhong; Wong, Henry; Zhu, Juliang; Meanwell, Nicholas A.; Kadow, John F.; Wang, Tao. "An Effective Procedure for the Acylation of Azaindoles at C-3." *J. Org. Chem.* 2002, 67(17), 6226-
20 6227; b) Tao Wang et. al. US Patent 6,476,034 B2 "Antiviral Azaindole derivatives" published Nov 5, 2002; c) W. Blair et al. PCT patent application WO 00/76521 A1 published Dec 21,2000; d) O. Wallace et. al. PCT application WO 02/04440A1 published January 17, 2002 Some reactions of 5-cyano-6-chloro-7-azaindoles and lactam-lactim tautomerism in 5-cyano-6-hydroxy-7-
25 azaindoles. *Khim. Geterotsikl. Soedin.*, 1987, 100-106). Typically an inert solvent such as CH₂Cl₂ is used but others such as THF, Et₂O, DCE, dioxane, benzene, or toluene may find applicability either alone or in mixtures. Other oxalate esters such as ethyl or benzyl mono esters of oxalic acid could also suffice for either method shown above. More lipophilic esters ease isolation during aqueous extractions.
30 Phenolic or substituted phenolic (such as pentafluorophenol) esters enable direct coupling of the H-W-A in Step D without activation. Lewis acid catalysts, such as tin tetrachloride, titanium IV chloride, and aluminum chloride are employed in Step B

with aluminum chloride being most preferred. Alternatively, the azaindole is treated with a Grignard reagent such as MeMgI (methyl magnesium iodide), methyl magnesium bromide or ethyl magnesium bromide and a zinc halide, such as ZnCl₂ (zinc chloride) or zinc bromide, followed by the addition of an oxalyl chloride mono ester, such as ClCOCOOME (methyl chlorooxoacetate) or another ester as above, to afford the aza-indole glyoxyl ester (Shadrina et al, Ref. 25). Oxalic acid esters such as methyl oxalate, ethyl oxalate or as above are used. Aprotic solvents such as CH₂Cl₂, Et₂O, benzene, toluene, DCE, or the like may be used alone or in combination for this sequence. In addition to the oxalyl chloride mono esters, oxalyl chloride itself may be reacted with the azaindole and then further reacted with an appropriate amine, such as H-W-A.

Step C. Hydrolysis of the methyl ester, (intermediates 3a-3e, Schemes 1a-1e) affords a potassium salt of intermediates 4, which is coupled with alkenyl piperidines H-W-A as shown in Step D of the Schemes 1a-1e. Some typical conditions employ methanolic or ethanolic sodium hydroxide followed by careful acidification with aqueous hydrochloric acid of varying molarity but 1M HCl is preferred. The acidification is not utilized in many cases as described above for the preferred conditions. Lithium hydroxide or potassium hydroxide could also be employed and varying amounts of water could be added to the alcohols. Propanols or butanols could also be used as solvents. Elevated temperatures up to the boiling points of the solvents may be utilized if ambient temperatures do not suffice. Alternatively, the hydrolysis may be carried out in a non polar solvent such as CH₂Cl₂ or THF in the presence of Triton B. Temperatures of -78 °C to the boiling point of the solvent may be employed but -10 °C is preferred. Other conditions for ester hydrolysis are listed in reference 41 and both this reference and many of the conditions for ester hydrolysis are well known to chemists of average skill in the art.

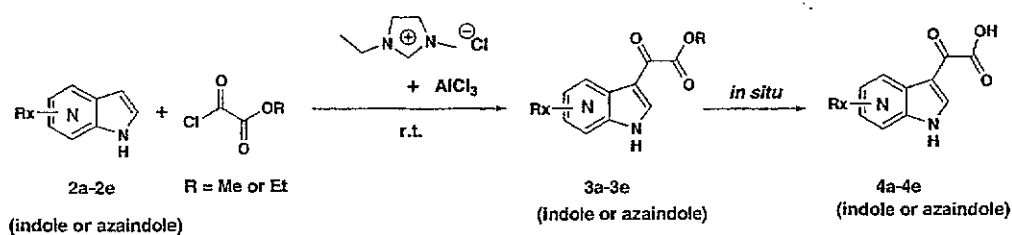
Alternative procedures for step B and C:

Imidazolium Chloroaluminate:

We found that ionic liquid 1-alkyl-3-alkylimidazolium chloroaluminate is generally useful in promoting the Friedel-Crafts type acylation of indoles and

azaindoles. The ionic liquid is generated by mixing 1-alkyl-3-alkylimidazolium chloride with aluminium chloride at room temperature with vigorous stirring. 1:2 or 1:3 molar ratio of 1-alkyl-3-alkylimidazolium chloride to aluminium chloride is preferred. One particular useful imidazolium chloroaluminate for the acylation of azaindole with methyl or ethyl chlorooxoacetate is the 1-ethyl-3-methylimidazolium chloroaluminate. The reaction is typically performed at ambient temperature and the azaindoleglyoxyl ester can be isolated. More conveniently, we found that the glyoxyl ester can be hydrolyzed *in situ* at ambient temperature on prolonged reaction time (typically overnight) to give the corresponding glyoxyl acid (intermediates 4a-4e) for amide formation (Scheme 2).

Scheme 2



15

A representative experimental procedure is as follows: 1-ethyl-3-methylimidazolium chloride (2 equiv.; purchased from TCI; weighted under a stream of nitrogen) was stirred in an oven-dried round bottom flask at r.t. under a nitrogen atmosphere, and added aluminium chloride (6 equiv.; anhydrous powder packaged under argon in ampules purchased from Aldrich preferred; weighted under a stream of nitrogen). The mixture was vigorously stirred to form a liquid, which was then added azaindole (1 equiv.) and stirred until a homogenous mixture resulted. The reaction mixture was added dropwise ethyl or methyl chlorooxoacetate (2 equiv.) and then stirred at r.t. for 16 h. After which time, the mixture was cooled in an ice-water bath and the reaction quenched by carefully adding excess water. The precipitates were filtered, washed with water and dried under high vacuum to give the azaindoleglyoxylic acid. For some examples, 3 equivalents of 1-ethyl-3-methylimidazolium chloride and chlorooxoacetate may be required. A more comprehensive reference with additional examples is contained in: Yeung, Kap-Sun;

Farkas, Michelle E.; Qiu, Zhilei; Yang, Zhong. **Friedel-Crafts acylation of indoles in acidic imidazolium chloroaluminate ionic liquid at room temperature.** Tetrahedron Letters (2002), 43(33), 5793-5795.

- 5 Related references: (1) Welton, T. *Chem Rev.* **1999**; 99, 2071; (2) Surette, J. K. D.; Green, L.; Singer, R. D. *Chem. Commun.* **1996**, 2753; (3) Saleh, R. Y. WO 0015594.

Step D. Was described above.

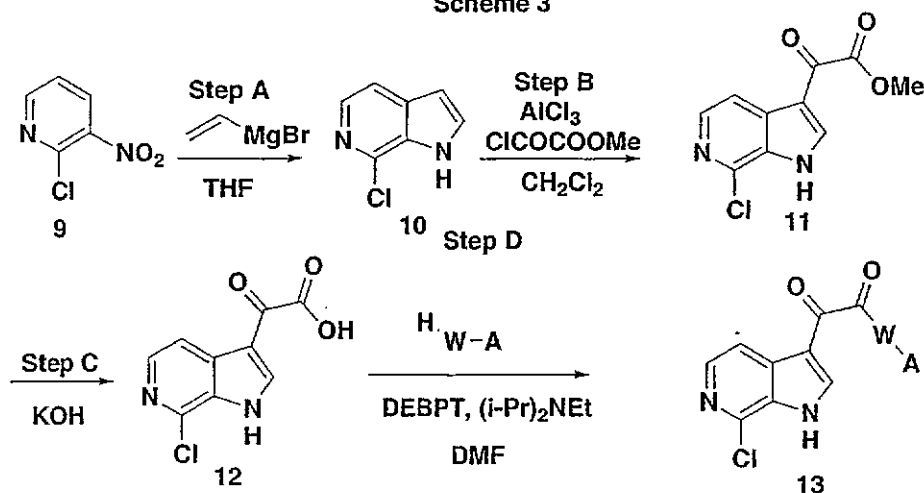
10

It should be noted that in many cases reactions are depicted for only one position of an intermediate, such as the R⁵ position, for example. It is to be understood that such reactions could be used at other positions, such as R²-R⁴, of the various intermediates. Reaction conditions and methods given in the specific
15 examples are broadly applicable to compounds with other substitution and other transformations in this application. Schemes 1 and 2 describe general reaction schemes for taking appropriately substituted Q (indoles and azaindoles) and converting them to compounds of Formula I. While these schemes are very general, other permutations such as carrying a precursor or precursors to substituents R²
20 through R⁵ through the reaction scheme and then converting it to a compound of Formula I in the last step are also contemplated methods of this invention. Nonlimiting examples of such strategies follow in subsequent schemes.

The amide bond construction reactions depicted in step D of schemes 1a-1e
25 could be carried out using the specialized conditions described herein or alternatively by applying the conditions or coupling reagents for amide bond construction described in Wallace, reference 95. Some specific nonlimiting examples are given in this application.

30 Additional procedures for synthesizing, modifying and attaching groups are contained in references 93-95 and 103 or are described below.

Scheme 3



Schemes 3- provide more specific examples of the transformation previously described in Scheme A. Intermediates 9-13 are prepared by the methodologies as described for intermediates 1c-5c in Scheme 1c. Scheme 4 is another embodiment of the transformations described in Schemes 1a-1e and 3. Conversion of the phenol to the chloride (Step S, Scheme 4) may be accomplished according to the procedures described in Reimann, E.; Wichmann, P.; Hoefner, G.; *Sci. Pharm.* **1996**, *64*(3), 637-646; and Katritzky, A.R.; Rachwal, S.; Smith, T.P.; Steel, P.J.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1995**, *32*(3), 979-984. Step T of Scheme 4 can be carried out as described for Step A of Scheme 1. The bromo intermediate can then be converted into alkoxy, chloro, or fluoro intermediates as shown in Step U of Scheme 4. When step U is the conversion of the bromide into alkoxy derivatives, the conversion may be carried out by reacting the bromide with an excess of, for example, sodium methoxide or potassium methoxide in methanol with cuprous salts, such as copper I bromide, copper I iodide, and copper I cyanide. The reaction may be carried out at temperatures of between ambient and 175° C but most likely will be around 115°C or 100°C. The reaction may be run in a pressure vessel or sealed tube to prevent escape of volatiles such as methanol. Alternatively, the reaction can be run in a solvent such as toluene or xylene and the methanol allowed to partially escape the reaction vessel by heating and then achieving reflux by adding a condenser. The preferred conditions on a typically laboratory scale utilize 3eq of sodium methoxide in methanol, CuBr as the reaction catalyst (0.2 to 3 equivalents with the preferred being 1 eq or less) , and a reaction temperature of 115° C. The reaction is carried out in a sealed tube or sealed reaction

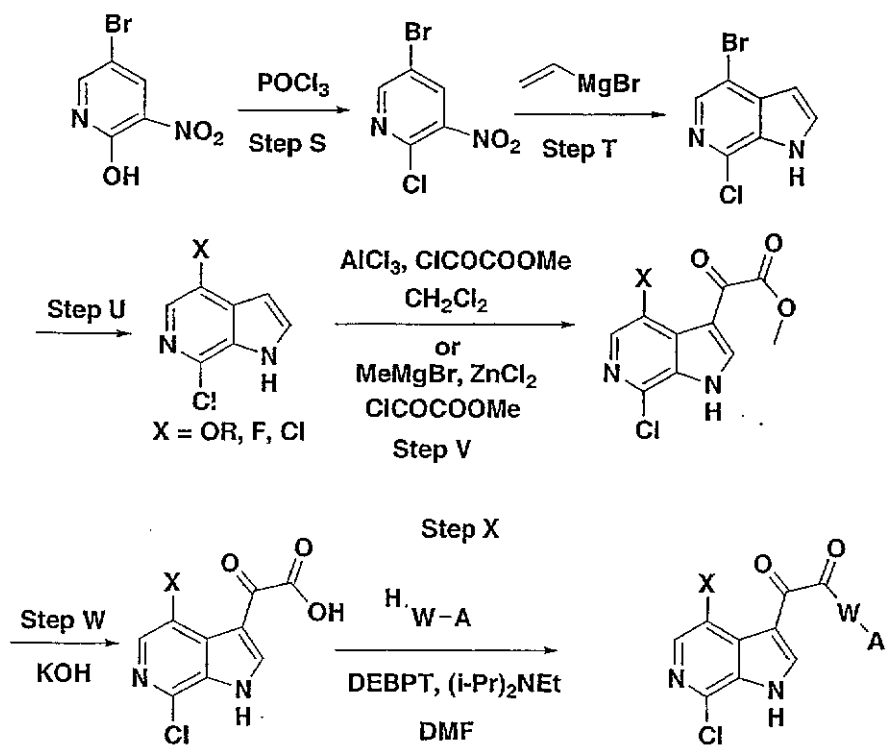
vessel. The copper catalyzed displacement reaction of aryl halides by methoxide is described in detail in H.L. Aalten et al. 1989, *Tetrahedron* 45(17) pp5565 to 5578 and these conditions described herein were also utilized in this application with azaindoles. The conversion of the bromide into alkoxy derivatives may also be

5 carried out according to procedures described in. Palucki, M.; Wolfe, J.P.; Buchwald, S.L.; *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1997**, 119(14), 3395-3396; Yamato, T.; Komine, M.; Nagano, Y.; *Org. Prep. Proc. Int.* **1997**, 29(3), 300-303; Rychnovsky, S.D.; Hwang, K.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1994**, 59(18), 5414-5418. Conversion of the bromide to the fluoro derivative (Step U, Scheme 4) may be accomplished according to Antipin,

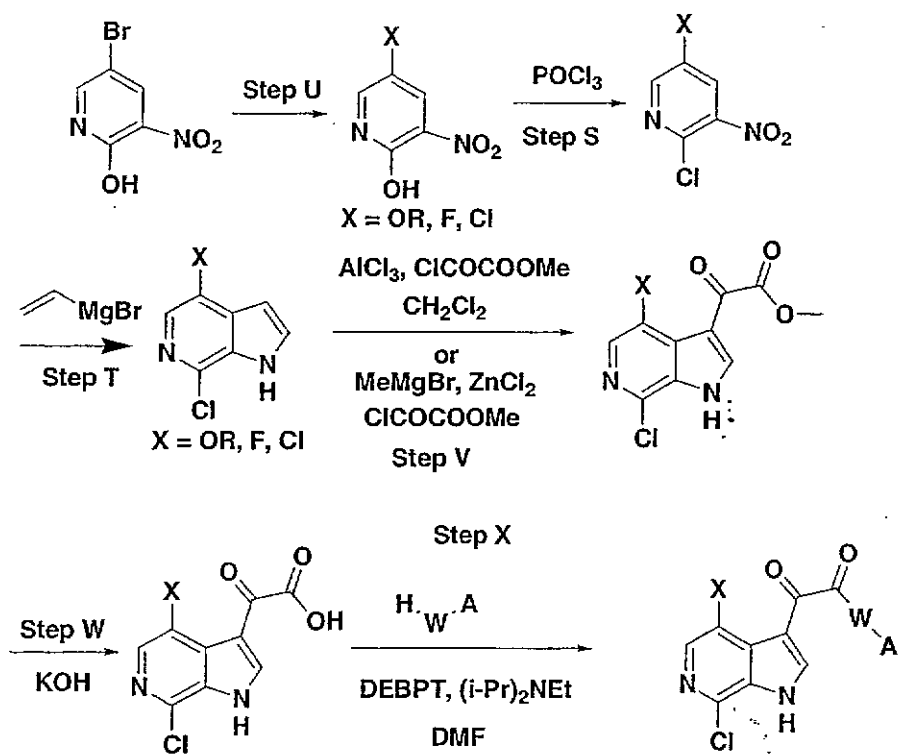
10 I.S.; Vigalok, A.I.; Kononov, A.I.; *Zh. Org. Khim.* **1991**, 27(7), 1577-1577; and Uchibori, Y.; Umeno, M.; Seto, H.; Qian, Z.; Yoshioka, H.; *Synlett.* **1992**, 4, 345-346. Conversion of the bromide to the chloro derivative (Step U, Scheme 5) may be accomplished according to procedures described in Gilbert, E.J.; Van Vranken, D.L.; *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1996**, 118(23), 5500-5501; Mongin, F.; Mongin, O.; Trecourt, F.;

15 Godard, A.; Queguiner, G.; *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1996**, 37(37), 6695-6698; and O'Connor, K.J.; Burrows, C.J.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1991**, 56(3), 1344-1346. Steps V, W, and X of Scheme 4 are carried out according to the procedures previously described for Steps B, C, and D of Scheme 1a-1e, respectively. The steps of Scheme 4 may be carried out in a different order as shown in Schemes 5 and Scheme 6.

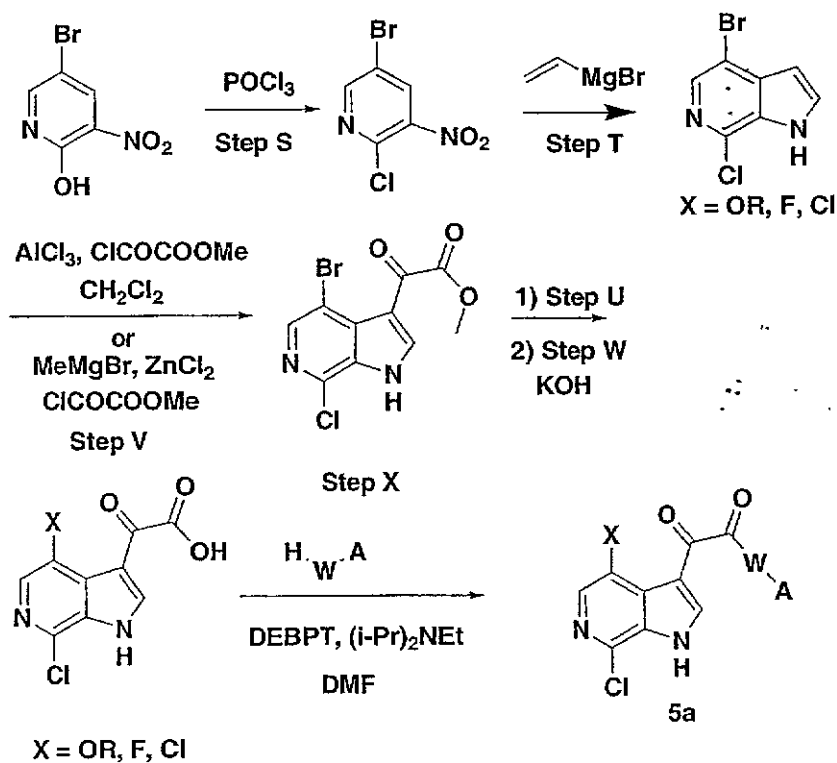
Scheme 4



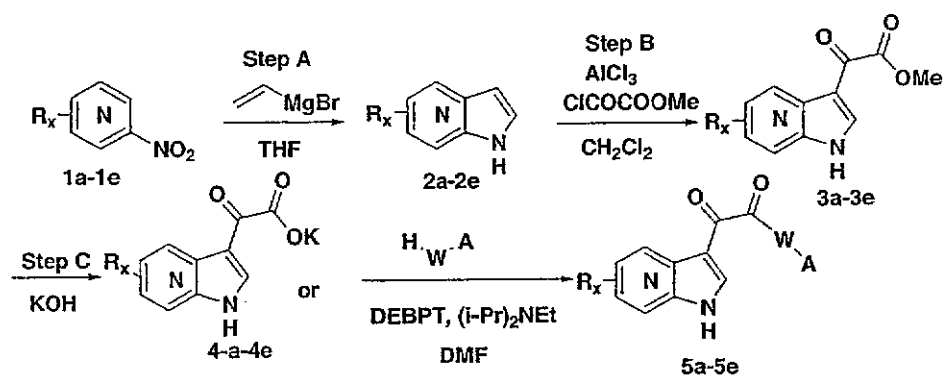
Scheme 5



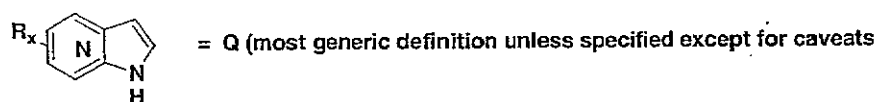
Scheme 6



Scheme 7



$R_x = R_2-R_4$ for azaindoles or R_2-R_5 for indoles



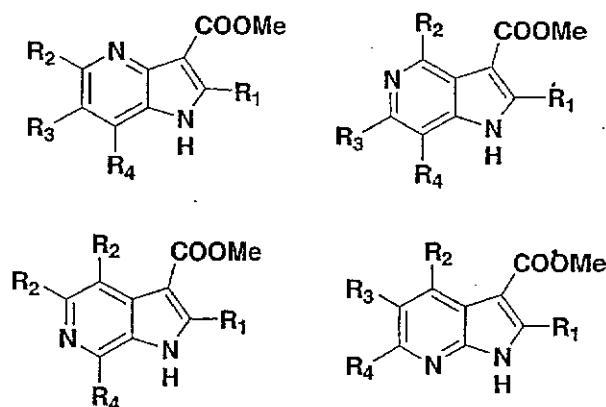
R_6 is nothing

R_2 is not depicted (in the interest of convenience) but is considered hydrogen. Other R_2 groups would work similarly in these transformations within reactivity limits of a chemist skilled in the art.

R_7 is Hydrogen

Scheme 7 depicts a shorthand method for representing the reactions in Scheme 1a-1e and generic Q. It is understood, for the purposes of Scheme 7 and further Schemes, that 1b is used to synthesize 2b-5b, 1c provides 2c-5c and 1d provides 2d-5d etc. The substituents R_x represent for azaindoles R₂-R₄ and for indoles R₂-R₅. In formulas in following schemes, one of the substituents may be depicted but it is understood that each formula can represent the appropriate generic azaindoles or indole in order to keep the application succinct.

Scheme 8

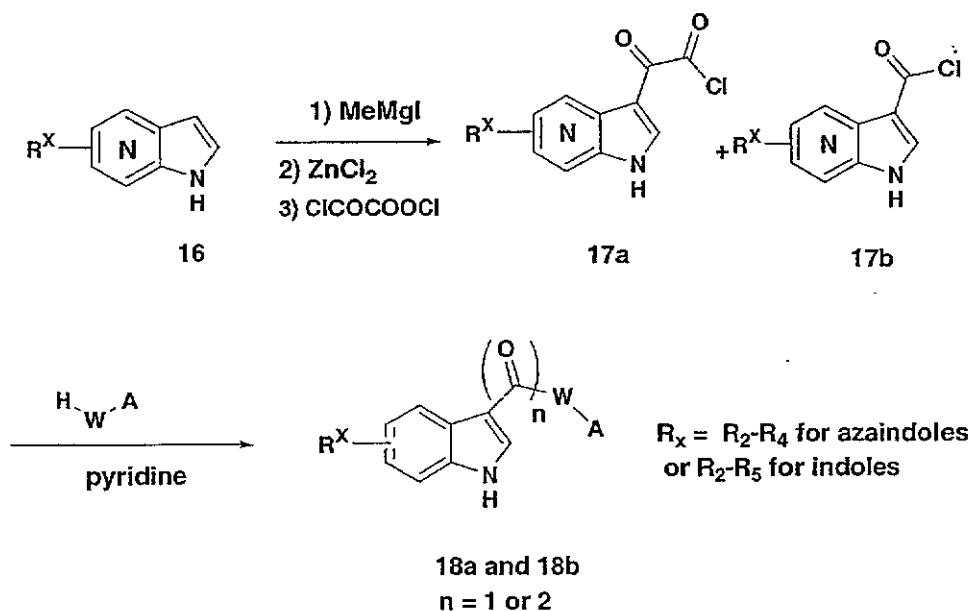


10

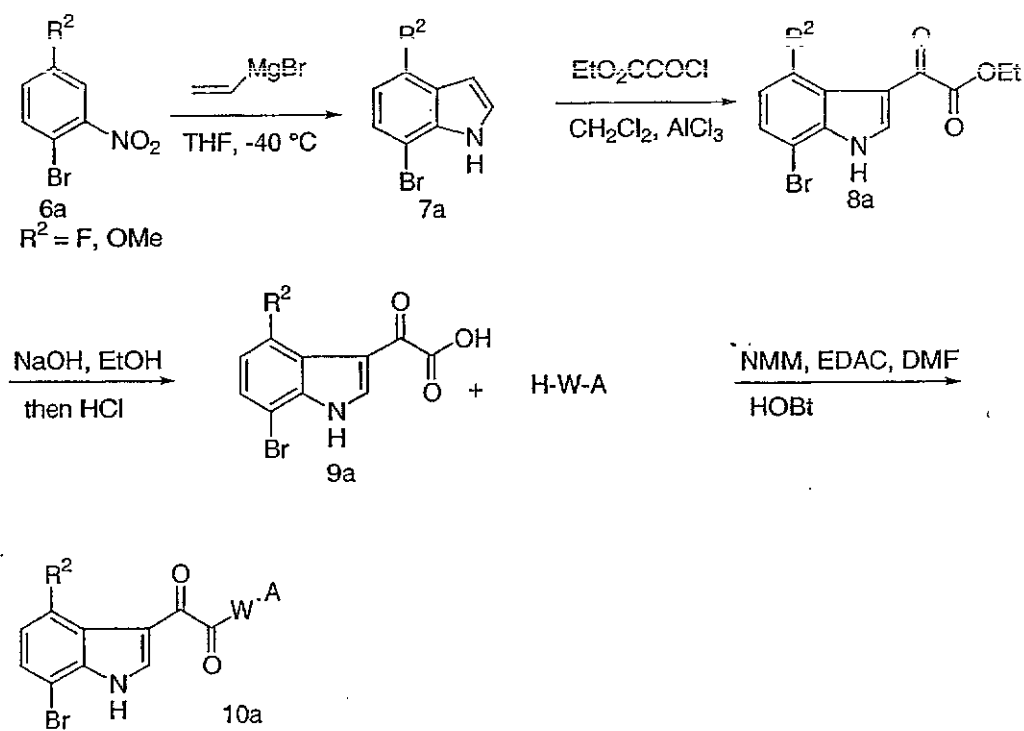
An alternative method for carrying out the sequence outlined in steps B-D (shown in Scheme 9) involves treating an azaindole, such as 16, obtained by procedures described in the literature or from commercial sources, with MeMgI and ZnCl₂, followed by the addition of ClCOCOCl (oxalyl chloride) in either THF or Et₂O to afford a mixture of a glyoxyl chloride azaindole, 17a, and an acyl chloride azaindole, 17b. The resulting mixture of glyoxyl chloride azaindole and acyl chloride azaindole is then coupled with H-W-A under basic conditions to afford the products of step D as a mixture of compounds, 18a and 18b, where either one or two carbonyl groups link the azaindole and group W. Separation via chromatographic methods which are well known in the art provides the pure 18a and 18b. This sequence is summarized in Scheme 9, below.

72

Scheme 9



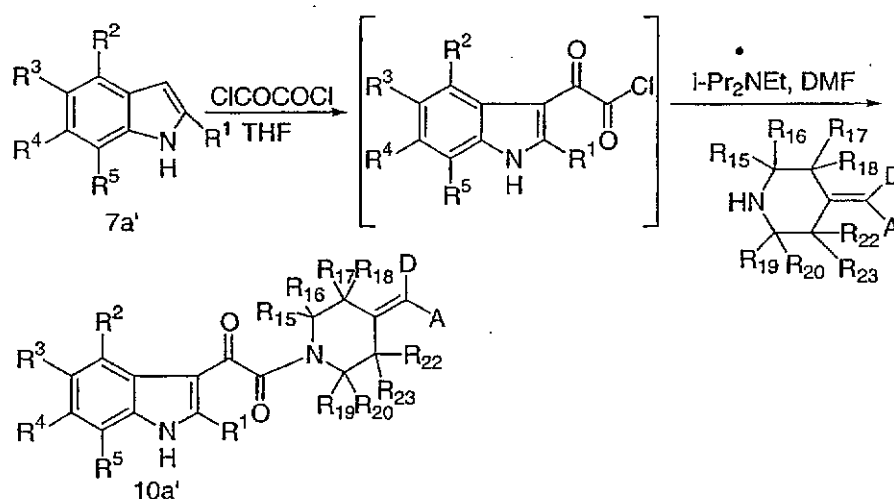
Scheme 10



Scheme 10 shows the preparation of an indole intermediate 7a, acylation of 7a with ethyl oxalyl chloride to provide intermediate 8a, followed by ester hydrolysis to provide intermediate 9a, and amide formation to provide intermediate 10a.

Alternatively, the acylation of an indole intermediate, such as 7a', could be carried out directly with oxalyl chloride followed by base mediated coupling with H-W-A to provide an intermediate of Formula 10a' as shown in Scheme 5.

Scheme 5



10

Other methods for introduction of an aldehyde group to form intermediates of formula 11 include transition metal catalyzed carbonylation reactions of suitable bromo, trifluoromethane sulfonates(yl), or stannanes(yl) indoles. Alternative the aldehydes can be introduced by reacting indolyl anions or indolyl Grignard reagents with formaldehyde and then oxidizing with MnO₂ or TPAP/NMO or other suitable oxidants to provide intermediate 11.

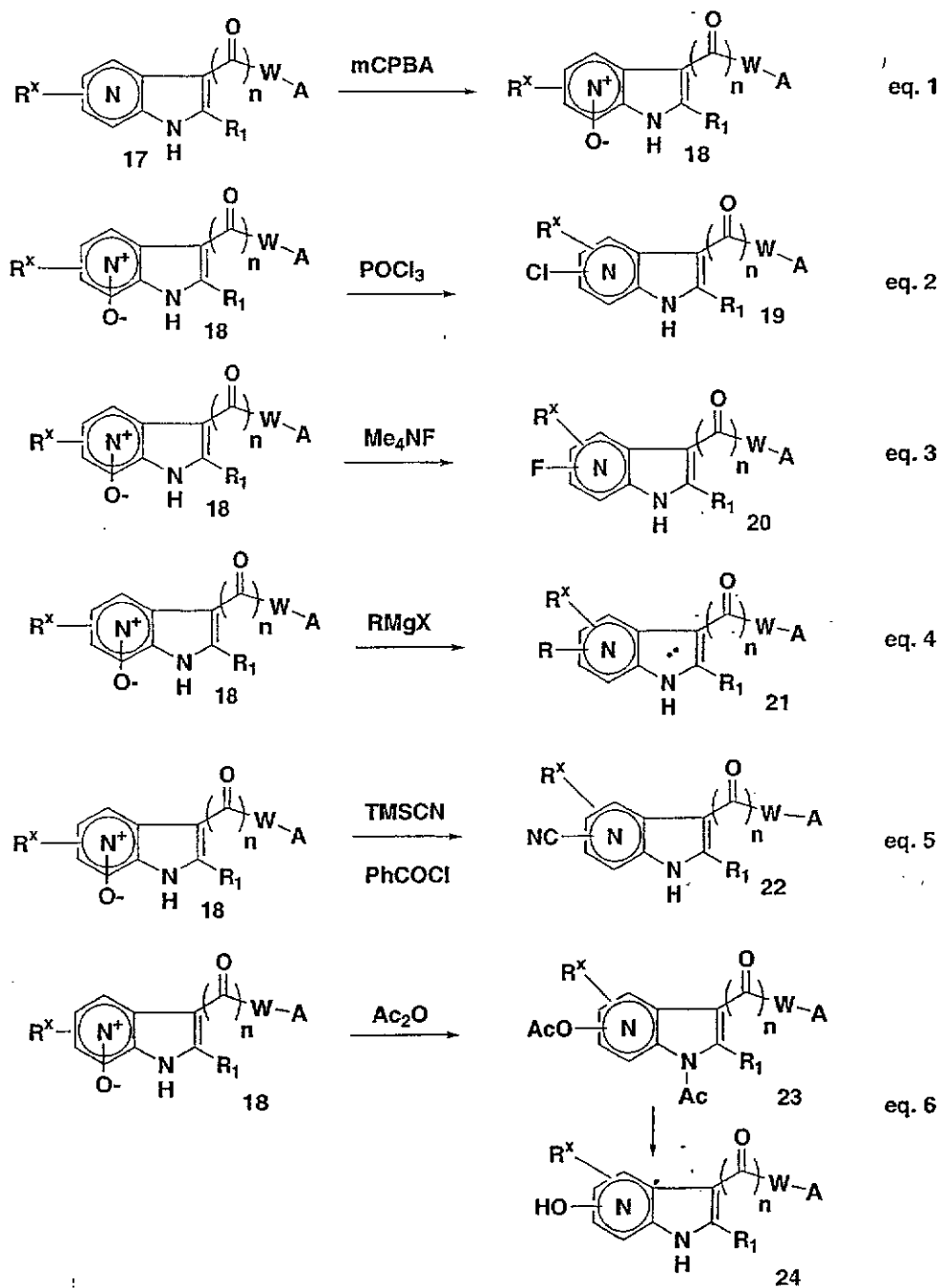
Some specific examples of general methods for preparing functionalized azaindoles or indoles or for interconverting functionality on aza indoles or indoles which will be useful for preparing the compounds of this invention are shown in the following sections for illustrative purposes. It should be understood that this invention covers substituted 4, 5, 6, and 7 azaindoles and also indoles that the methodology shown below may be applicable to all of the above series while other

20

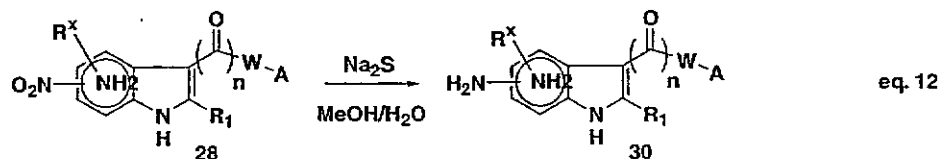
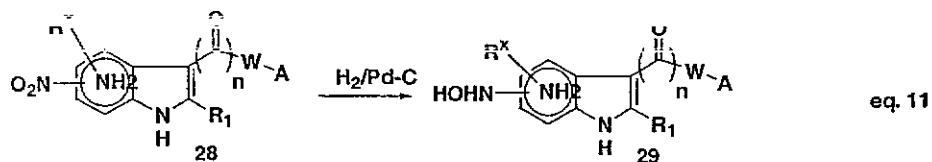
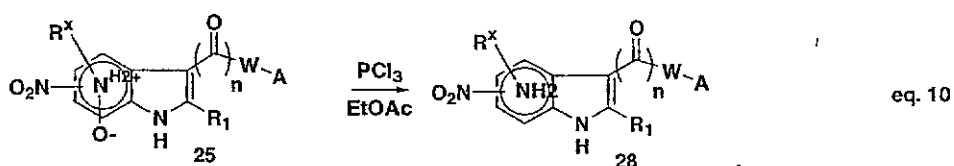
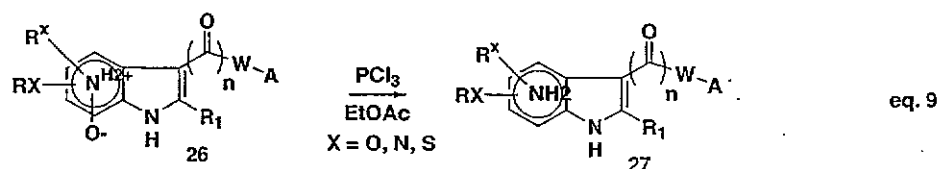
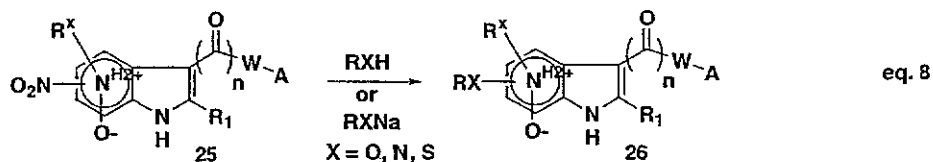
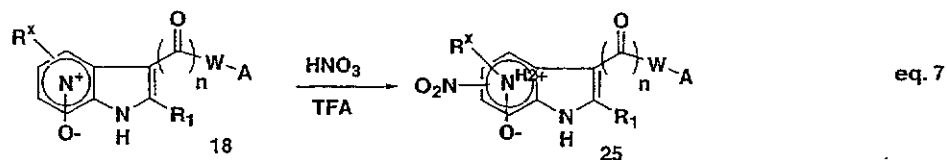
shown below will be specific to one or more. A typical practitioner of the art can make this distinction when not specifically delineated. Many methods are intended to be applicable to all the series, particularly functional group installations or interconversions. For example, a general strategy for providing further functionality of this invention is to position or install a halide such as bromo, chloro, or iodo, aldehyde, cyano, or a carboxy group on the azaindole and then to convert that functionality to the desired compounds. In particular, conversion to substituted heteroaryl, aryl, and amide groups on the ring are of particular interest.

General routes for functionalizing azaindole rings are shown in Schemes 7A, 8 and 9. As depicted in Scheme 7A, the azaindole, 17, can be oxidized to the corresponding *N*-oxide derivative, 18, by using mCPBA (meta-Chloroperoxybenzoic Acid) in acetone or DMF (eq. 1, Harada et al, Ref. 29 and Antonini et al, Ref. 34). The *N*-oxide, 18, can be converted to a variety of substituted azaindole derivatives by using well documented reagents such as phosphorus oxychloride (POCl₃) (eq. 2, Schneller et al, Ref. 30), tetramethylammonium fluoride (Me₄NF) (eq. 3), Grignard reagents RMgX (R = alkyl or aryl, X = Cl, Br or I) (eq. 4, Shiotani et al, Ref. 31), trimethylsilyl cyanide (TMSCN) (eq. 5, Minakata et al, Ref. 32) or As₂O₃ (eq. 6, Klemm et al, Ref. 33). Under such conditions, a chlorine (in 19), fluorine (in 20), nitrile (in 22), alkyl (in 21), aromatic (in 21) or hydroxyl group (in 24) can be introduced to the pyridine ring. Nitration of azaindole *N*-oxides results in introduction of a nitro group to azaindole ring, as shown in Scheme 8 (eq. 7, Antonini et al, Ref. 34). The nitro group can subsequently be displaced by a variety of nucleophilic agents, such as OR, NR¹R² or SR, in a well established chemical fashion (eq. 8, Regnouf De Vains et al, Ref. 35(a), Miura et al, Ref. 35(b), Profft et al, Ref. 35(c)). The resulting *N*-oxides, 26, are readily reduced to the corresponding azaindole, 27, using phosphorus trichloride (PCl₃) (eq. 9, Antonini et al, Ref. 34 and Nesi et al, Ref. 36). Similarly, nitro-substituted *N*-oxide, 25, can be reduced to the azaindole, 28, using phosphorus trichloride (eq. 10). The nitro group of compound 28 can be reduced to either a hydroxylamine (NHOH), as in 29, (eq. 11, Walser et al, Ref. 37(a) and Barker et al, Ref. 37(b)) or an amino (NH₂) group, as in 30, (eq. 12, Nesi et al, Ref. 36 and Ayyangar et al, Ref. 38) by carefully selecting different reducing conditions.

Scheme 7A

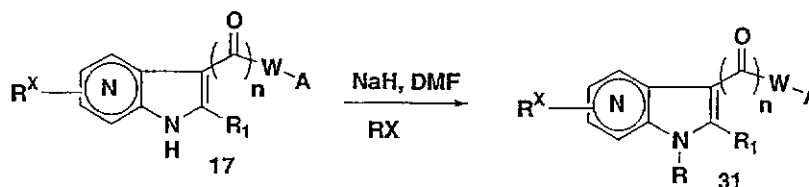


Scheme 8



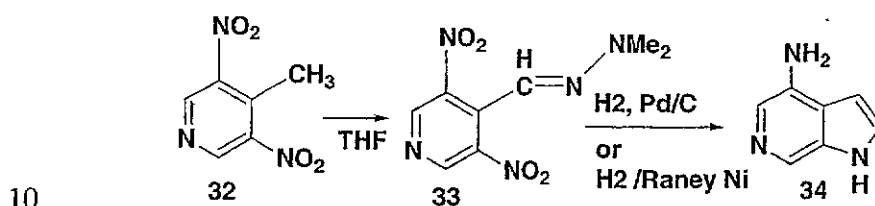
The alkylation of the nitrogen atom at position 1 of the azaindole derivatives
 5 can be achieved using NaH as the base, DMF as the solvent and an alkyl halide or
 sulfonate as alkylating agent, according to a procedure described in the literature
 (Mahadevan et al, Ref. 39) (Scheme 9).

Scheme 9



In the general routes for substituting the azaindole ring described above, each process can be applied repeatedly and combinations of these processes is permissible in order to provide azaindoles incorporating multiple substituents. The application of such processes provides additional compounds of Formula I.

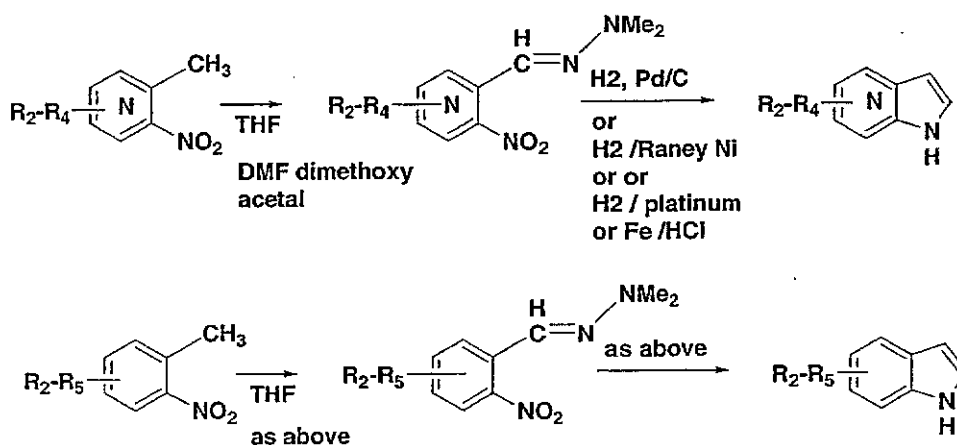
Scheme 10A



The synthesis of 4-aminoazaindoles, which are useful precursors for 4, 5, and/or 7-substituted azaindoles is shown in Scheme 10A above.

The synthesis of 3, 5-dinitro-4-methylpyridine, 32, is described in the following two references by Achremowicz et al.: Achremowicz, Lucjan. *Pr. Nauk. Inst. Chem. Org. Fiz. Politech. Wroclaw*. **1982**, 23, 3-128; Achremowicz, Lucjan. *Synthesis* **1975**, 10, 653-4. In the first step of Scheme 10A, the reaction with dimethylformamide dimethyl acetal in an inert solvent or neat under conditions for forming Batcho-Leimgruber precursors provides the cyclization precursor, 33, as shown. Although the step is anticipated to work as shown, the pyridine may be oxidized to the N-oxide prior to the reaction using a peracid such as MCPBA or a more potent oxidant like meta-trifluoromethyl or meta nitro peroxy benzoic acids. In the second step of Scheme 10A, reduction of the nitro group using for example hydrogenation over Pd/C catalyst in a solvent such as MeOH, EtOH, or EtOAc provides the cyclized product, 34. Alternatively the reduction may be carried out using tin dichloride and HCl, hydrogenation over Raney nickel or other catalysts, or by using other methods for

nitro reduction such as described elsewhere in this application. A general method for preparing indoles and azaindoles of the invention utilize the Leim-Gruber Batcho-reaction sequence as shown in the scheme below:



5

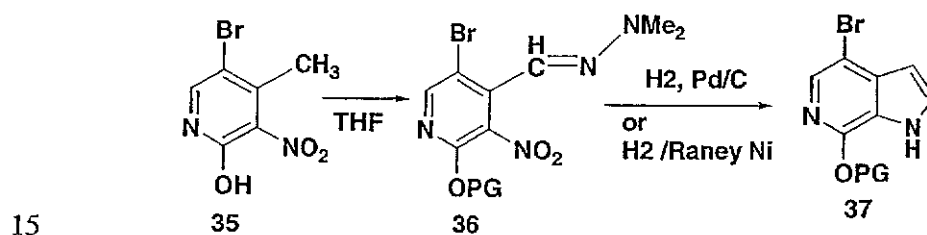
The amino indole, 34, can now be converted to compounds of Formula I via, for example, diazotization of the amino group, and then conversion of the diazonium salt to the fluoride, chloride or alkoxy group. See the discussion of such conversions in the descriptions for Schemes 17 and 18. The conversion of the amino moiety into desired functionality could then be followed by installation of the oxoacetopiperazine moiety by the standard methodology described above. 5 or 7-substitution of the azaindole can arise from N-oxide formation at position 6 and subsequent conversion to the chloro via conditions such as POCl₃ in chloroform, acetic anhydride followed by POCl₃ in DMF, or alternatively TsCl in DMF. Literature references for these and other conditions are provided in some of the later Schemes in this application. The synthesis of 4-bromo-7-hydroxy or protected hydroxy-4-azaindole is described below as this is a useful precursor for 4 and/or 7 substituted 6-aza indoles.

The synthesis of 5-bromo-2-hydroxy-4-methyl-3-nitro pyridine, 35, may be carried out as described in the following reference: Betageri, R.; Beaulieu, P.L.; Llinas-Brunet, M; Ferland, J.M.; Cardozo, M.; Moss, N.; Patel, U.; Proudfoot, J.R. PCT Int. Appl. WO 9931066, 1999. Intermediate 36 is prepared from 35 according to the method as described for Step 1 of Scheme 10A. PG is an optional hydroxy protecting group such as triallylsilyl, methyl, benzyl or the like. Intermediate 37 is

25

then prepared from 36 by the selective reduction of the nitro group in the presence of bromide and subsequent cyclization as described in the second step of Scheme 10A. $\text{Fe}(\text{OH})_2$ in DMF with catalytic tetrabutylammonium bromide can also be utilized for the reduction of the nitro group. The bromide may then be converted to alkoy using the conditions employed in step U of scheme 4. The compounds are then converted to compounds of Formula I as above. The protecting group on the C-7 position may be removed with TMSI, hydrogenation or in the case of allyl standard palladium deprotection conditions in order to generate the free C-7 hydroxy compound which can also be depicted as its pyridone tautomer. As described earlier POBr₃ or POCl₃ can be used to convert the hydroxy intermediate to the C-7 bromo or chloro intermediate respectively.

Scheme 11

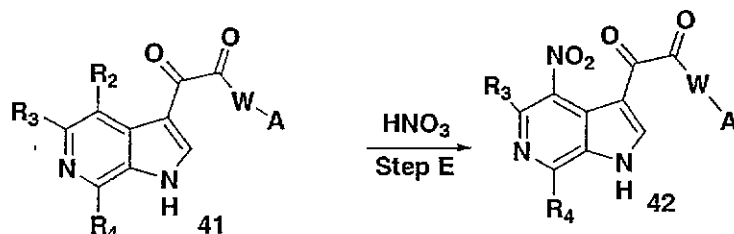


Step E Scheme 14 depicts the nitration of an azaindole, 41, ($\text{R}_2 = \text{H}$). Numerous conditions for nitration of the azaindole may be effective and have been described in the literature. N_2O_5 in nitromethane followed by aqueous sodium bisulfite according to the method of Bakke, J. M.; Ranes, E.; *Synthesis* **1997**, 3, 281-283 could be utilized. Nitric acid in acetic may also be employed as described in Kimura, H.; Yotsuya, S.; Yuki, S.; Sugi, H.; Shigehara, I.; Haga, T.; *Chem. Pharm. Bull.* **1995**, 43(10), 1696-1700. Sulfuric acid followed by nitric acid may be employed as in Ruefenacht, K.; Kristinsson, H.; Mattern, G.; *Helv Chim Acta* **1976**, 59, 1593. Coombes, R. G.; Russell, L. W.; *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* **1974**, 1751 describes the use of a Titanium based reagent system for nitration. Other conditions for the nitration of the azaindole can be found in the following references: Lever, O.W.J.; Werblood, H. M.; Russell, R. K.; *Synth. Commun.* **1993**, 23(9), 1315-1320; Wozniak, M.; Van Der Plas, H. C.; *J. Heterocycl Chem.* **1978**, 15, 731.

20

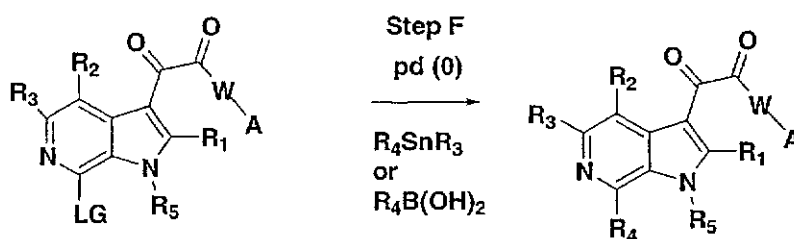
25

Scheme 14



5

Scheme 15

LG = Cl, Br, I, OTf, OPO(Oalkyl)₂

Step F

10

As shown above in Scheme 15, Step F, substituted azaindoles containing a chloride, bromide, iodide, triflate, or phosphonate undergo coupling reactions with a boronate (Suzuki type reactions) or a stannane (Stille type coupling) to provide substituted indoles or azaindoles. This type of coupling as mentioned previously can also be used to functionalize vinyl halides, triflates or phosphonates to add groups D or A or precursors. Stannanes and boronates are prepared via standard literature procedures or as described in the experimental section of this application. The substituted indoles, azaindoles, or alkenes may undergo metal mediated coupling to provide compounds of Formula I wherein R₄ is aryl, heteroaryl, or heteroalicyclic for example. The indoles or azaindole intermediates, (halogens, triflates, phosphonates) may undergo Stille-type coupling with heteroarylstannanes as shown in Scheme 15 or with the corresponding vinyl reagents as described in earlier Schemes. Conditions for this reaction are well known in the art and the following are three example references

a) Farina, V.; Roth, G.P. Recent advances in the Stille reaction; *Adv. Met.-Org. Chem.* **1996**, 5, 1-53. b) Farina, V.; Krishnamurthy, V.; Scott, W.J. The Stille

25

reaction ; *Org. React.* (N. Y.) **1997**, *50*, 1-652. and c) Stille, J. K. *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **1986**, *25*, 508-524. Other references for general coupling conditions are also in the reference by Richard C. Larock *Comprehensive Organic Transformations* 2nd Ed. 1999, John Wiley and Sons New York. All of these references provide

5 numerous conditions at the disposal of those skilled in the art in addition to the specific examples provided in Scheme 15 and in the specific embodiments. It can be well recognized that an indole stannane could also couple to a heterocyclic or aryl halide or triflate to construct compounds of Formula I. Suzuki coupling (Norio Miyaura and Akio Suzuki *Chem Rev.* **1995**, *95*, 2457.) between a triflate, bromo, or

10 chloro azaindole intermediate and a suitable boronate could also be employed and some specific examples are contained in this application. Palladium catalyzed couplings of stannanes and boronates between halo azaindole or indole intermediates or vinyl halides or vinyl triflates or similar vinyl substrate are also feasible and have been utilized extensively for this invention. Preferred procedures for coupling of a

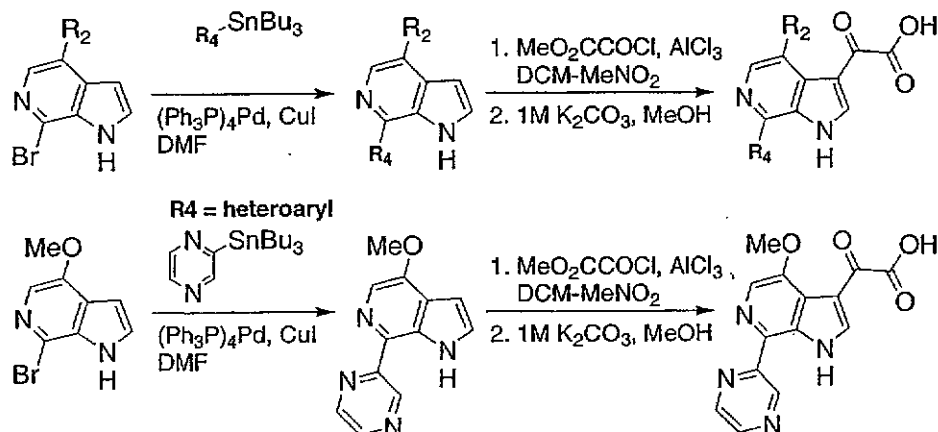
15 chloro or bromo azaindole or vinyl halide and a stannane employ dioxane, stoichiometric or an excess of the tin reagent (up to 5 equivalents), 0.1 to 1 eq of tetrakis triphenyl phosphine Palladium (0) in dioxane heated for 5 to 15 h at 110 to 120°. Other solvents such as DMF, THF, toluene, or benzene could be employed. Another useful procedure for coupling a halo indole or azaindole with a suitable

20 tributyl heteroaryl or other stannane employs usually a slight excess (1.1 eqs) but up to several equivalents of the stannane, 0.1 eqs CuI, 0.1 equivalents of tetrakis triphenyl phosphine palladium (0) all of which is usually dissolved in dry DMF (approximately 5 mmol of halide per 25mL of DMF but this concentration can be reduced for sluggish reactions or increased if solubility is an issue). The reaction is

25 usually heated at an elevated temperature of about 90°C and the reaction is usually run in a sealed reaction vessel or sealed tube. When the reaction is completed it is usually allowed to cool, filtered through methanesulfonic acid SCX cartridges with MeOH to remove triphenyl phosphine oxide, and then purified by standard crystallization or chromatographic methods. Examples of the utility of these

30 conditions are shown in Scheme Z below.

SCHEME Z



5

Alternatively, the Stille type coupling between a stannane (~1.1 eqs) and a vinyl, heteroaryl, or aryl halide may proceed better using (0.05 to 0.1 eq) *bu*Pd2(*dba*)3 as catalyst and tri-2-furylphosphine (~0.25eq) as the added ligand. The reaction is usually heated in THF or dioxane at a temperature between 70 and 90 °C.

- 10 Preferred procedures for Suzuki coupling of a chloro azaindole and a boronate employ 1:1 DMF water as solvent, 2 equivalents of potassium carbonate as base stoichiometric or an excess of the boron reagent (up to 5 equivalents), 0.1 to 1 eq of Palladium (0) tetrakis triphenyl phosphine heated for 5 to 15 h at 110 to 120°. Less water is occasionally employed. Another useful condition for coupling a heteroaryl
- 15 or aryl boronic acid to a stoichiometric amount of vinyl halide or triflate utilizes DME as solvent (~.33mmol halide per 3mL DME), ~4eq of 2M sodium carbonate, and 0.05 eq Pd2dba3 heated in a sealed tube or sealed vessel at 90°C for ~16h. Reaction times vary with substrate. Another useful method for coupling involves use
- 20 of coupling an aryl, heteroaryl, or vinyl zinc bromide or chloride coupled with a vinyl, aryl, or heteroaryl halide using tetrakis triphenyl phosphine palladium (0) heated in THF. Detailed example procedures for preparing the zinc reagents from halides via lithium bromide exchange and then transmetalation and reaction conditions are contained in the experimental section. If standard conditions fail new specialized catalysts and conditions can be employed. Discussions on details, conditions, and
- 25 alternatives for carrying out the metal mediated couplings described above can also be found in the book "Organometallics in Organic Synthesis; A Manual; 2002, 2nd

Ed. M. Schlosser editor, John Wiley and Sons, West Sussex, England, ISBN 0 471 98416 7.

Some references (and the references therein) describing catalysts which are
5 useful for coupling with aryl and heteroaryl chlorides are:

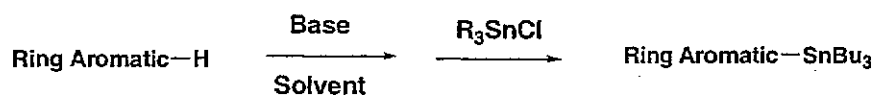
- Littke, A. F.; Dai, C.; Fu, G. C. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **2000**, *122*(17), 4020-4028;
Varma, R. S.; Naicker, K. P. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1999**, *40*(3), 439-442; Wallow, T. I.;
Novak, B. M. *J. Org. Chem.* **1994**, *59*(17), 5034-7; Buchwald, S.; Old, D. W.;
10 Wolfe, J. P.; Palucki, M.; Kamikawa, K.; Chieffi, A.; Sadighi, J. P.; Singer, R. A.;
Ahman, J. PCT Int. Appl. WO 0002887 **2000**; Wolfe, J. P.; Buchwald, S. L. *Angew.
Chem., Int. Ed.* **1999**, *38*(23), 3415; Wolfe, J. P.; Singer, R. A.; Yang, B. H.;
Buchwald, S. L. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1999**, *121*(41), 9550-9561; Wolfe, J. P.;
Buchwald, S. L. *Angew. Chem., Int. Ed.* **1999**, *38*(16), 2413-2416; Bracher, F.;
15 Hildebrand, D.; *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **1992**, *12*, 1315-1319; and Bracher, F.;
Hildebrand, D.; *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **1993**, *8*, 837-839.

Alternatively, the boronate or stannane may be formed on the azaindole via
methods known in the art and the coupling performed in the reverse manner with aryl
20 or heteroaryl based halogens or triflates.

Known boronate or stannane agents could be either purchased from
commercial resources or prepared following disclosed documents. Additional
examples for the preparation of tin reagents or boronate reagents are contained in the
25 experimental section, and references 93-95 and 106.

Novel stannane agents could be prepared from one of the following routes.

Scheme Tin-01



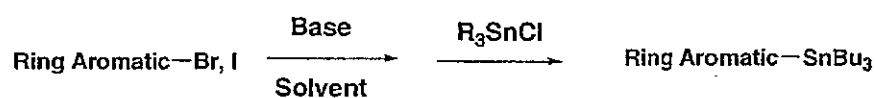
Base = LDA, TMP-Li, n-BuLi, S-BuLi, t-BuLi

Solvent = THF, ether, DME

R = Me, Bu

5

Scheme Tin-02



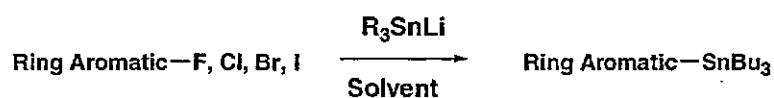
Base = n-BuLi, S-BuLi, t-BuLi

Solvent = THF, ether, DME

n = Me, Bu

Scheme Tin-03

10

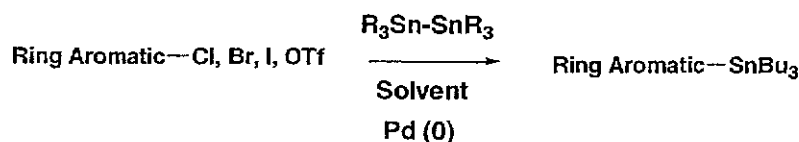


Solvent = THF, ether, DME

R = Me, Bu

15

Scheme Tin-04

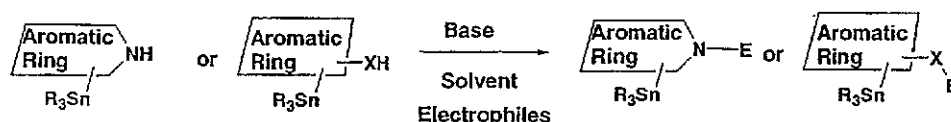


Solvent = Dioxane, Toluene.

R = Me, Bu

5

Scheme Tin-05

E = Electrophile = R'-halide, R'COCl, R'OCOCl, R'R''NCOCl, RSO₂Cl, R'NCO, R'NSO, R'NCNR''Solvent = CH₂Cl₂, THF, Ether, DMF

R = Me, Bu

Base = NaH, BuLi, LDA, K₂CO₃, Et₃N, DBU, DMAP, NaHMDS

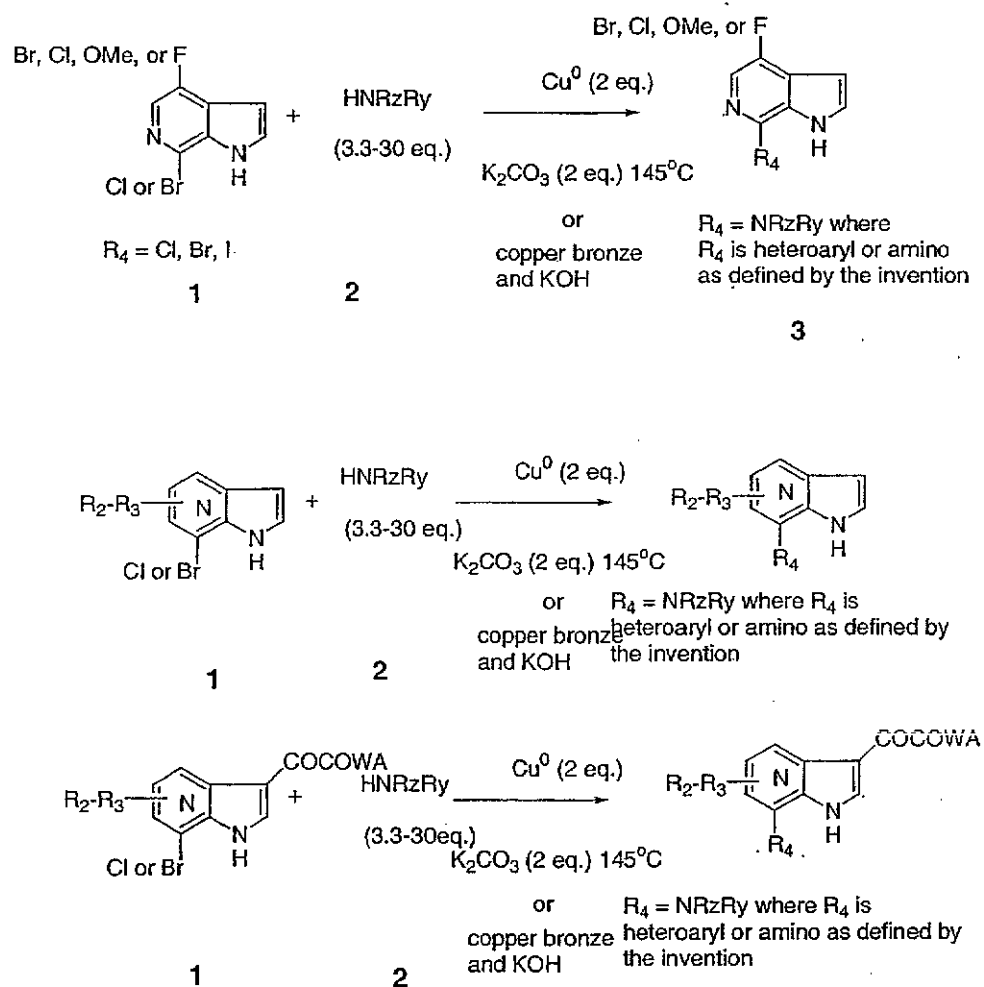
- Boronate reagents are prepared as described in reference 71. Reaction of
- 10 lithium or Grignard reagents with trialkyl borates generates boronates. Alternatively, Palladium catalyzed couplings of alkoxy diboron or alkyl diboron reagents with aryl or heteroaryl halides can provide boron reagents for use in Suzuki type couplings. Some example conditions for coupling a halide with (MeO)BB(OMe)₂ utilize PdCl₂ (dppf), KOAc, DMSO, at 80°C until reaction is complete when followed by TLC or
- 15 HPLC analysis.

Related examples are provided in the following experimental section.

- Methods for direct addition of aryl or heteroaryl organometallic reagents to
- 20 alpha chloro nitrogen containing heterocycles or the N-oxides of nitrogen containing heterocycles are known and applicable to the azaindoles. Some examples are

Shiotani et. Al. *J. Heterocyclic Chem.* **1997**, 34(3), 901-907; Fourmigue et.al. *J.Org. Chem.* **1991**, 56(16), 4858-4864.

SCHEME 12

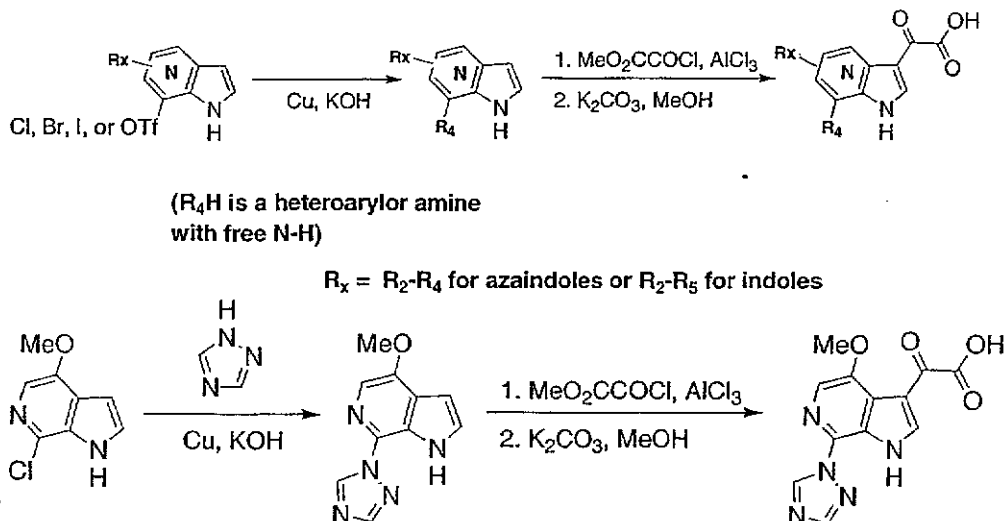


5

10

15

SCHEME 13

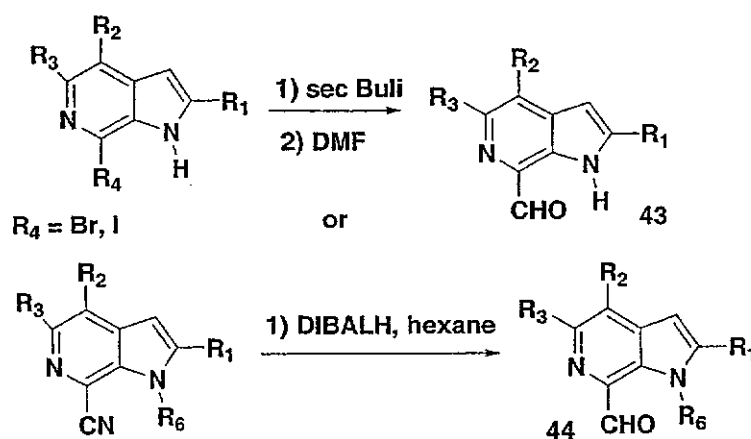


As shown in Schemes 12 and 13, a mixture of halo-indole or halo-azaindole intermediate, 1-2 equivalents of copper powder, with 1 equivalent preferred for the 4-F,6-azaindole series and 2 equivalents for the 4-methoxy,6-azaindole series; 1-2 equivalents of potassium carbonate, with 1 equivalent preferred for the 4-F,6-azaindole series and 2 equivalents for the 4-methoxy,6-azaindole series; and a 2-30 equivalents of the corresponding heterocyclic reagent, with 10 equivalents preferred; was heated at 135-160°C for 4 to 9 hours, with 5 hours at 160°C preferred for the 4-F,6-azaindole series and 7 hours at 135°C preferred for the 4-methoxy,6-azaindole series. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and filtered through filter paper. The filtrate was diluted with methanol and purified either by preparative HPLC or silica gel. In many cases no chromatography is necessary, the product can be obtained by crystallization with methanol.

Alternatively, the installation of amines or N linked heteroaryls may be carried out by heating 1 to 40 equivalents of the appropriate amine and an equivalent of the appropriate aza indole chloride, bromide or iodide with copper bronze (from 0.1 to 10 equivalents (preferably about 2 equivalents) and from 1 to 10 equivalents of finely pulverized potassium hydroxide (preferably about 2 equivalents). Temperatures of 120° to 200° may be employed with 140-160° generally preferred. For volatile starting materials a sealed reactor may be employed. The reaction is

most commonly used when the halogen being displaced is at the 7-position of a 6-aza or 4-azaindole but the method can work in the 5-azaseries or when the halogen is at a different position (4-7 position possible) As shown above the reaction can be employed on azaindoles unsubstituted at position 3 or intermediates which contain the dicarbonyl or the intact dicarbonyl piperidine alkene.

Scheme 16



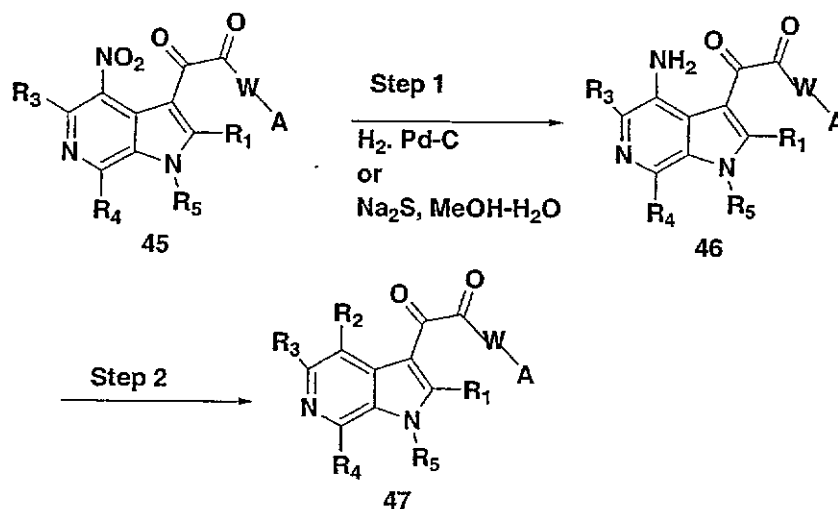
The preparation of a key aldehyde intermediate, 43, using a procedure adapted from the method of Gilmore et. Al. *Synlett* 1992, 79-80. Is shown in Scheme 16 above. The aldehyde substituent is shown only at the R₄ position for the sake of clarity, and should not be considered as a limitation of the methodology. The bromide or iodide intermediate is converted into an aldehyde intermediate, 43, by metal-halogen exchange and subsequent reaction with dimethylformamide in an appropriate aprotic solvent. Typical bases used include, but are not limited to, alkyl lithium bases such as *n*-butyl lithium, *sec* butyl lithium or *tert* butyl lithium or a metal such as lithium metal. A preferred aprotic solvent is THF. Typically the transmetalation is initiated at -78 °C. The reaction may be allowed to warm to allow the transmetalation to go to completion depending on the reactivity of the bromide intermediate. The reaction is then recooled to -78 °C and allowed to react with dimethylformamide. (allowing the reaction to warm may be required to enable complete reaction) to provide an aldehyde which is elaborated to compounds of Formula I. Other methods for introduction of an aldehyde group to form intermediates of formula 43 include transition metal catalyzed carbonylation reactions

of suitable bromo, trifluoromethane sulfonyl, or stannyl azaindoles. Alternatively the aldehydes can be introduced by reacting indolyl anions or indolyl Grignard reagents with formaldehyde and then oxidizing with MnO_2 or TPAP/NMO or other suitable oxidants to provide intermediate 43.

5

The methodology described in T. Fukuda et.al. *Tetrahedron* **1999**, *55*, 9151 and M. Iwao et. Al. *Heterocycles* **1992**, *34*(5), 1031 provide methods for preparing indoles with substituents at the 7-position. The Fukuda references provide methods for functionalizing the C-7 position of indoles by either protecting the indole nitrogen
10 with 2,2-diethyl propanoyl group and then deprotonating the 7-position with *sec*/Buli in TMEDA to give an anion. This anion may be quenched with DMF, formaldehyde, or carbon dioxide to give the aldehyde, benzyl alcohol, or carboxylic acid respectively and the protecting group removed with aqueous *t* butoxide. Similar transformations can be achieved by converting indoles to indoline, lithiation at C-7 and then
15 reoxidation to the indole such as described in the Iwao reference above. The oxidation level of any of these products may be adjusted by methods well known in the art as the interconversion of alcohol, aldehyde, and acid groups has been well studied. It is also well understood that a cyano group can be readily converted to an aldehyde. A reducing agent such as DIBALH in hexane such as used in Weyerstahl,
20 P.; Schlicht, V.; *Liebigs Ann/Recl.* **1997**, *1*, 175-177 or alternatively catecholalane in THF such as used in Cha, J. S.; Chang, S. W.; Kwon, O. O.; Kim, J. M.; *Synlett.* **1996**, *2*, 165-166 will readily achieve this conversion to provide intermediates such as 44 (Scheme 16). Methods for synthesizing the nitriles are shown later in this application. It is also well understood that a protected alcohol, aldehyde, or acid
25 group could be present in the starting azaindole and carried through the synthetic steps to a compound of Formula I in a protected form until they can be converted into the desired substituent at R_1 through R_4 . For example, a benzyl alcohol can be protected as a benzyl ether or silyl ether or other alcohol protecting group; an aldehyde may be carried as an acetal, and an acid may be protected as an ester or
30 ortho ester until deprotection is desired and carried out by literature methods.

Scheme 17



Step G Step 1 of Scheme 17 shows the reduction of a nitro group on 45 to the amino group of 46. Although shown on position 4 of the azaindole, the chemistry is applicable to other nitro isomers. The procedure described in Ciurla, H.; Puszko, A.; *Khim Geterotsikl Soedin* **1996**, *10*, 1366-1371 uses hydrazine Raney-Nickel for the reduction of the nitro group to the amine. Robinson, R. P.; Donahue, K. M.; Sol, P. S.; Wang, S. D.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1996**, *33*(2), 287-293 describes the use of hydrogenation and Raney Nickel for the reduction of the nitro group to the amine. Similar conditions are described by Nicolai, E.; Claude, S.; Teulon, J. M.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1994**, *31*(1), 73-75 for the same transformation. The following two references describe some trimethylsilyl sulfur or chloride based reagents which may be used for the reduction of a nitro group to an amine. Hwu, J.R.; Wong, F.F.; Shiao, M.J.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1992**, *57*(19), 5254-5255; Shiao, M.J.; Lai, L.L.; Ku, W.S.; Lin, P.Y.; Hwu, J.R.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1993**, *58*(17), 4742-4744.

Step 2 of Scheme 17 describes general methods for conversion of amino groups on azaindoles or indoles into other functionality. Scheme 18 also depicts transformations of an amino azaindole into various intermediates and compounds of Formula I.

The amino group at any position of the azaindole, such as 46 (Scheme 17), may be converted to a hydroxy group using sodium nitrite, sulfuric acid, and water

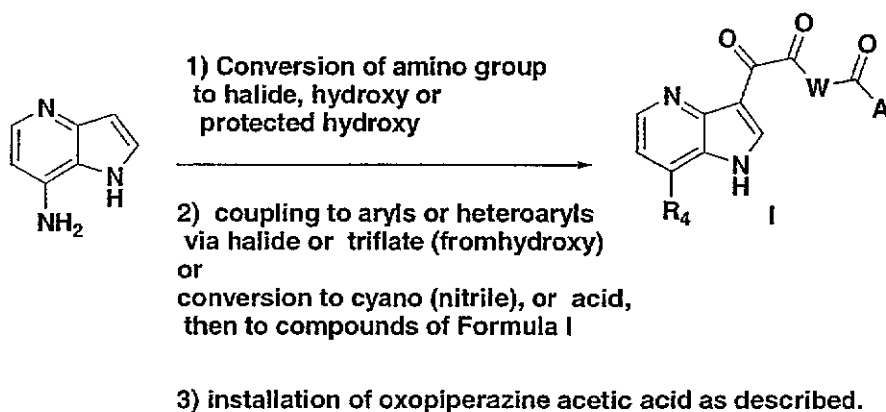
via the method of Klemm, L. H.; Zell, R.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1968**, *5*, 773.
Bradsher, C. K.; Brown, F. C.; Porter, H. K.; *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1954**, *76*, 2357
describes how the hydroxy group may be alkylated under standard or Mitsunobu
conditions to form ethers. The amino group may be converted directly into a
5 methoxy group by diazotization (sodium nitrite and acid)and trapping with methanol.

The amino group of an azaindole, such as 46, can be converted to fluoro via
the method of Sanchez using HPF₆, NaNO₂, and water by the method described in
Sanchez, J. P.; Gogliotti, R. D.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1993**, *30*(4), 855-859. Other
10 methods useful for the conversion of the amino group to fluoro are described in
Rocca, P.; Marsais, F.; Godard, A.; Queguiner, G.; *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1993**, *34*(18),
2937-2940 and Sanchez, J. P.; Rogowski, J.W.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1987**, *24*, 215.

The amino group of the azaindole, 46, can also be converted to a chloride via
15 diazotization and chloride displacement as described in Ciurla, H.; Puszko, A.; *Khim*
Geterotsikl Soedin **1996**, *10*, 1366-1371 or the methods in Raveglia, L.F.; Giardina,
G.A.; Grugni, M.; Rigolio, R.; Farina, C.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1997**, *34*(2), 557-559
or the methods in Matsumoto, J. I.; Miyamoto, T.; Minamida, A.; Mishimura, Y.;
Egawa, H.; Mishimura, H.; *J. Med. Chem.* **1984**, *27*(3), 292; or as in Lee, T.C.;
20 Salemnick, G.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1975**, *24*, 3608.

The amino group of the azaindole, 46, can also be converted to a bromide via
diazotization and displacement by bromide as described in Raveglia, L.F.; Giardina,
G.A.; Grugni, M.; Rigolio, R.; Farina, C.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1997**, *34*(2), 557-
25 559; Talik, T.; Talik, Z.; Ban-Oganowska, H.; *Synthesis* **1974**, 293; and
Abramovitch, R.A.; Saha, M.; *Can. J. Chem.* **1966**, *44*, 1765:

Scheme 18

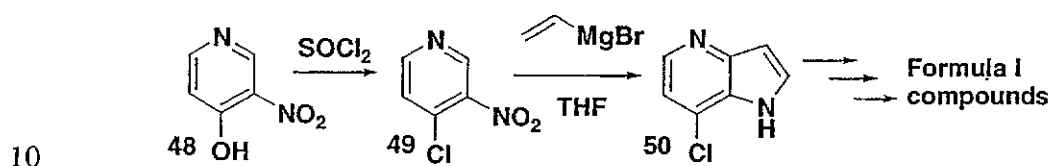


Steps 2 and 3 may be reversed as appropriate

- 5 The preparation of 4-amino 4-azaindole and 7-methyl-4-azaindole is described by Mahadevan, I.; Rasmussen, M. *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1992**, 29(2), 359-67. The amino group of the 4-amino 4-azaindole can be converted to halogens, hydroxy, protected hydroxy, triflate, as described above in Schemes 17-18 for the 4-amino compounds or by other methods known in the art. Protection of the indole
- 10 nitrogen of the 7-methyl-4-azaindole via acetylation or other strategy followed by oxidation of the 7-methyl group with potassium permanganate or chromic acid provides the 7-acid /4-N-oxide. Reduction of the N-oxide, as described below, provides an intermediate from which to install various substituents at position R₄. Alternatively the parent 4-azaindole which was prepared as described in Mahadevan,
- 15 I.; Rasmussen, M. *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1992**, 29(2), 359-67 could be derivatized at nitrogen to provide the 1-(2,2-diethylbutanoyl)azaindole which could then be lithiated using TMEDA /sec BuLi as described in T. Fukuda et. Al. *Tetrahedron* **1999**, 55, 9151-9162; followed by conversion of the lithio species to the 7-carboxylic acid or 7-halogen as described. Hydrolysis of the N-amide using aqueous tert-butoxide in THF
- 20 regenerates the free NH indole which can now be converted to compounds of Formula I. The chemistry used to functionalize position 7 can also be applied to the 5 and 6 indole series.

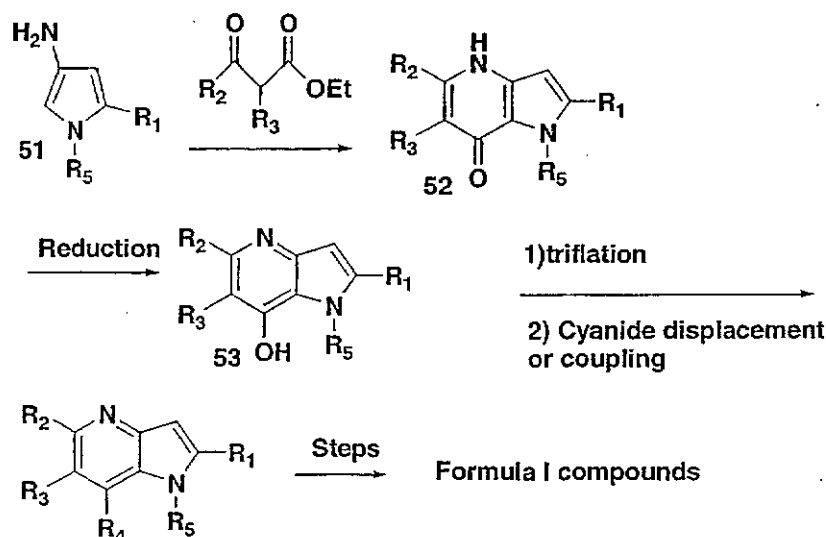
Scheme 19 shows the preparation of a 7-chloro-4-azaindole, 50, which can be converted to compounds of Formula I by the chemistry previously described, especially the palladium catalyzed tin and boron based coupling methodology described above. The chloro nitro indole, 49, is commercially available or can be prepared from 48 according to the method of Delarge, J.; Lapiere, C. L. *Pharm. Acta Helv.* **1975**, 50(6), 188-91.

Scheme 19



Scheme 20, below, shows another synthetic route to substituted 4-aza indoles. The 3-aminopyrrole, 51, was reacted to provide the pyrrolopyridinone, 52, which was then reduced to give the hydroxy azaindole, 53. The pyrrolo[2,3-b]pyridines described were prepared according to the method of Britten, A.Z.; Griffiths, G.W.G. *Chem. Ind. (London)* **1973**, 6, 278. The hydroxy azaindole, 53, can then be converted to the triflate then further reacted to provide compounds of Formula I.

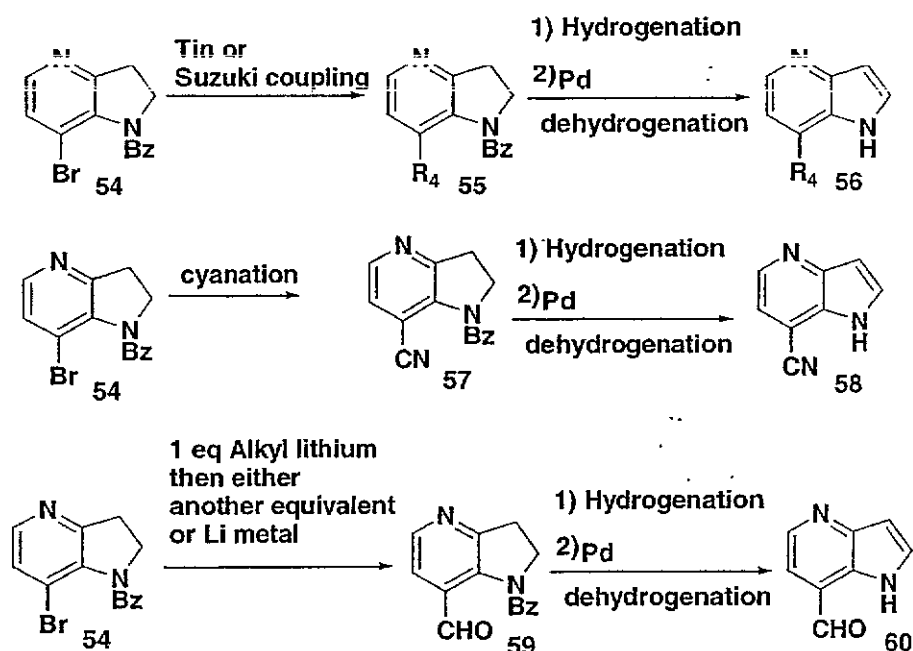
Scheme 20



The following references describe the synthesis of 7-halo or 7 carboxylic acid, or 7-amido derivatives of 5-azaindoline which can be used to construct compounds of Formula I. Bychikhina, N. N.; Azimov, V. A.; Yakhontov, L.N. *Khim. Geterotsikl. Soedin.* **1983**, *1*, 58-62; Bychikhina, N. N.; Azimov, V. A.; Yakhontov, L. N. *Khim. Geterotsikl. Soedin.* **1982**, *3*, 356-60; Azimov, V. A.; Bychikhina, N. N.; Yakhontov, L. N. *Khim. Geterotsikl. Soedin.* **1981**, *12*, 1648-53; Spivey, A.C.; Fekner, T.; Spey, S.E.; Adams, H. *J. Org. Chem.* **1999**, *64*(26), 9430-9443; Spivey, A.C.; Fekner, T.; Adams, H. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1998**, *39*(48), 8919-8922. The methods described in Spivey et al. (preceding two references) for the preparation of 1-methyl-7-bromo-4-azaindoline can be used to prepare the 1-benzyl-7-bromo-4-azaindoline, 54, shown below in Scheme 21. This can be utilized in Stille or Suzuki couplings to provide 55, which is deprotected and dehydrogenated to provide 56. Other useful azaindole intermediates, such as the cyano derivatives, 57 and 58, and the aldehyde derivatives, 59 and 60, can then be further elaborated to compounds of Formula I.

15

Scheme 21



Alternatively the 7-functionalized 5-azaindole derivatives may be obtained by functionalization using the methodologies of T. Fukuda et.al. *Tetrahedron* **1999**, *55*, 9151 and M. Iwao et. Al. *Heterocycles* **1992**, *34*(5), 1031 described above for the 4 or

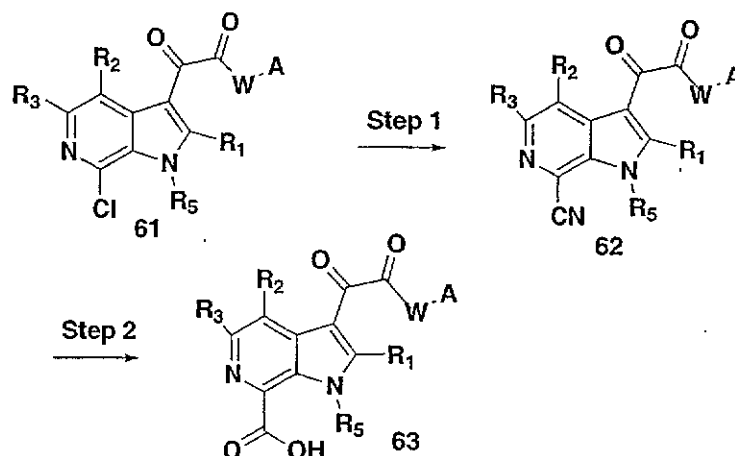
20

6 azaindoles. The 4 or 6 positions of the 5 aza indoles can be functionalized by using the azaindole N-oxide.

The conversion of indoles to indolines is well known in the art and can be carried out as shown or by the methods described in Somei, M.; Saida, Y.; Funamoto, T.; Ohta, T. *Chem. Pharm. Bull.* **1987**, 35(8), 3146-54; M. Iwao et. Al. *Heterocycles* **1992**, 34(5), 1031; and Akagi, M.; Ozaki, K. *Heterocycles* **1987**, 26(1), 61-4.

Scheme 22

10



The preparation of azaindole oxoacetyl or oxo piperidines with carboxylic acids can be carried out from nitrile, aldehyde, or anion precursors via hydrolysis, oxidation, or trapping with CO₂ respectively. As shown in the Scheme 22, Step 1, or the scheme below step a12 one method for forming the nitrile intermediate, 62, is by cyanide displacement of a halide in the aza-indole ring. The cyanide reagent used can be sodium cyanide, or more preferably copper or zinc cyanide. The reactions may be carried out in numerous solvents which are well known in the art. For example DMF is used in the case of copper cyanide. Additional procedures useful for carrying out step 1 of Scheme 24 are Yamaguchi, S.; Yoshida, M.; Miyajima, I.; Araki, T.; Hirai, Y.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1995**, 32(5), 1517-1519 which describes methods for copper cyanide; Yutilov, Y.M.; Svertilova, I.A.; *Khim Geterotsikl Soedin* **1994**, 8, 1071-1075 which utilizes potassium cyanide; and Prager, R.H.; Tsopelas, C.; Heisler, T.; *Aust. J. Chem.* **1991**, 44 (2), 277-285 which utilizes copper cyanide in the presence of

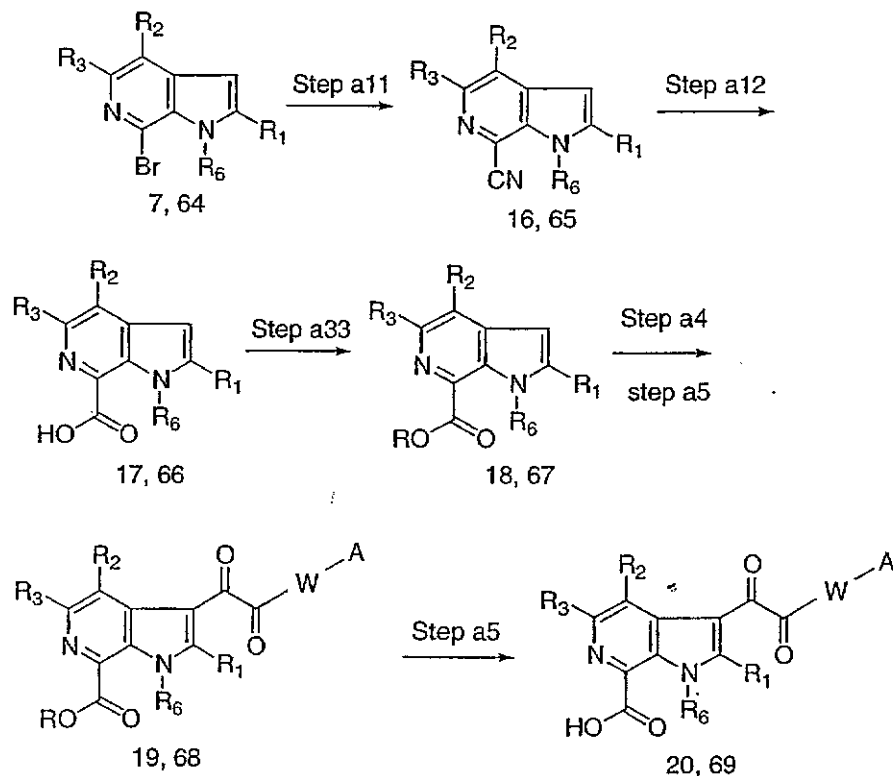
MeOS(O)₂F. The chloride or more preferably a bromide on the azaindole may be displaced by sodium cyanide in dioxane via the method described in *Synlett*. **1998**, 3, 243-244. Alternatively, Nickel dibromide, Zinc, and triphenyl phosphine in can be used to activate aromatic and heteroaryl chlorides to displacement via potassium cyanide in THF or other suitable solvent by the methods described in Eur. Pat. Appl., 831083, **1998**.

The conversion of the cyano intermediate, 62, to the carboxylic acid intermediate, 63, is depicted in step 2, Scheme 22 or in step a12, Scheme 23. Many methods for the conversion of nitriles to acids are well known in the art and may be employed. Suitable conditions for step 2 of Scheme 22 or the conversion of intermediate 65 to intermediate 66 below employ potassium hydroxide, water, and an aqueous alcohol such as ethanol. Typically the reaction must be heated at refluxing temperatures for one to 100 h. Other procedures for hydrolysis include those described in:

Shiotani, S.; Taniguchi, K.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1997**, 34(2), 493-499; Boogaard, A. T.; Pandit, U. K.; Koomen, G.-J., *Tetrahedron*, **1994**, 50(8), 2551-2560, Rivalle, C.; Bisagni, E.; *Heterocycles* **1994**, 38(2), 391-397; Macor, J.E.; Post, R.; Ryan, K.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1992**, 29(6), 1465-1467.

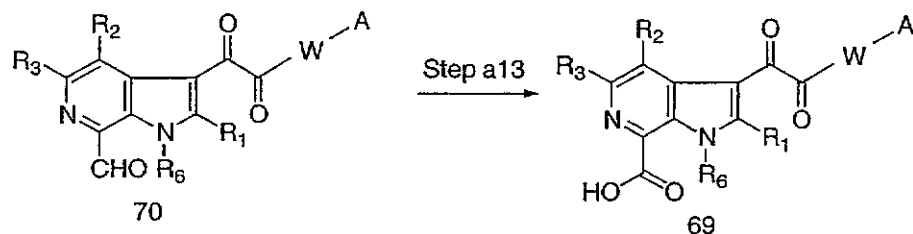
The acid intermediate, 66 (Scheme 23), may then be esterified using conditions well known in the art. For example, reaction of the acid with diazomethane in an inert solvent such as ether, dioxane, or THF would give the methyl ester. Intermediate 67 may then be converted to intermediate 68 according to the procedure described in Scheme 2. Intermediate 68 may then be hydrolyzed to provide intermediate 69.

Scheme 23



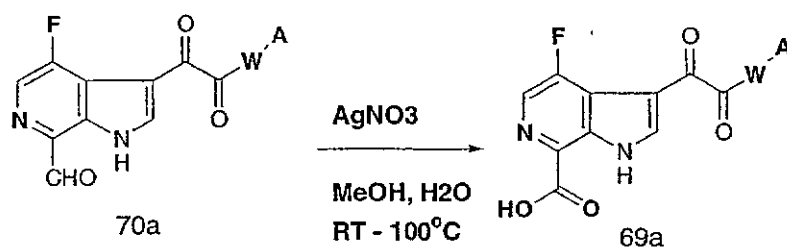
As shown in Scheme 24, step a13 another preparation of the
 5 indoleoxoacetylalkenylpiperidine 7-carboxylic acids, 69, is carried out by oxidation
 of the corresponding 7-carboxaldehyde, 70. Numerous oxidants are suitable for the
 conversion of aldehyde to acid and many of these are described in standard organic
 chemistry texts such as: Larock, Richard C., Comprehensive organic transformations
 : a guide to functional group preparations 2nd ed. New York : Wiley-VCH, 1999. One
 10 preferred method is the use of silver nitrate or silver oxide, in a solvent such as
 aqueous or anhydrous methanol at a temperature of ~25 °C or as high as reflux. The
 reaction is typically carried out for one to 48 h and is typically monitored by TLC or
 LC/MS until complete conversion of product to starting material has occurred.
 Alternatively, KMnO_4 or $\text{CrO}_3/\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ could be utilized.

Scheme 24



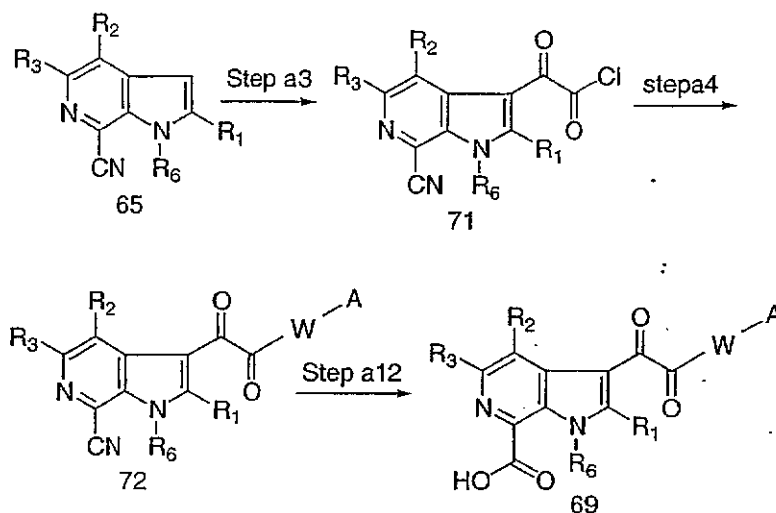
Scheme 25 gives a specific example of the oxidation of an aldehyde intermediate, 70a, to provide the carboxylic acid intermediate, 69a.

Scheme 25

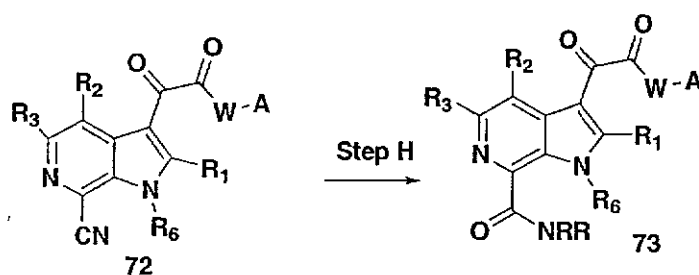


Alternatively, intermediate 69 can be prepared by the nitrile method of synthesis carried out in an alternative order as shown in Scheme 26. The nitrile hydrolysis step can be delayed and the nitrile carried through the synthesis to provide a nitrile which can be hydrolyzed to provide the free acid, 69, as above.

Scheme 26



Scheme 27



5

Step H The direct conversion of nitriles, such as 72, to amides, such as 73, shown in Scheme 27, Step H, can be carried out using the conditions as described in Shiotani, S.; Taniguchi, K.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1996**, 33(4), 1051-1056 (describes the use of aqueous sulfuric acid); Memoli, K.A.; *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1996**, 37(21), 3617-3618; Adolfsson, H.; Waernmark, K.; Moberg, C.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1994**, 59(8), 2004-2009; and El Hadri, A.; Leclerc, G.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1993**, 30(3), 631-635.

Step I For NH₂

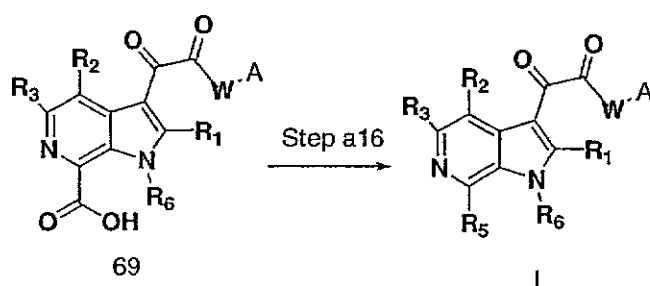
15

Shiotani, S.; Taniguchi, K.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1997**, 34(2), 493-499;
 Boogaard, A. T.; Pandit, U. K.; Koomen, G.-J.; *Tetrahedron* **1994**, 50(8), 2551-2560;
 Rivalle, C.; Bisagni, E.; *Heterocycles* **1994**, 38(2), 391-397;

Macor, J.E.; Post, R.; Ryan, K.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1992**, 29(6), 1465-1467.

Step J

5

Scheme 28

The following scheme (28A) shows an example for the preparation of 4-
10 fluoro-7substituted azaindoles from a known starting materials. References for the
Bartoli indole synthesis were mentioned earlier. The conditions for tranformation to
the nitriles, acids, aldeheydes, heterocycles and amides have also been described in
this application.

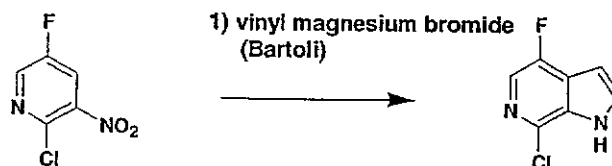
15

20

25

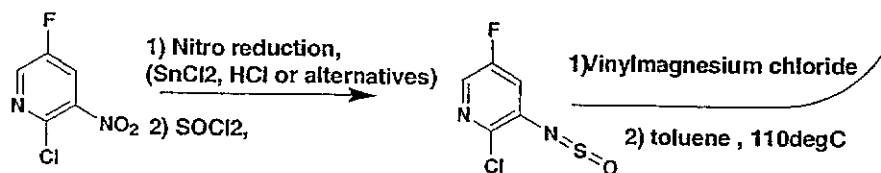
Scheme 28A

Either:



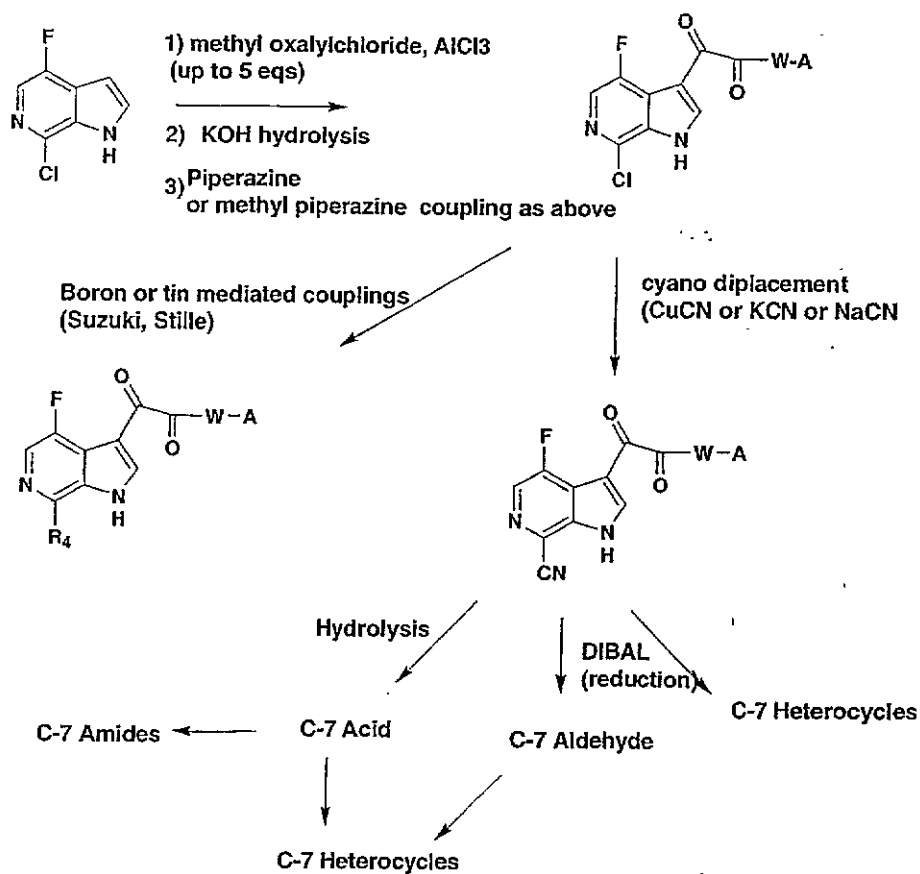
Prepared as in US 5,811,432

Or:

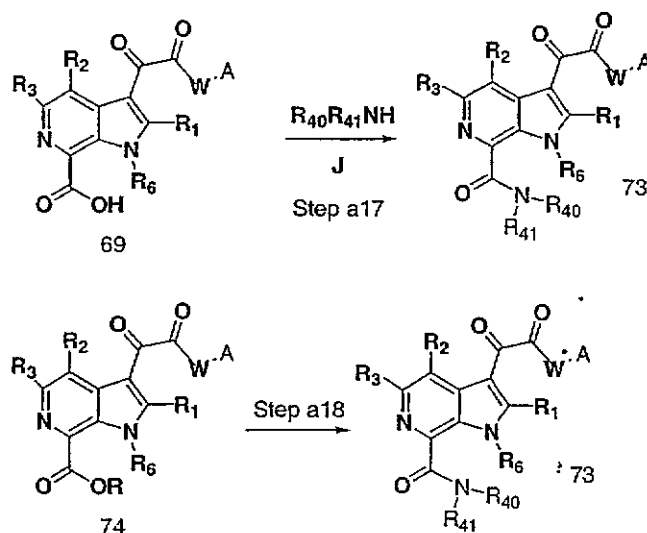


Prepared as in US 5,811,432

Tetrahedron Letters 1986, 27,837.



Scheme 29

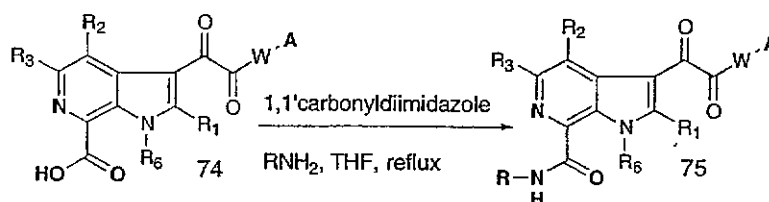


Steps a16, a17, and a18 encompasses reactions and conditions for 1⁰, 2⁰ and 3⁰ amide bond formation as shown in Schemes 28 and 29 which provide compounds such as those of Formula 73.

The reaction conditions for the formation of amide bonds encompass any reagents that generate a reactive intermediate for activation of the carboxylic acid to amide formation, for example (but not limited to), acyl halide, from carbodiimide, acyl iminium salt, symmetrical anhydrides, mixed anhydrides (including phosphonic/phosphinic mixed anhydrides), active esters (including silyl ester, methyl ester and thioester), acyl carbonate, acyl azide, acyl sulfonate and acyloxy *N*-phosphonium salt. The reaction of the indole carboxylic acids with amines to form amides may be mediated by standard amide bond forming conditions described in the art. Some examples for amide bond formation are listed in references 41-53 but this list is not limiting. Some carboxylic acid to amine coupling reagents which are applicable are EDC, Diisopropylcarbodiimide or other carbodiimides, PyBop (benzotriazolyloxytris(dimethylamino) phosphonium hexafluorophosphate), 2-(1H-benzotriazole-1-yl)-1, 1, 3, 3-tetramethyl uronium hexafluorophosphate (HBTU). A particularly useful method for azaindole 7-carboxylic acid to amide reactions is the use of carbonyl imidazole as the coupling reagent as described in reference 53. The temperature of this reaction may be lower than in the cited reference, from 80 °C (or

possibly lower) to 150 °C or higher. A more specific application is depicted in Scheme 30.

Scheme 30



The following four general methods provide a more detailed description for the preparation of indolecarboxamides and these methods were employed for the synthesis of compounds of Formula I.

Method 1:

To a mixture of an acid intermediate, such as 75, (1 equiv), an appropriate amine (4 equiv.) and DMAP .1 to 1 eq dissolved CH₂Cl₂ (1 mL) was added EDC (1eq). The resulting mixture should be shaken at rt for ~12h, and then evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in MeOH, and subjected to preparative reverse phase HPLC purification.

Method 2:

To a mixture of an appropriate amine (4 equiv.) and HOBt (16 mg, 0.12 mmol) in THF (0.5 mL) should be added an acid intermediate, such as 74, and NMM ~1eq followed by EDC. The reaction mixture was shaken at rt for 12 h. The volatiles were evaporated *in vacuo*; and the residue dissolved in MeOH and subjected to preparative reverse phase HPLC purification.

Method 3:

To a mixture of an acid intermediate, such as 74, amine (4 equiv.) and DEPBT (prepared according to Li, H.; Jiang, X. Ye, Y.; Fan, C.; Todd, R.; Goodman, M. *Organic Letters* **1999**, *1*, 91; in DMF was added TEA. The resulting mixture
5 should be shaken at rt for 12 h; and then diluted with MeOH and purified by preparative reverse phase HPLC.

Method 4:

10

A mixture of an acid intermediate, such as 74, and of 1,1-carbonyldiimidazole in anhydrous THF was heated to reflux under nitrogen. After 2.5h, amine was added and heating continued. After an additional period of 3~20 h at reflux, the reaction mixture was cooled and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified by
15 chromatography on silica gel to provide a compound of Formula I.

In addition, the carboxylic acid may be converted to an acid chloride using reagents such as thionyl chloride (neat or in an inert solvent) or oxalyl chloride in a solvent such as benzene, toluene, THF, or CH₂Cl₂. The amides may alternatively, be
20 formed by reaction of the acid chloride with an excess of ammonia, primary, or secondary amine in an inert solvent such as benzene, toluene, THF, or CH₂Cl₂ or with stoichiometric amounts of amines in the presence of a tertiary amine such as triethylamine or a base such as pyridine or 2,6-lutidine. Alternatively, the acid chloride may be reacted with an amine under basic conditions (Usually sodium or
25 potassium hydroxide) in solvent mixtures containing water and possibly a miscible co solvent such as dioxane or THF. Scheme 25B depicts a typical preparation of an acid chloride and derivatization to an amide of Formula I. Additionally, the carboxylic acid may be converted to an ester preferably a methyl or ethyl ester and then reacted with an amine. The ester may be formed by reaction with diazomethane or
30 alternatively trimethylsilyl diazomethane using standard conditions which are well known in the art. References and procedures for using these or other ester forming reactions can be found in reference 52 or 54.

Additional references for the formation of amides from acids are: Norman, M.H.; Navas, F. III; Thompson, J.B.; Rigdon, G.C.; *J. Med. Chem.* **1996**, 39(24), 4692-4703; Hong, F.; Pang, Y.-P.; Cusack, B.; Richelson, E.; *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans 1* **1997**, 14, 2083-2088; Langry, K.C.; *Org. Prep. Proc. Int.* **1994**, 26(4), 429-438; Romero, D.L.; Morge, R.A.; Biles, C.; Berrios-Pena, N.; May, P.D.; Palmer, J.R.; Johnson, P.D.; Smith, H.W.; Busso, M.; Tan, C.-K.; Voorman, R.L.; Reusser, F.; Althaus, I.W.; Downey, K.M.; et al.; *J. Med. Chem.* **1994**, 37(7), 999-1014; Bhattacharjee, A.; Mukhopadhyay, R.; Bhattacharjya, A.; *Indian J. Chem., Sect B* **1994**, 33(7), 679-682.

10

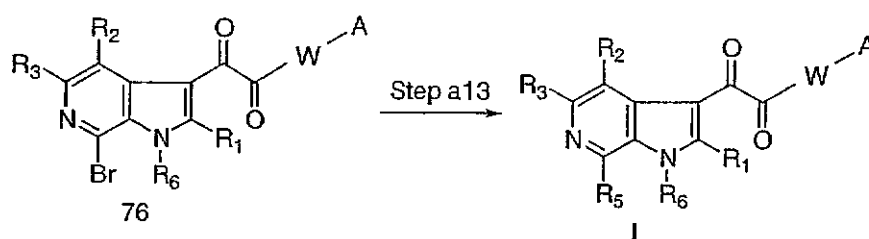
It is well known in the art that heterocycles may be prepared from an aldehyde, carboxylic acid, carboxylic acid ester, carboxylic acid amide, carboxylic acid halide, or cyano moiety or attached to another carbon substituted by a bromide or other leaving group such as a triflate, mesylate, chloride, iodide, or phosphonate. The methods for preparing such intermediates from intermediates typified by the carboxylic acid intermediate, 69, bromo intermediate, 76, or aldehyde intermediate, 70 described above are known by a typical chemist practitioner. The methods or types of heterocycles which may be constructed are described in the chemical literature. Some representative references for finding such heterocycles and their construction are included in reference 55 through 67 but should in no way be construed as limiting. However, examination of these references shows that many versatile methods are available for synthesizing diversely substituted heterocycles and it is apparent to one skilled in the art that these can be applied to prepare compounds of Formula I. Chemists well versed in the art can now easily, quickly, and routinely find numerous reactions for preparing heterocycles, amides, oximes or other substituents from the above mentioned starting materials by searching for reactions or preparations using a conventional electronic database such as Scifinder (American Chemical Society), Crossfire (Beilstein), Theilheimer, or Reaccs (MDS). The reaction conditions identified by such a search can then be employed using the substrates described in this application to produce all of the compounds envisioned and covered by this invention. In the case of amides, commercially available amines can be used in the synthesis. Alternatively, the above mentioned search programs can be used to locate literature preparations of known amines or procedures to synthesize

30

new amines. These procedures are then carried out by one with typical skill in the art to provide the compounds of Formula I for use as antiviral agents.

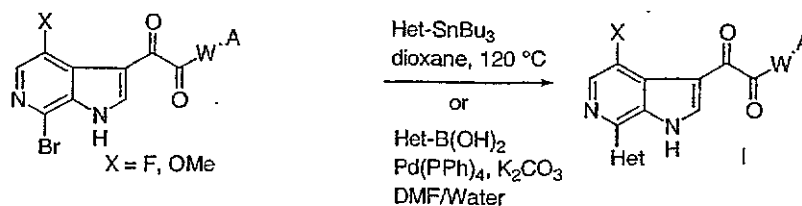
As shown below in Scheme 32, step a13, suitable substituted azaindoles, such as the bromoazaindole intermediate, 76, may undergo metal mediated couplings with aryl groups, heterocycles, or vinyl stannanes to provide compounds of Formula I wherein R_5 is aryl, heteroaryl, or heteroalicyclic for example. The bromoazaindole intermediates, 76 (or azaindole triflates or iodides) may undergo Stille-type coupling with heteroarylstannanes as shown in Scheme 32, step a13. Conditions for this reaction are well known in the art and references 68-70 as well as reference 52 provide numerous conditions in addition to the specific examples provided in Scheme 14 and in the specific embodiments. It can be well recognized that an indole stannane could also couple to a heterocyclic or aryl halide or triflate to construct compounds of Formula I. Suzuki coupling (reference 71) between the bromo intermediate, 76, and a suitable boronate could also be employed and some specific examples are contained in this application.

Scheme 32



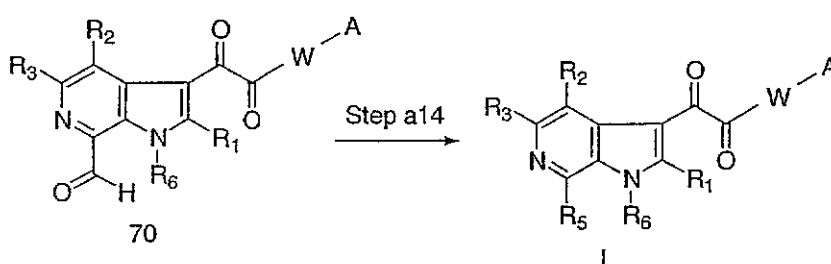
20

Scheme 33



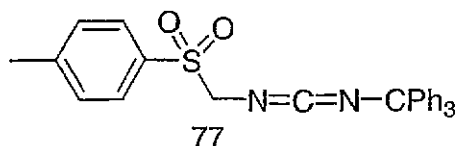
As shown in Scheme 34, step a14, aldehyde intermediates, 70, may be used to generate numerous compounds of Formula I. The aldehyde group may be a precursor for any of the substituents R₁ through R₅ but the transformation for R₅ is depicted above for simplicity. The aldehyde intermediate 70, may be reacted to become
 5 incorporated into a ring as

Scheme 34



10 described in the claims or be converted into an acyclic group. The aldehyde, 70, may be reacted with a Tosmic based reagent to generate oxazoles (references 42 and 43 for example). The aldehyde, 70, may be reacted with a Tosmic reagent and then an amine to give imidazoles as in reference 72 or the aldehyde intermediate, 70, may be reacted with hydroxylamine to give an oxime which is a compound of Formula I as
 15 described below. Oxidation of the oxime with NBS, t-butyl hypochlorite, or the other known reagents would provide the N-oxide which react with alkynes or 3 alkoxy vinyl esters to give isoxazoles of varying substitution. Reaction of the aldehyde intermediate 70, with the known reagent, 77 (reference 70) shown below under basic conditions would provide 4-amino trityl oxazoles.

20



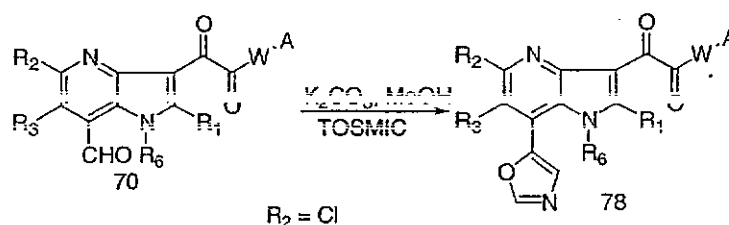
Removal of the trityl group would provide 4-amino oxazoles which could be substituted by acylation, reductive alkylation or alkylation reactions or heterocycle
 25 forming reactions. The trityl could be replaced with an alternate protecting group such as a monomethoxy trityl, CBZ, benzyl, or appropriate silyl group if desired.

Reference 73 demonstrates the preparation of oxazoles containing a trifluoromethyl moiety and the conditions described therein demonstrates the synthesis of oxazoles with fluorinated methyl groups appended to them.

5 The aldehyde could also be reacted with a metal or Grignard (alkyl, aryl, or heteroaryl) to generate secondary alcohols. These would be efficacious or could be oxidized to the ketone with TPAP or MnO_2 or PCC for example to provide ketones of Formula I which could be utilized for treatment or reacted with metal reagents to give tertiary alcohols or alternatively converted to oximes by reaction with hydroxylamine hydrochlorides in ethanolic solvents. Alternatively the aldehyde could be converted to benzyl amines via reductive amination. An example of oxazole formation via a Tomic reagent is shown below in Scheme 35. The same reaction would work with aldehydes at other positions and also in the 5 and 6 aza indole series.

15

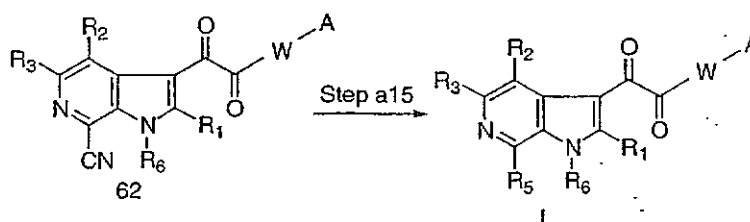
Scheme 35



Scheme 36 shows in step a15, a cyano intermediate, such as 62, which could be directly converted to compounds of Formula I via heterocycle formation or reaction with organometallic reagents.

20

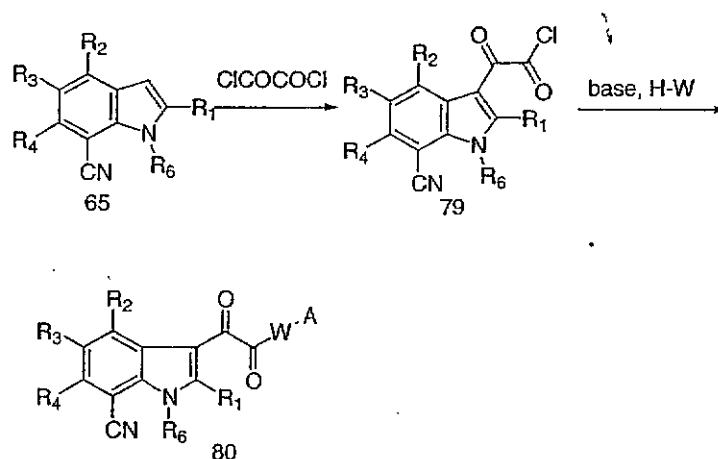
Scheme 36



Scheme 37 shows a method for acylation of a cyanoindole intermediate of formula 65 with oxalyl chloride which would give acid chloride, 79, which could then be coupled with the appropriate amine in the presence of base to provide 80.

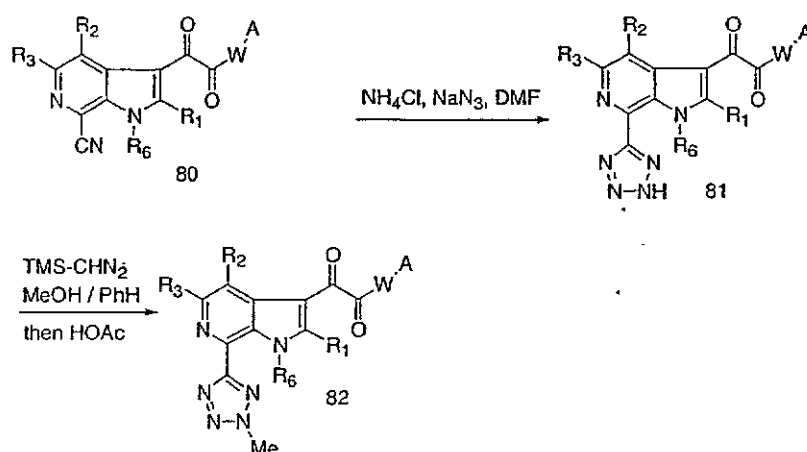
5

Scheme 37



The nitrile intermediate, 80, could be converted to the tetrazole of formula 81, which could then be alkylated with trimethylsilyldiazomethane to give the compound of formula 82 (Scheme 38).

Scheme 38



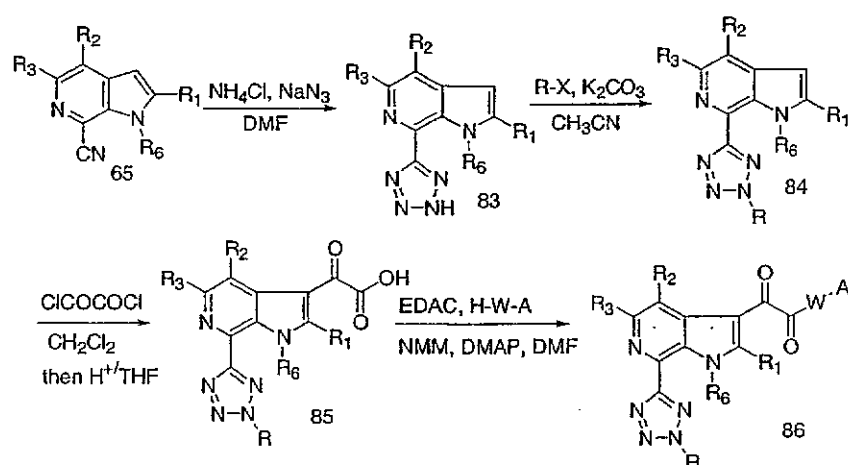
15

Tetrazole alkylation with alkyl halides would be carried out prior to azaindole acylation as shown in Scheme 39. Intermediate 65 could be converted to tetrazole, 83, which could be alkylated to provide 84. Intermediate 84 could then be acylated

and hydrolyzed to provide 85 which could be subjected to amide formation conditions to provide 86. The group appended to the tetrazole may be quite diverse and still exhibit impressive potency.

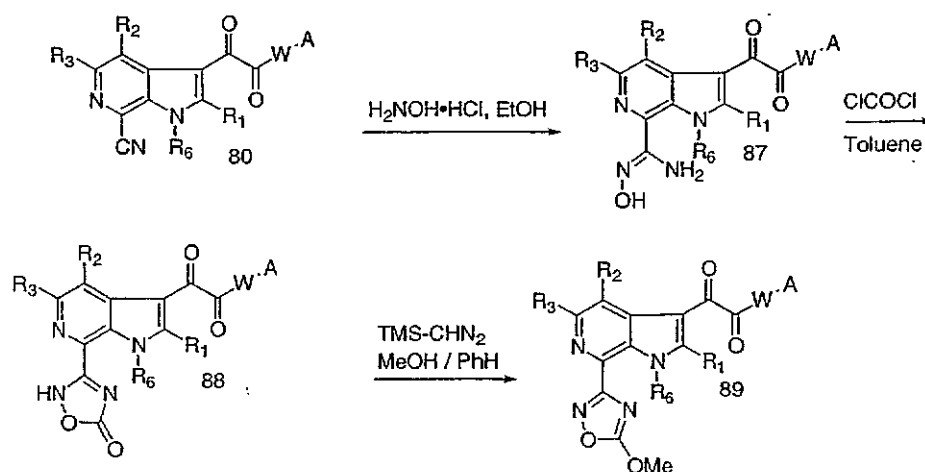
5

Scheme 39



Scheme 40 shows that an oxadiazole such as , 88, may be prepared by the addition of hydroxylamine to the nitrile, 80, followed by ring closure of intermediate 87 with phosgene. Alkylation of oxadiazole, 88, with trimethylsilyldiazomethane would give the compound of formula 89.

Scheme 40



15

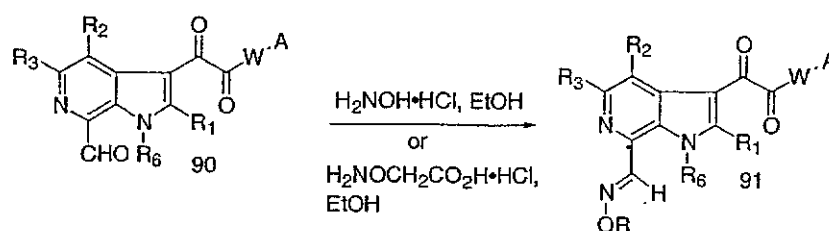
A 7-cyanoindole, such as 80, could be efficiently converted to the imidate ester under conventional Pinner conditions using 1,4-dioxane as the solvent. The imidate ester can be reacted with nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur nucleophiles to provide C7-substituted indoles, for example: imidazolines, benzimidazoles, azabenzimidazoles, oxazolines, oxadiazoles, thiazolines, triazoles, pyrimidines and amidines etc. For example the imidate may be reacted with acetyl hydrazide with heating in a nonparticipating solvent such as dioxane, THF, or benzene for example. (aqueous base or aqueous base in an alcoholic solvent may need to be added to effect final dehydrative cyclization in some cases) to form a methyl triazine. Other hydrazines can be used. Triazines can also be installed via coupling of stannyl triazines with 4,5,6,or 7-bromo or chloro azaindoles. The examples give an example of the formation of many of these heterocycles.

References:

- (1) Das, B. P.; Boykin, D. W. *J. Med. Chem.* **1977**, *20*, 531.
- (2) Czarny, A.; Wilson, W. D.; Boykin, D. W. *J. Heterocyclic Chem.* **1996**, *33*, 1393.
- (3) Francesconi, I.; Wilson, W. D.; Tanious, F. A.; Hall, J. E.; Bender, B. C.; Tidwell, R. R.; McCurdy, D.; Boykin, D. W. *J. Med. Chem.* **1999**, *42*, 2260.

Scheme 41 shows addition of either hydroxylamine or hydroxylamine acetic acid to aldehyde intermediate 90 may give oximes of Formula 91.

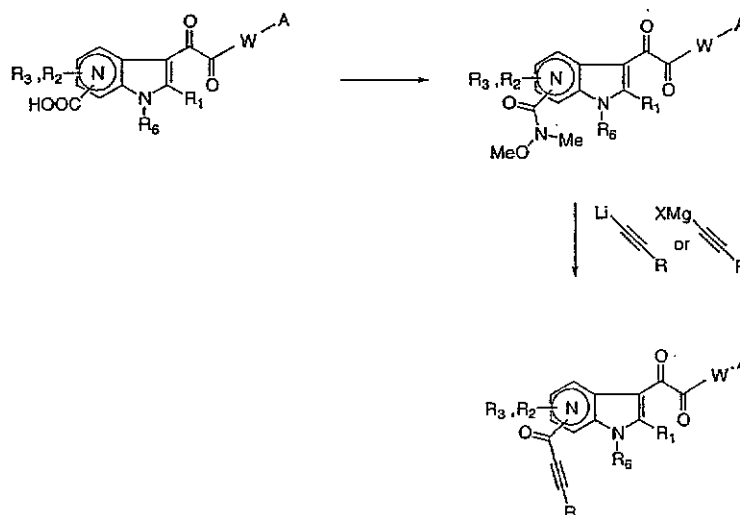
Scheme 41



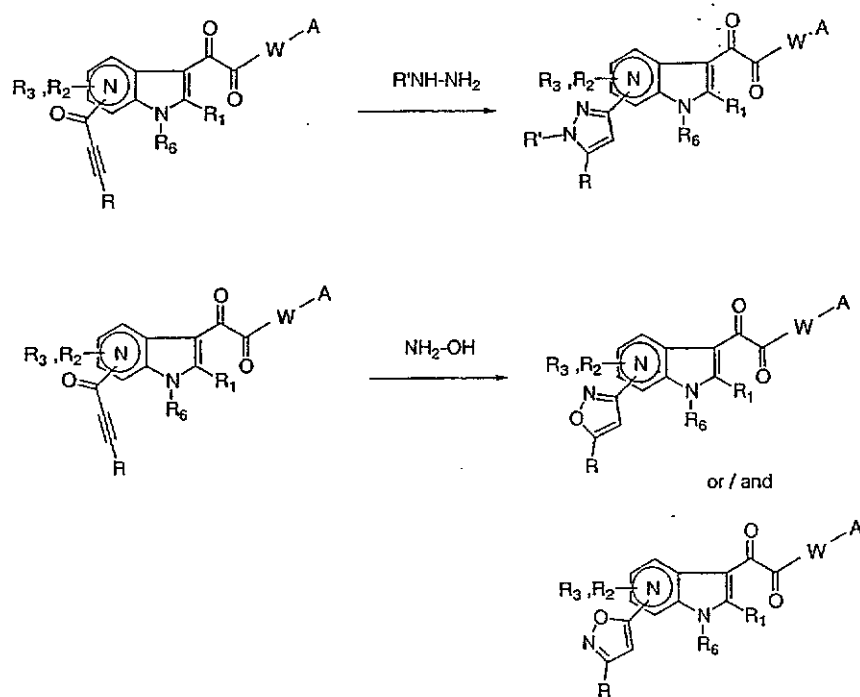
An acid may be a precursor for substituents R_1 through R_5 when it occupies the corresponding position such as R_5 as shown in Scheme 42.

Scheme 41a

5

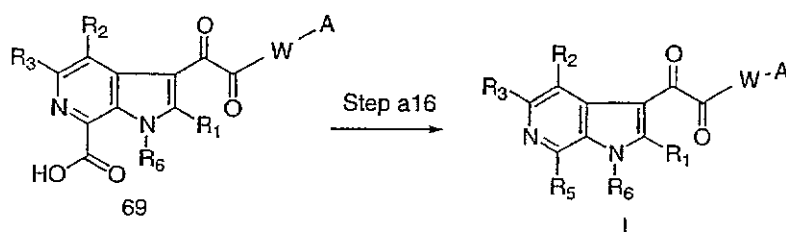


Scheme 41a (continued)



10

Scheme 42



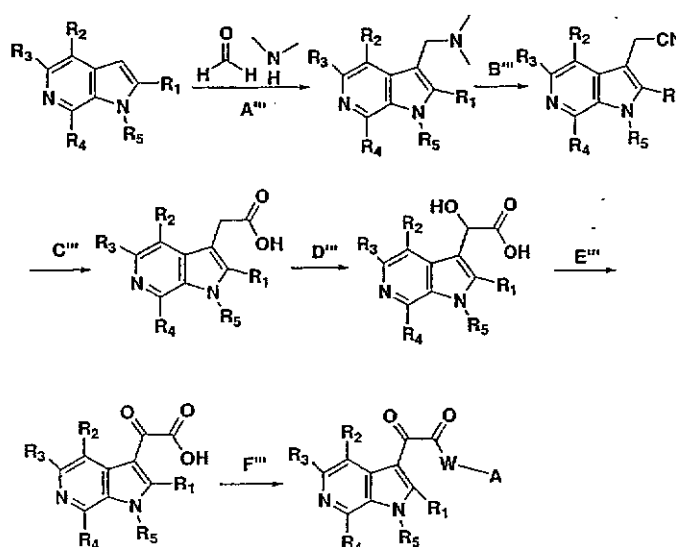
5 An acid intermediate, such as 69, may be used as a versatile precursor to
 generate numerous substituted compounds. The acid could be converted to
 hydrazonyl bromide and then a pyrazole via reference 74. One method for general
 heterocycle synthesis would be to convert the acid to an alpha bromo ketone (ref 75)
 by conversion to the acid chloride using standard methods, reaction with
 10 diazomethane, and finally reaction with HBr. The alpha bromo ketone could be used
 to prepare many different compounds of Formula I as it can be converted to many
 heterocycles or other compounds of Formula I. Alpha amino ketones can be prepared
 by displacement of the bromide with amines. Alternatively, the alpha bromo ketone
 could be used to prepare heterocycles not available directly from the aldehyde or
 15 acid. For example, using the conditions of Hulton in reference 76 to react with the
 alpha bromo ketone would provide oxazoles. Reaction of the alpha bromoketone
 with urea via the methods of reference 77 would provide 2-amino oxazoles. The
 alpha bromoketone could also be used to generate furans using beta keto esters(ref
 78-80) or other methods, pyrroles (from beta dicarbonyls as in ref 81 or by Hantsch
 20 methods (ref 82) thiazoles, isoxazoles and imidazoles (ref 83) example using
 literature procedures. Coupling of the aforementioned acid chloride with N-methyl-
 O-methyl hydroxyl amine would provide a "Weinreb Amide" which could be used to
 react with alkyl lithiums or Grignard reagents to generate ketones. Reaction of the
 Weinreb anion with a dianion of a hydroxyl amine would generate isoxazoles (ref
 25 84). Reaction with an acetylenic lithium or other carbanion would generate alkynyl
 indole ketones. Reaction of this alkynyl intermediate with diazomethane or other
 diazo compounds would give pyrazoles (ref 85). Reaction with azide or hydroxyl
 amine would give heterocycles after elimination of water. Nitrile oxides would react
 with the alkynyl ketone to give isoxazoles (ref 86). Reaction of the initial acid to
 30 provide an acid chloride using for example oxalyl chloride or thionyl chloride or

triphenyl phosphine/ carbon tetrachloride provides a useful intermediate as noted above. Reaction of the acid chloride with an alpha ester substituted isocyanide and base would give 2-substituted oxazoles (ref 87). These could be converted to amines, alcohols, or halides using standard reductions or Hoffman/Curtius type rearrangements.

Scheme 43 describes alternate chemistry for installing the oxoacetyl alkenylpiperidine moiety onto the 3 position of the azaindoles. Step A''' in Scheme 43 depicts reaction with formaldehyde and dimethylamine using the conditions in Frydman, B.; Despuy, M.E.; Rapoport, H.; *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1965**, *87*, 3530 will provide the dimethylamino compound shown.

Step B''' shows displacement with potassium cyanide would provide the cyano derivative according to the method described in Miyashita, K.; Kondoh, K.; Tsuchiya, K.; Miyabe, H.; Imanishi, T.; *Chem. Pharm. Bull.* **1997**, *45*(5), 932-935 or in Kawase, M.; Sinhababu, A.K.; Borchardt, R.T.; *Chem. Pharm. Bull.* **1990**, *38*(11), 2939-2946. The same transformation could also be carried out using TMSCN and a tetrabutylammonium fluoride source as in Iwao, M.; Mitsu, O.; *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1995**, *36*(33), 5929-5932. Sodium cyanide could also be utilized.

Scheme 43



Step C''' of Scheme 43 depicts hydrolysis of the nitrile with sodium hydroxide and methanol would provide the acid via the methods described in Iwao, M.; Motoi, O.; *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1995**, 36(33), 5929-5932 for example. Other basic hydrolysis conditions using either NaOH or KOH as described in Thesing, J.; et al.;
5 *Chem. Ber.* **1955**, 88, 1295 and Geissman, T.A.; Armen, A.; *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1952**, 74, 3916. The use of a nitrilase enzyme to achieve the same transformation is described by Klempier N, de Raadt A, Griengl H, Heinisch G, *J. Heterocycl. Chem.*, **1992** 29, 93, and may be applicable.

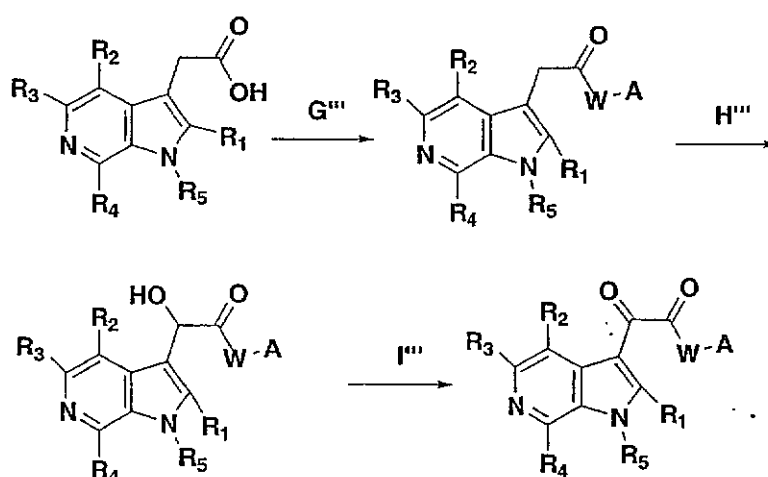
10 Step D''' of Scheme 43 depicts an alpha hydroxylation which may be accomplished by methods as described in Hanessian, S.; Wang, W.; Gai, Y.; *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1996**, 37(42), 7477-7480; Robinson, R. A.; Clark, J. S.; Holmes, A. B.; *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1993**, 115(22), 10400-10401 (KN(TMS)₂ and then camphorsulfonyloxaziridine or another oxaziridine; and Davis, F.A.; Reddy, R.T.;
15 Reddy, R.E.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1992**, 57(24), 6387-6389.

Step E''' of Scheme 43 shows methods for the oxidation of the alpha hydroxy ester to the ketone which may be accomplished according to the methods described in Mohand, S.A.; Levina, A.; Muzart, J.; *Synth. Comm.* **1995**, 25 (14), 2051-2059. A
20 preferred method for step E''' is that of Ma, Z.; Bobbitt, J.M.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1991**, 56(21), 6110-6114 which utilizes 4-(NH-Ac)-TEMPO in a solvent such as CH₂Cl₂ in the presence of para toluenesulfonic acid. The method described in Corson, B.B.; Dodge, R.A.; Harris, S.A.; Hazen, R.K.; *Org. Synth.* **1941**, 1, 241 for the oxidation of the alpha hydroxy ester to the ketone uses KmnO₄ as oxidant. Other methods for the
25 oxidation of the alpha hydroxy ester to the ketone include those described in Hunaeus, ; Zincke,; *Ber. Dtsch Chem. Ges.* **1877**, 10, 1489; Acree,; *Am. Chem.* **1913**, 50, 391; and Claisen,; *Ber. Dtsch. Chem. Ges.* **1877**, 10, 846.

Step F''' of Scheme 43 depicts the coupling reactions which may be carried
30 out as described previously in the application and by a preferred method which is described in Li, H.; Jiang, X.; Ye, Y.-H.; Fan, C.; Romoff, T.; Goodman, M. *Organic Lett.*, **1999**, 1, 91-93 and employs 3-(Diethoxyphosphoryloxy)-1,2,3-benzotriazin-

4(3*H*)-one (DEPBT); a new coupling reagent with remarkable resistance to racemization.

Scheme 44

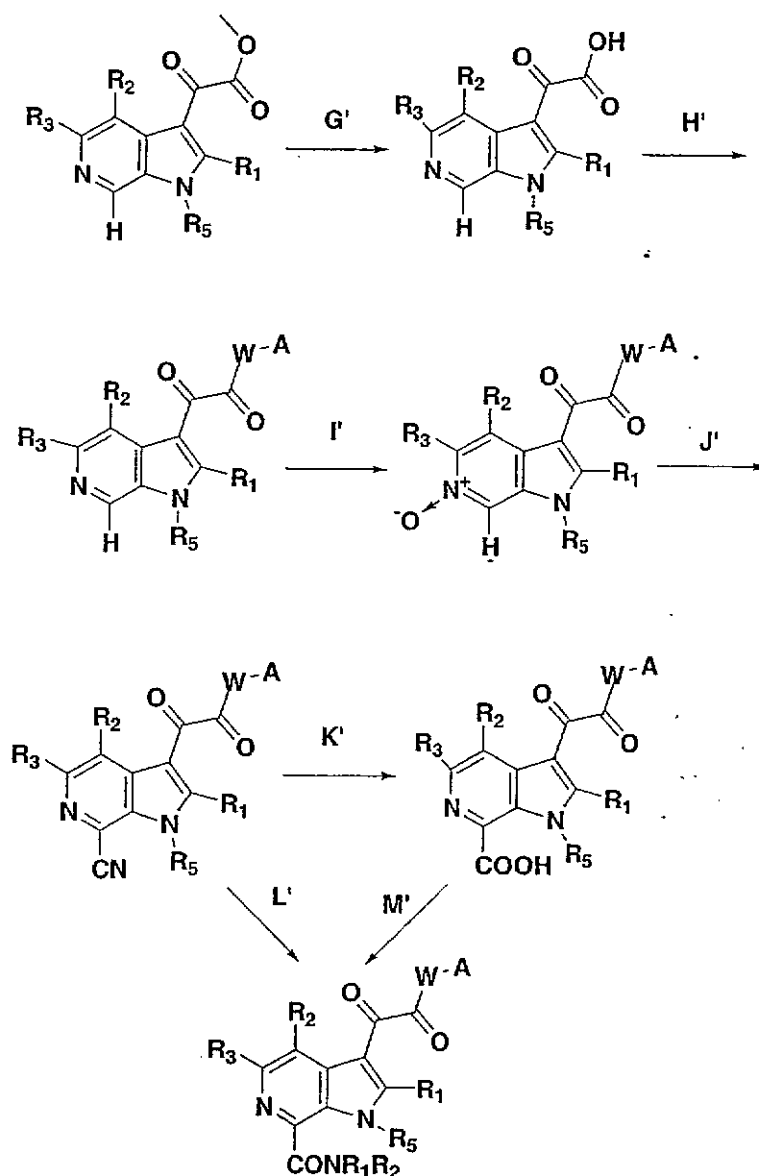


5

Scheme 44 depicts the preparation of Formula I compounds by coupling $ITWC(O)A$ to the acid as described in Step F''' of Scheme 43, followed by hydroxylation as in Step D''' of Scheme 43 and oxidation as described in Step E''' of Scheme 43.

10

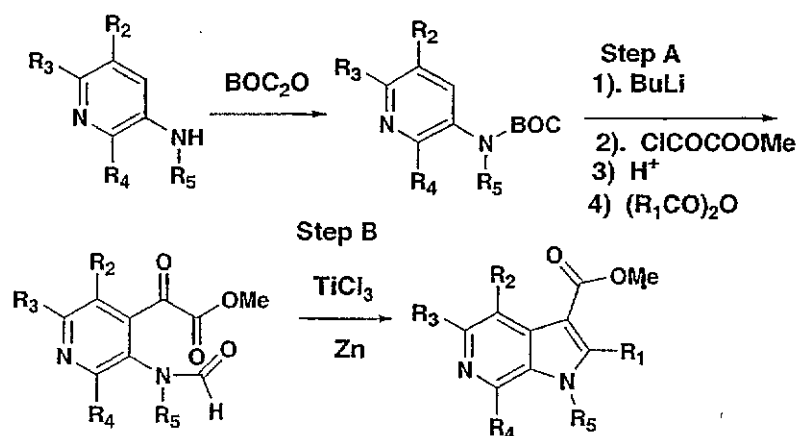
Scheme 45



Scheme 45 depicts a method for the preparation which could be used to obtain
 5 amido compounds of Formula I. Step G' represents ester hydrolysis followed by
 amide formation (Step H' as described in Step F''' of Scheme 43). Step I' of Scheme
 45 depicts the preparation of the N-oxide which could be accomplished according to
 the procedures in Suzuki, H.; Iwata, C.; Sakurai, K.; Tokumoto, K.; Takahashi, H.;
 Hanada, M.; Yokoyama, Y.; Murakami, Y.; *Tetrahedron* **1997**, *53*(5), 1593-1606;
 10 Suzuki, H.; Yokoyama, Y.; Miyagi, C.; Murakami, Y.; *Chem. Pharm. Bull.* **1991**,
39(8), 2170-2172; and Ohmato, T.; Koike, K.; Sakamoto, Y.; *Chem. Pharm. Bull.*

- 1981, 29, 390. Cyanation of the N-oxide is shown in Step J' of Scheme 45 which may be accomplished according to Suzuki, H.; Iwata, C.; Sakurai, K.; Tokumoto, K.; Takahashi, H.; Hanada, M.; Yokoyama, Y.; Murakami, Y.; *Tetrahedron* **1997**, 53(5), 1593-1606 and Suzuki, H.; Yokoyama, Y.; Miyagi, C.; Murakami, Y.; *Chem. Pharm. Bull.* **1991**, 39(8), 2170-2172. Hydrolysis of the nitrile to the acid is depicted in Step K' of Scheme 45 according to procedures such as Shiotani, S.; Taniguchi, K.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1996**, 33(4), 1051-1056; Memoli, K.A.; *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1996**, 37(21), 3617-3618; Adolfsson, H.; Waernmark, K.; Moberg, C.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1994**, 59(8), 2004-2009; and El Hadri, A.; Leclerc, G.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1993**, 30(3), 631-635. Step L' of Scheme 45 depicts a method which could be utilized for the preparation of amido compounds of Formula I from the cyano derivative which may be accomplished according to procedures described in Shiotani, S.; Taniguchi, K.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1997**, 34(2), 493-499; Boogaard, A.T.; Pandit, U.K.; Koomen, G.-J.; *Tetrahedron* **1994**, 50(8), 2551-2560; Rivalle, C.; Bisagni, E.; *Heterocycles* **1994**, 38(2), 391-397; and Macor, J.E.; Post, R.; Ryan, K.; *J. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1992**, 29(6), 1465-1467. Step M' of Scheme 45 shows a method which could be used for the preparation of amido compounds of Formula I from the acid derivative which may be accomplished according to procedures described in Newman, M.H.; Neves, E. III; Thompson, J.B.; Rigdon, G.C.; *J. Med. Chem.* **1996**, 39(24), 4692-4703; Hong, F.; Pang, Y.-P.; Cusack, B.; Richelson, E.; *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans 1* **1997**, 14, 2083-2088; Langry, K. C.; *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **1994**, 26(4), 429-438; Romero, D.L.; Morge, R.A.; Biles, C.; Berrios-Pena, N.; May, P.D.; Palmer, J.R.; Johnson, P.D.; Smith, H.W.; Busso, M.; Tan, C.-K.; Voorman, R.L.; Reusser, F.; Althaus, I.W.; Downey, K.M.; et al.; *J. Med. Chem.* **1994**, 37(7), 999-1014 and Bhattacharjee, A.; Mukhopadhyay, R.; Bhattacharjya, A.; *Indian J. Chem., Sect B* **1994**, 33(7), 679-682.

Scheme 46



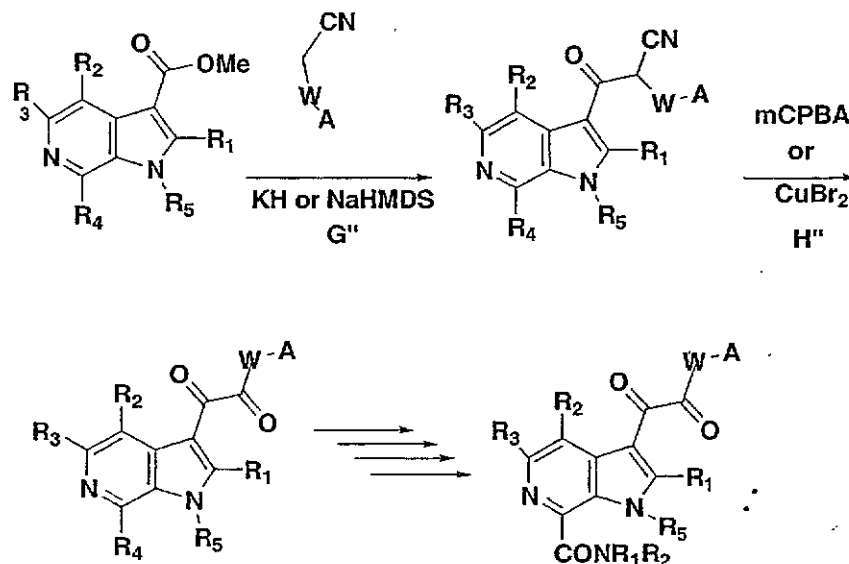
- 5 Scheme 46 shows a method which could be used for the synthesis of an azaindole acetic acid derivative. Protection of the amine group could be effected by treatment with di-tert-butylidicarbonate to introduce the t-Butoxycarbonyl (BOC) group. Introduction of the oxalate moiety may then be accomplished as shown in Step A of Scheme 46 according to the procedures described in Hewawasam, P.;
- 10 Meanwell, N. A.; *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1994**, 35(40), 7303-7306 (using t-Buli, or s-buli, THF); or Stanetty, P.; Koller, H.; Mihovilovic, M.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1992**, 57(25), 6833-6837 (using t-Buli). The intermediate thus formed could then be cyclized to form the azaindole as shown in Step B of Scheme 46 according to the procedures described in Fuerstner, A.; Ernst, A.; Krause, H.; Ptock, A.; *Tetrahedron* **1996**,
- 15 52(21), 7329-7344 (using TiCl_3 , Zn, DME); or Fuerstner, A.; Hupperts, A.; *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1995**, 117(16), 4468-4475 (using Zn, excess Tms-Cl, TiCl_3 (cat.), MeCN).

Scheme 49 provides another route to azaindole intermediates which could

20 then be further elaborated to provide compounds of Formula I, such as the amido derivatives shown. Steps G'' and H'' of Scheme 49 may be carried out according to the procedures described in Takahashi, K.; Shibasaki, K.; Ogura, K.; Iida, H.; *Chem. Lett.* **1983**, 859; and Itoh, N.; *Chem. Pharm. Bull.* **1962**, 10, 55. Elaboration of the intermediate to the amido compound of Formula I could be accomplished as

25 previously described for Steps I' - M' of Scheme 45.

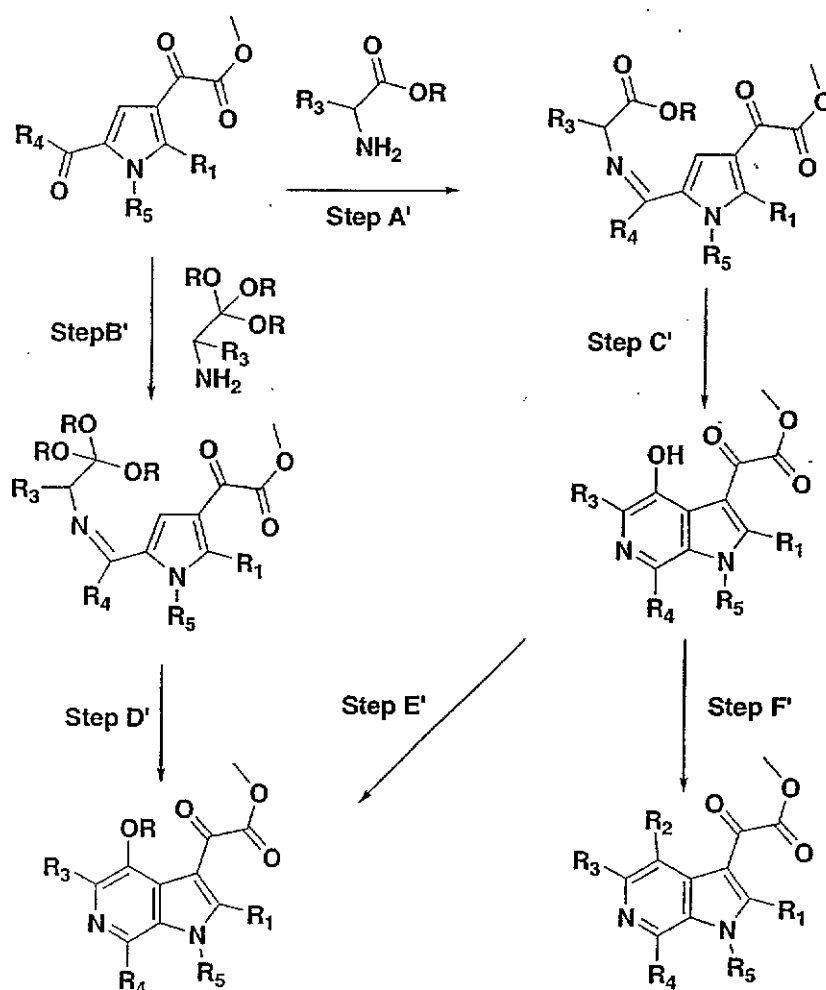
Scheme 49



- Scheme 50 shows the preparation of azaindole oxalic acid derivatives. The starting materials in Scheme 50 may be prepared according to *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1995**, *36*, 2389-2392. Steps A', B', C', and D' of Scheme 50 may be carried out according to procedures described in Jones, R.A.; Pastor, J.; Siro, J.; Voro, T.N.; *Tetrahedron* **1997**, *53*(2), 479-486; and Singh, S.K.; Dekhane, M.; Le Hyaric, M.; Potier, P.; Dodd, R.H.; *Heterocycles* **1997**, *44*(1), 379-391. Step E' of Scheme 50 could be carried out according to the procedures described in Suzuki, H.; Iwata, C.; Sakurai, K.; Tokumoto, K.; Takahashi, H.; Hanada, M.; Yokoyama, Y.; Murakami, Y.; *Tetrahedron* **1997**, *53*(5), 1593-1606; Suzuki, H.; Yokoyama, Y.; Miyagi, C.; Murakami, Y.; *Chem. Pharm. Bull.* **1991**, *39*(8), 2170-2172; Hagen, T.J.; Narayanan, K.; Names, J.; Cook, J.M.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1989**, *54*, 2170; Murakami, Y.; Yokoyama, Y.; Watanabe, T.; Aoki, C.; et al.; *Heterocycles* **1987**, *26*, 875; and Hagen, T. J.; Cook, J.M.; *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1988**, *29*(20), 2421. Step F' of Scheme 50 shows the conversion of the phenol to a fluoro, chloro or bromo derivative. Conversion of the phenol to the fluoro derivative could be carried out according to procedures described in Christe, K.O.; Pavlath, A.E.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1965**, *30*, 3170; Murakami, Y.; Aoyama, Y.; Nakanishi, S.; *Chem. Lett.* **1976**, 857; Christe, K. O.; Pavlath, A. E.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1965**, *30*, 4104; and Christe, K.O.; Pavlath, A.E.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1966**, *31*, 559. Conversion of the phenol to the chloro derivative could be carried out according to procedures described in Wright, S.W.; *Org. Prep. Proc. Int.* **1997**, *29*(1),

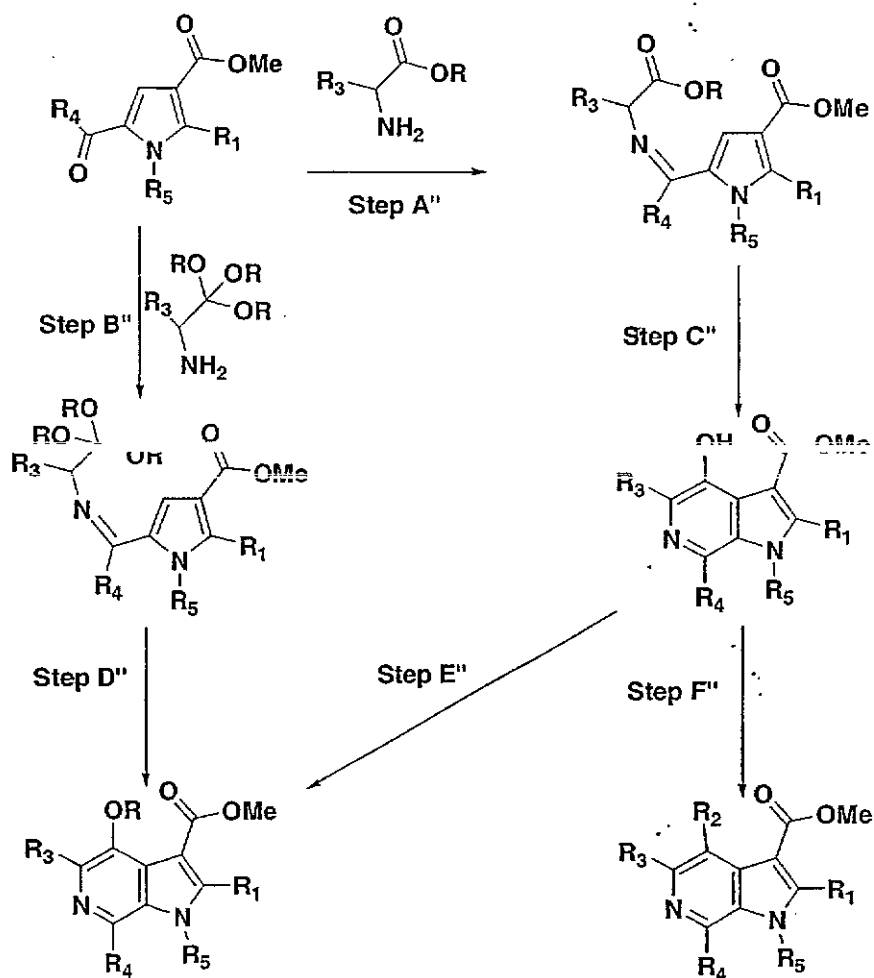
- 128-131; Hartmann, H.; Schulze, M.; Guenther, R.; *Dyes Pigm* **1991**, *16*(2), 119-136; Bay, E.; Bak, D. A.; Timony, P. E.; Leone-Bay, A.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1990**, *55*, 3415; Hoffmann, H.; et al.; *Chem. Ber.* **1962**, *95*, 523; and Vanallan, J.A.; Reynolds, G.A.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1963**, *28*, 1022. Conversion of the phenol to the bromo derivative may be carried out according to procedures described in Katritzky, A.R.; Li, J.; Stevens, C.V.; Ager, D.J.; *Org. Prep. Proc. Int.* **1994**, *26*(4), 439-444; Judice, J.K.; Keipert, S.J.; Cram, D.J.; *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* **1993**, *17*, 1323-1325; Schaeffer, J.P.; Higgins, J.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1967**, *32*, 1607; Wiley, G.A.; Hershkowitz, R.L.; Rein, R.M.; Chung, B.C.; *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1964**, *86*, 964; and Tayaka, H.; Akutagawa, S.; Noyori, R.; *Org. Syn.* **1988**, *67*, 20.

Scheme 50



Scheme 51 describes methods for the preparation of azaindole acetic acid derivatives by the same methods employed for the preparation of azaindole oxalic acid derivatives as shown and described in Scheme 50 above. The starting material employed in Scheme 51 could be prepared according to *J. Org. Chem.* **1999**, *64*, 7788-7801. Steps A'', B'', C'', D'', and E'' of Scheme 51 could be carried out in the same fashion as previously described for Steps A', B', C', D', and E' of Scheme 50.

Scheme 51



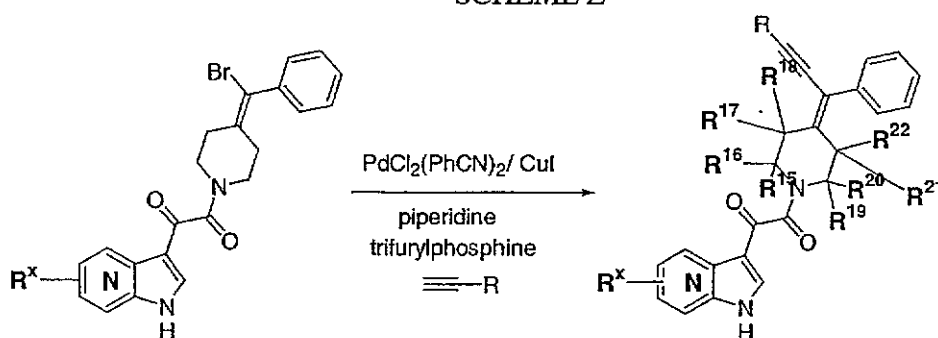
10

Scheme Z below shows that alkynes may be installed to form substituent D via a metal mediated coupling to the vinyl halide, or triflate. Usually excess alkyne (2.5eqs are used but stoichiometric amounts or greater excesses may also be employed). Preferred conditions utilize about .05 to 0.1 eq palladium catalyst

15

($\text{PdCl}_2(\text{PhCN})_2$ and about double the equivalents of CuI relative to catalyst (.1 to 0.2 eqs). The reaction is heated for several hours at a temperature of about 60°C in an amine such as piperidine. Alternatives for running this reaction include using Castro-Stephens conditions in which a primary amine such as for example butylamine, is
 5 used with CuI , a Palladium (O) catalyst such as tetrakis triphenylphosphine palladium (O) in an inert solvent such as THF or dioxane.

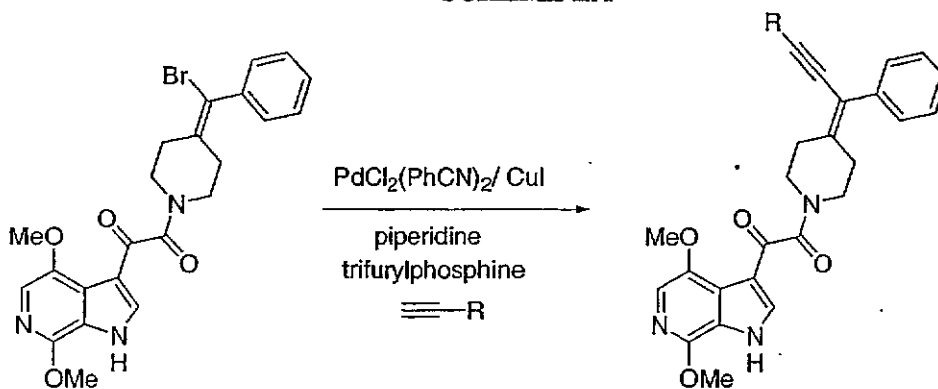
SCHEME Z



10

Scheme ZA provides a more specific example of Scheme Z.

SCHEME ZA



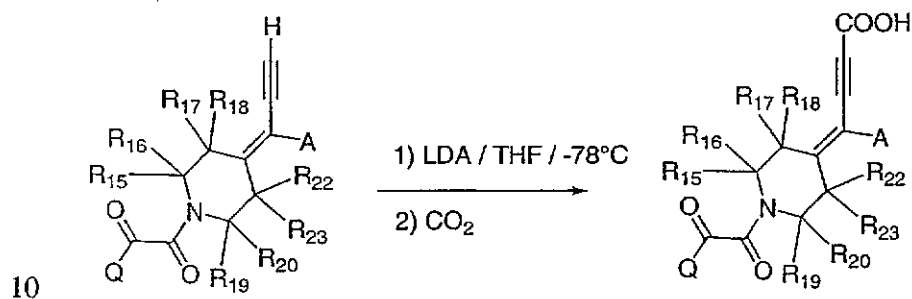
15

20

Scheme ZB below shows an example of how the alkyne used to construct D may be functionalized by first deprotonation with a suitable base such as LDA in THF at low temperature and then reaction with a suitable electrophile. Carbon dioxide is in the example shown below to provide an acid but alkyl halides, alkyl

5 cyanoformates, or isocyanates could be used to provide alkyl substitution, esters, or amides respectively.

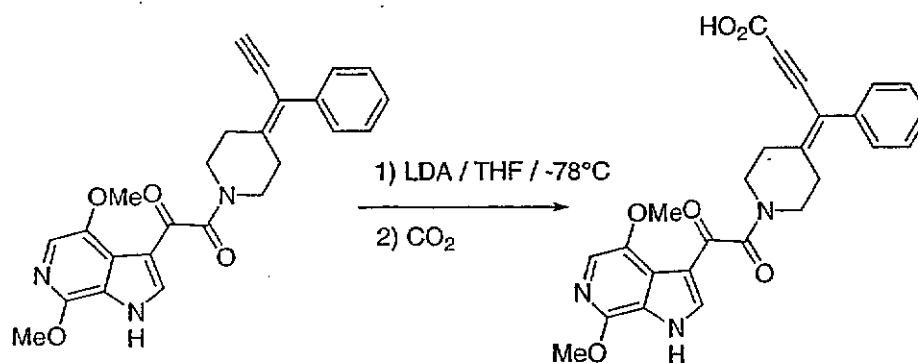
SCHEME ZB



Scheme ZB1 shows a specific example of Scheme ZB.

15

SCHEME ZB1

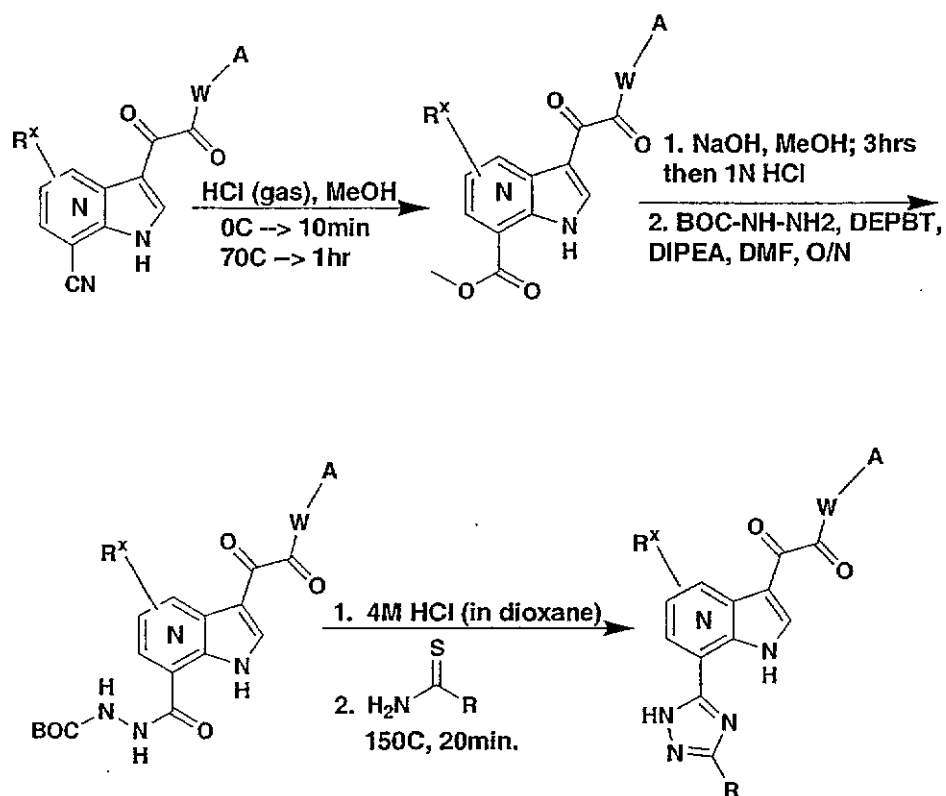


20

Scheme ZC shows a general scheme for synthesizing C linked triazoles of the compound of formula I.

SCHEME ZC

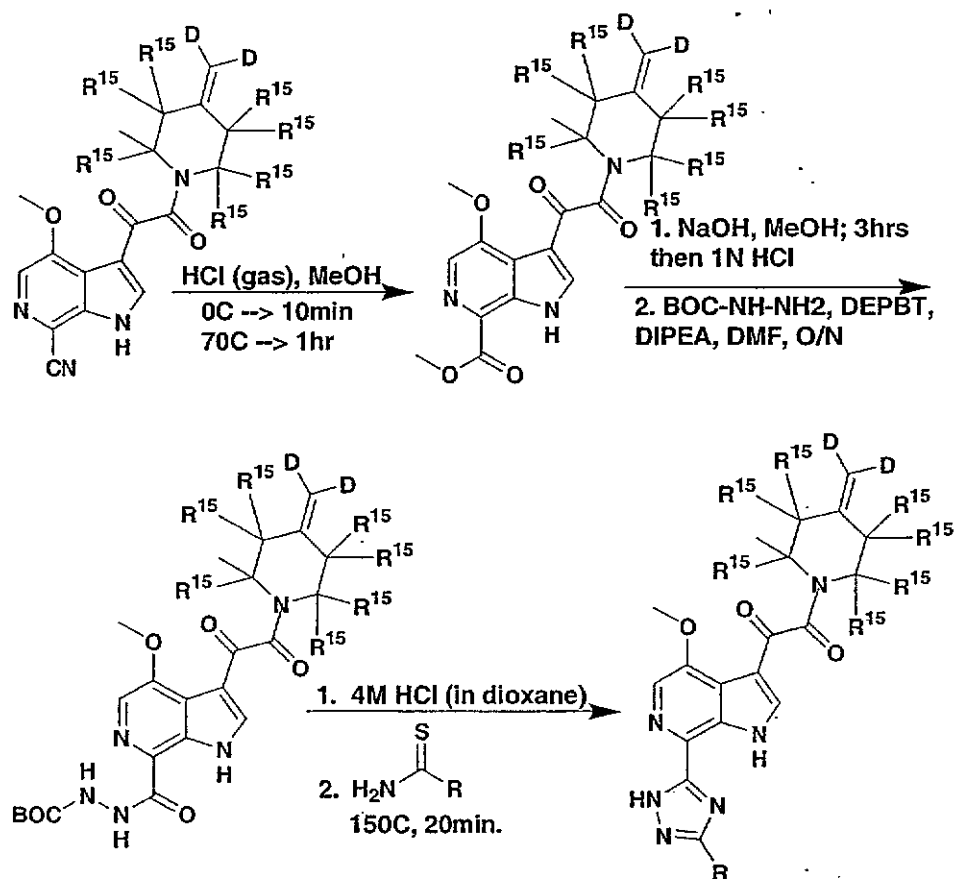
5



Scheme ZD depicts a more narrow version of Scheme ZC which is meant to provide an example but not be limiting. In both Schemes ZD and ZC, R depicts substituents as described by the claims of the invention which a chemist of normal skill could be used in the reaction sequence. Simple alkyls and the like would for example work well.

10

126



Scheme ZE depicts a method for preparing C-trizole substituted indoles and azaindoles which can then be coupled to HWA using the standard methodology.

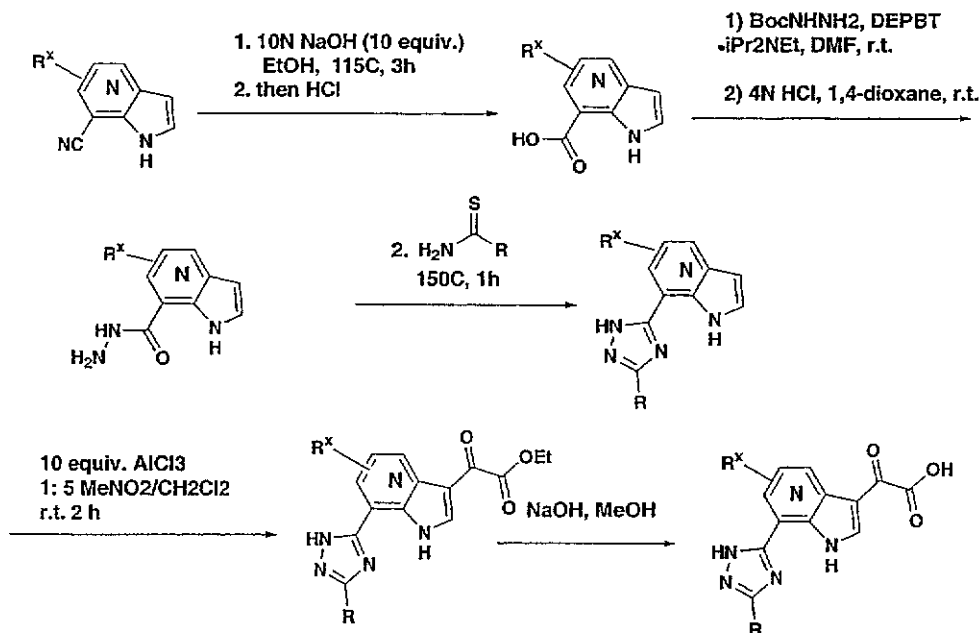
5

10

15

127

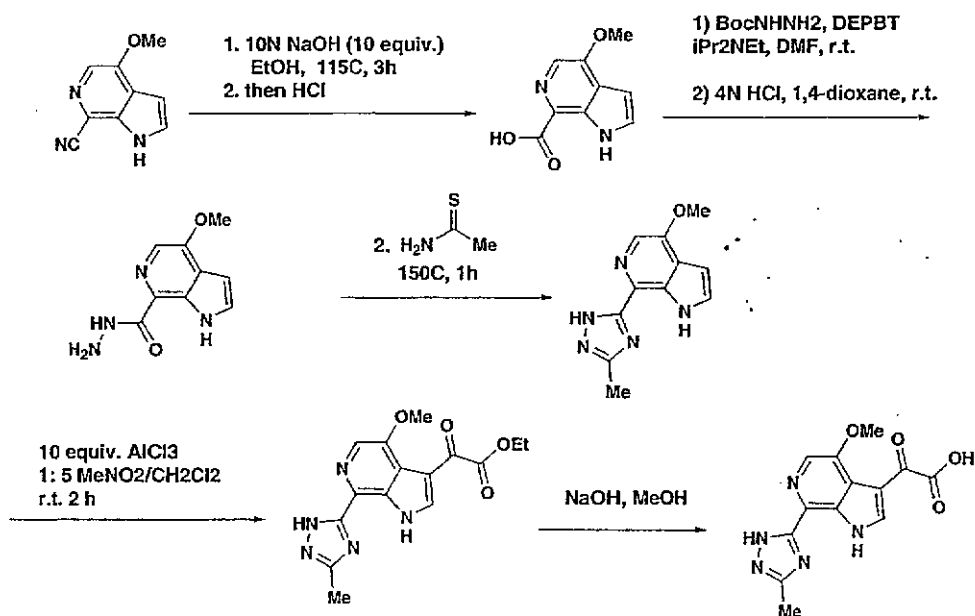
SCHEME ZE



R depicts substitution as described by the claims of the invention.

Scheme ZF provides a more specific example of Scheme ZE for illustration.

5



Compounds of formula I where R₆ is O are prepared from the compounds I where R₆ is nothing by stirring them with from 1 to 30 equivalents of a peroxy acetic acid such as meta chloroperoxybenzoic acid, trifluoroacetyl peroxybenzoic acid,

fluoroacetic peroxybenzoic acid, or meta nitro peroxy benzoic acid in an inert solvent such as ethyl acetate, dichloromethane, 1,2-dichloroethane, chloroform, THF, or dioxane. Temperatures usually are ambient but for sensitive substrates lower temperatures may be used and in some cases slightly elevated temperatures, up to 50° may be needed to improve reaction rate. Peroxy acetic acid generated in situ from acetic acid and hydrogen peroxide may also find use. Compounds in which R⁷ are not H may be prepared from compounds or intermediates where R is H via standard methodology well known to organic chemists ie alkylation with alkyl halides, acylation with acid chlorides or anhydrides, reaction with alkyl chloroformates or with isocyanates or ClC(O)NR¹¹R¹². In some cases it may be advantageous to use no added base and just a solvent such as dichloromethane, 1,2-dichloroethane, chloroform, THF, dioxane, pyridine or DMF. In other cases an alkyl amine base such as triethylamine or diisopropyl ethylamine in a solvent such as dichloromethane, 1,2-dichloroethane, chloroform, THF, or dioxane may provide the best reaction. In some cases adding DMAP to the above reactions could prove beneficial. In other cases, deprotonation of the indole NH with sodium hydride, potassium hydride, or lithium bistrimethylsilyl acetamide in THF, dioxane, or DMF may be needed before adding the desired reagent for generating R⁷.

20 Experimental

Chemistry

All Liquid Chromatography (LC) data were recorded on a Shimadzu LC-10AS liquid chromatograph using a SPD-10AV UV-Vis detector with Mass Spectrometry (MS) data determined using a Micromass Platform for LC in electrospray mode.

LC/MS Method (i.e., compound identification)

30 Column A: YMC ODS-A S7 3.0x50 mm column

Column B: PHX-LUNA C18 4.6x30 mm Column

	Column C:	XTERRA ms C18 4.6x30 mm column
	Column D:	YMC ODS-A C18 4.6x30 mm column
5	Column E:	YMC ODS-A C18 4.6x33 mm column
	Column F:	YMC C18 S5 4.6x50 mm column
	Column G:	XTERRA C18 S7 3.0x50 mm column
10	Column H:	YMC C18 S5 4.6x33 mm column
	Column I:	YMC ODS-A C18 S7 3.0x50 mm column
15	Column J:	XTERRA C-18 S5 4.6x50mm column
	Column K:	YMC ODS-A C18 4.6x33mm column
	Column L:	Xterra MS C18 5uM 4.6x30mm column
20	Column M:	XTERRA MS C-18 7u 4.6x50mm column
	Gradient:	100% Solvent A / 0% Solvent B to 0% Solvent A / 100% Solvent B
25	Gradient time:	2 minutes
	Hold time	1 minute
30	Flow rate:	5 ml/min
	Detector Wavelength:	220 nm

Solvent A: 10% MeOH / 90% H₂O / 0.1% Trifluoroacetic Acid

Solvent B: 10% H₂O / 90% MeOH / 0.1% Trifluoroacetic Acid

- 5 Compounds purified by preparative HPLC were diluted in methanol (1.2 ml) and purified using the following methods on a Shimadzu LC-10A automated preparative HPLC system.

Preparative HPLC Method (i.e., compound purification)

10

Purification Method: Initial gradient (40% B, 60% A) ramp to final gradient (100% B, 0% A) over 20 minutes, hold for 3 minutes (100% B, 0% A)

Solvent A: 10% MeOH / 90% H₂O / 0.1% Trifluoroacetic Acid

15

Solvent B: 10% H₂O / 90% MeOH / 0.1% Trifluoroacetic Acid

Column: YMC C18 S5 20x100 mm column

20 Detector Wavelength: 220 nm

General and Example Procedures excerpted from Analogous oxoacetyl piperazineamide applications

- 25 The procedures described references 93-95 and 106 are applicable example procedures for synthesizing the compounds of formula I in this application and the intermediates used for their synthesis. The following guidelines are illustrative but not limiting.

- 30 The general Bartoli (vinyl Magnesium bromide) methods for preparing functionalized indoles or azaindoles described in the applications can be utilized for preparing new indoles or azaindoles from the appropriate nitro aromatics or heteroaromatics for this application. For example, in PCT/US02/00455, the general

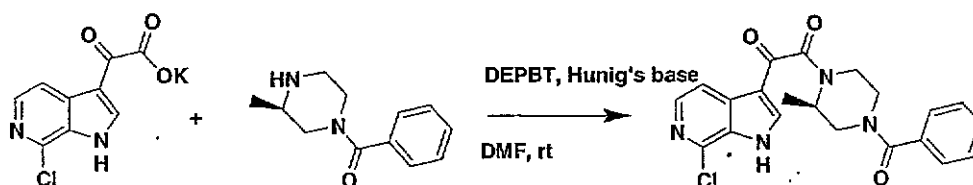
procedure for preparing intermediate 2a (7-chloro-6-azaindole) from 2-chloro-3-nitro pyridine can be considered a general procedure illustrating conditions which can be used to prepare azaindoles for this application. This should be obvious since the same class of intermediates are needed for both inventions. Similarly, the general
5 procedure from the same application to prepare intermediate 3a, Methyl (7-chloro-6azaindol-3-yl) oxoacetate, provides experimental details for carrying out Step B of (Schemes 1-5 in this application) Similarly, the general procedure from the same application to prepare intermediate 4a (Potassium(7-chloro-6azaindol-3-yl) oxoacetate, provides an example of the general method for hydrolyzing oxoacetic esters
10 (Step C of Schemes 1-5) General procedures for carrying out the same steps in the indole series are provided in references 93 and 95. An example Bartoli reaction preparation of a functionalized indole is given in the preparation of intermediate 1 of PCT/US01/20300 where the preparation of 4-fluoro-7-bromo-azaindole is described from 2-fluoro-5-bromonitrobenzene. Subsequent procedures for the preparation of
15 intermediates 2 and 3 describe procedures for adding the alkyl oxoacetate and then for ester hydrolysis to provide the carboxylate salt and then the carboxylic acid after acidification. Thus the chemistry described in the incorporated previous applications for preparing azaindole and indole intermediates is obviously applicable since the desired compounds are the same.

20

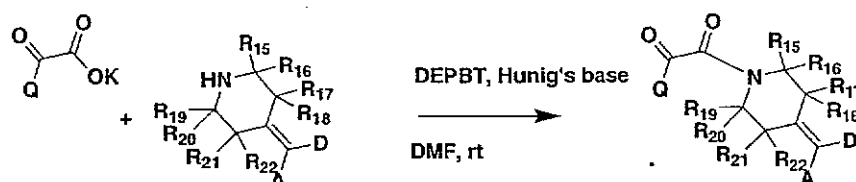
Procedures for carrying out the coupling of the indole or azaindole oxoacetic acids to piperazine amides are described in the references 93-95 and 106. These can also be used as procedures for preparing the piperidine alkenes of this invention by taking the experimental procedures and substituting a piperazine alkene in place of
25 the piperazine amide. This is possible because both groups have a free amine with relatively similar activity and since the other portions of both the piperazine benzamide and the alkenyl piperidine are relatively unreactive to many conditions, they can be installed similarly. For example, the preparation of intermediate 4 of PCT/US01/20300 and the preparation of intermediate 5a of PCT/US02/00455
30 describe couplings of a piperazine benzamide or methyl piperazine benzamide to an indole or azaindole oxoacetic acid or carboxylate salt respectively. (The acid or salt can be used interchangeably). These same procedures can be used directly for the

preparation of the compounds of this invention by substituting the desired piperidine alkene for the piperazine amides utilized in earlier applications.

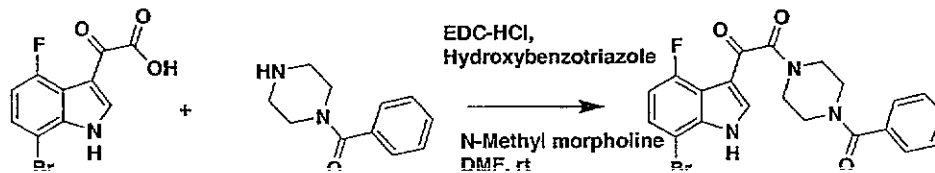
Preparation of intermediate 5a from PCT/US02/00455



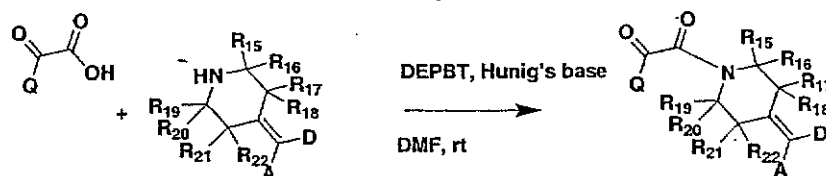
can be used as a procedure for



Preparation of intermediate 4 from PCT/US01/20300



can be used as a procedure for



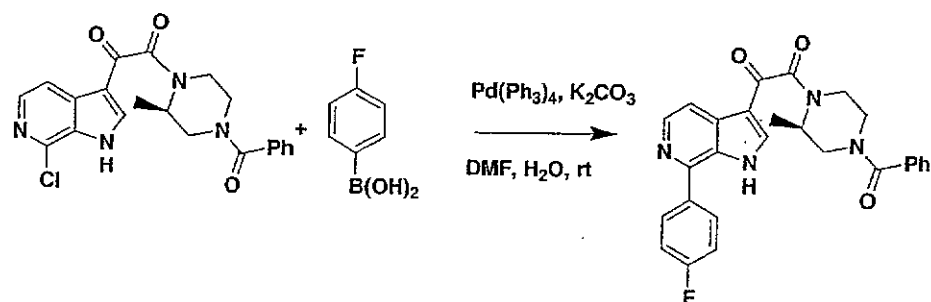
5

Once attached via a similar amide bond, both the piperazine benzamides and the piperidinyll alkene moieties are relatively inert and thus reaction conditions used for functionalizing indoles or azaindoles in the presence of piperazine benzamides are useful for carrying out the same transformations in the presence of the piperidine alkenes. Thus the methods and transformations described in references 93-95 and 106 including the experimental procedures which describe methods to functionalize the indole or azaindole moiety in the piperazine amide series are generally applicable for construction and functionalization of the piperidine alkenes of this invention. These same applications describe general methods and specific preparations for

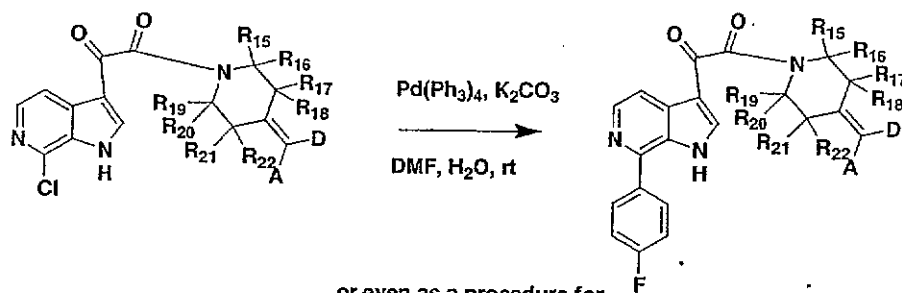
15

obtaining stannane and boronic acid reagents used for synthesizing the compounds of formula I.

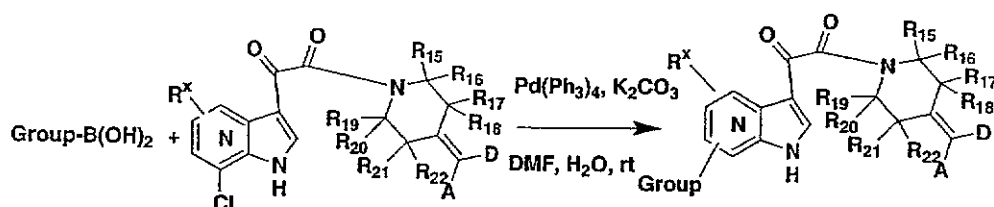
Preparation of Example 1 from PCT/US02/00455
Typical Boron /palladium coupling procedur 



can be used as a procedure for



or even as a procedure for

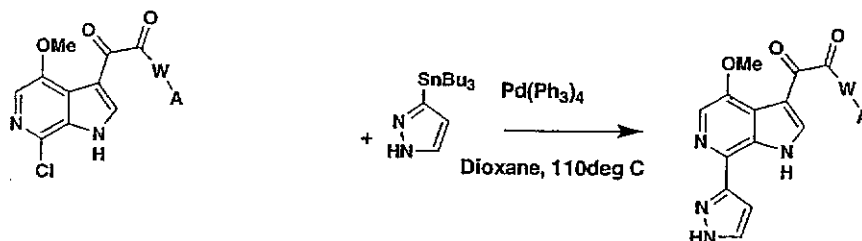


functionalized indole or azaindole

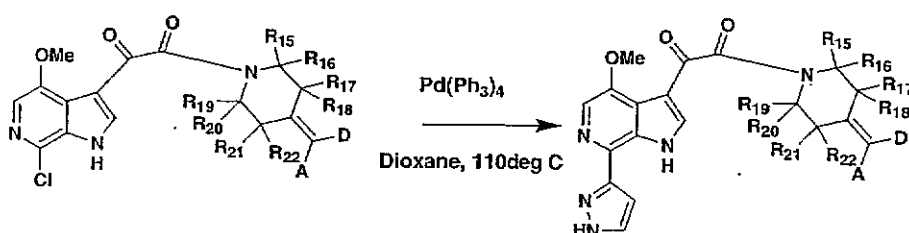
where R^x is as described for Scheme 7

Preparation of Example 39 from PCT/US02/00455

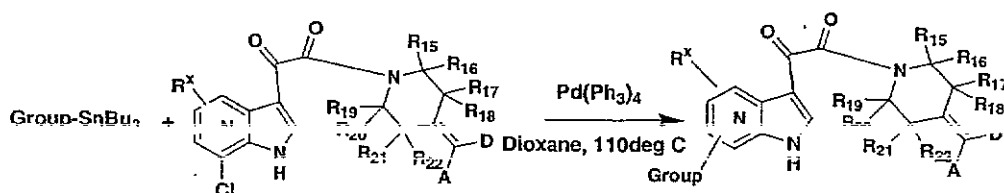
An example of the typical stannane /palladium coupling procedure



can be used as a procedure for



or even as a procedure for

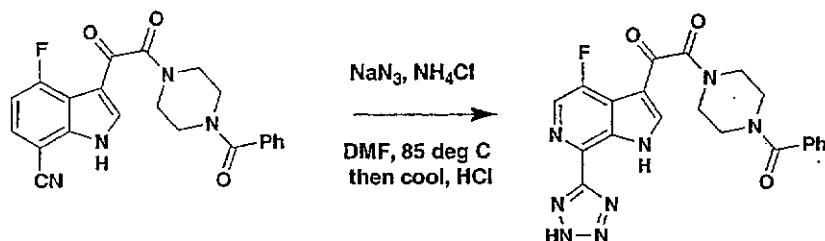


functionalized indole or azaindole

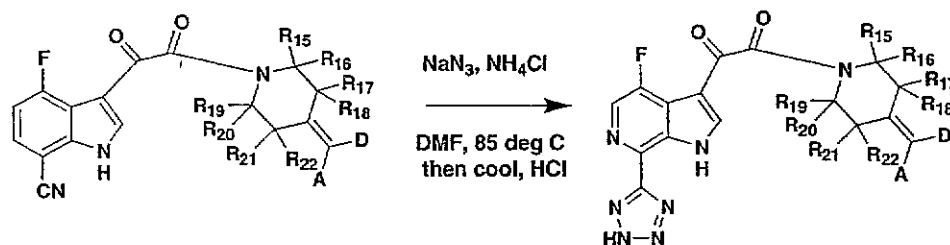
where R^X is as described for Scheme 7

Preparation of Example 20 from PCT/US01/20300

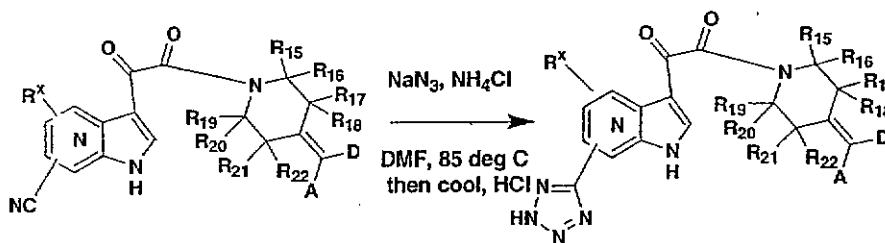
An example to show how functionalization procedures of oxoacetyl piperazine benzamides can be used to carry out similar transformations in the corresponding piperidine alkenes



can be used as a procedure for



or even as a procedure for



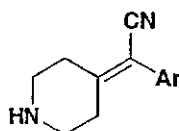
functionalized indole or azaindole

where R^x is as described for Scheme 7

General Procedures and Preparation of Selected Examples:

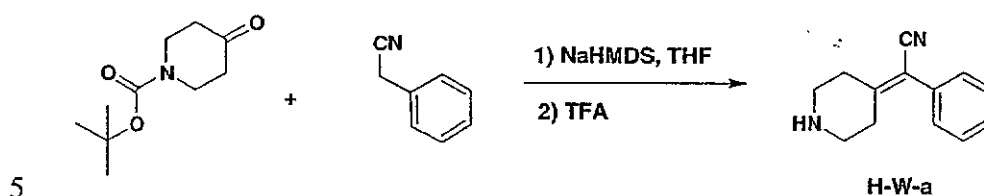
5 A. General procedure for the preparation of 4-substituted piperidines:

Method I-A: Preparation of intermediates with the following sub-structure



Method Example 1 - Preparation of intermediate H-W-a

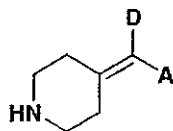
(Where H is hydrogen, W corresponds to claim 1 and a is an identifier for the intermediates)



NaHMDS (3 ml, 1M in THF) was added to a solution of 1-tert-butoxycarbonyl-4-piperidone (500 mg) and benzyl cyanide (352 mg) in dry THF (10 ml) at room temperature. The reaction mixture was kept stirring for 12 hours before
10 being quenched with MeOH (2 ml).

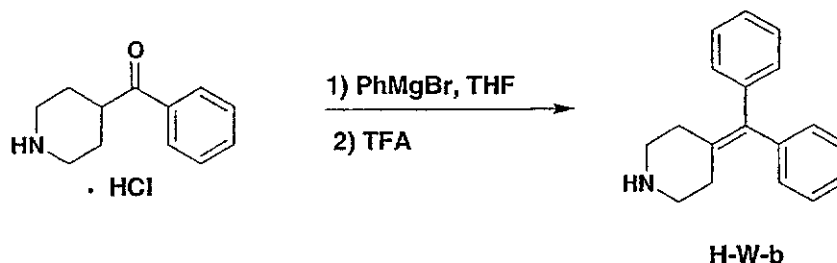
After solvents were removed under vacuum, the residue was charged with 5 ml of TFA and the resulted mixture was stirred for 12 hours. Then, TFA was removed under vacuum and the residue was partitioned between saturated NaHCO₃ (20 ml) and EtOAc (10 ml). The aqueous solution was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 10 ml). The combined organic layer was filtered and concentrated to afford a crude product of intermediate H-W-a, which was used in the further reactions without any purification.

20 **Method I-B:** Preparation of intermediates with the following sub-structure



D = phenyl or heteroaryl group

A = as defined for compounds of Formula I

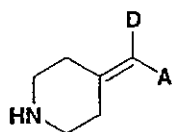
Method Example 2 - Preparation of intermediate H-W-b

5 PhMgI (3 ml, 3M in THF) was added to a solution of 4-benzoylpiperidine hydrochloride (200 mg) in dry THF (10 ml) at room temperature. The reaction mixture was kept stirring for 12 hours before being quenched with MeOH (2 ml).

10 After solvents were removed under vacuum, the residue was charged with 5 ml of TFA and the resulting mixture was stirred for 12 hours. Then, TFA was removed under vacuum and the residue was partitioned between saturated NaHCO₃ (20 ml) and EtOAc (10 ml). The aqueous solution was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 10 ml). The combined organic layer was filtered and concentrated to afford a crude product of **H-W-b**, which was used in the further reactions without any purification.

15

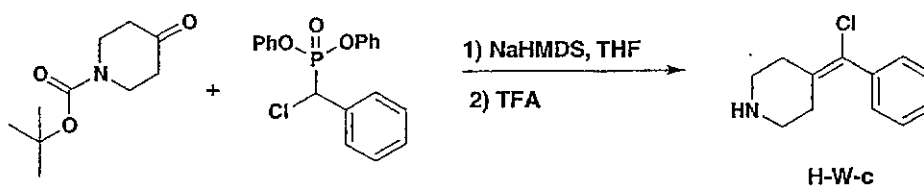
Method I-C: Preparation of intermediates with the following sub-structure



20

D = F, Cl, Br

A = as defined for compounds of Formula I

Method Example 3 - Preparation of intermediate H-W-c

25

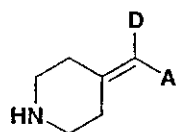
NaHMDS (0.84 ml, 1M in THF) was added to a solution of 1-tert-butoxycarbonyl-4-piperidone (139 mg) and Diphenyl (α -chlorobenzyl)phosphonate (250 mg) in dry THF (10 ml) at room temperature. The reaction mixture was kept stirring for 12 hours before being quenched with MeOH (2 ml).

5

After solvents were removed under vacuum, the residue was charged with 5 ml of TFA and the resulted mixture was stirred for 12 hours. Then, TFA was removed under vacuum and the residue was partitioned between saturated NaHCO₃ (20 ml) and EtOAc (10 ml). The aqueous solution was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 10 ml). The combined organic layer was filtered and concentrated to afford a crude product of H-W-c, which was used in the further reactions without any purification.

10

Method I-D: Preparation of intermediates with the following sub-structure

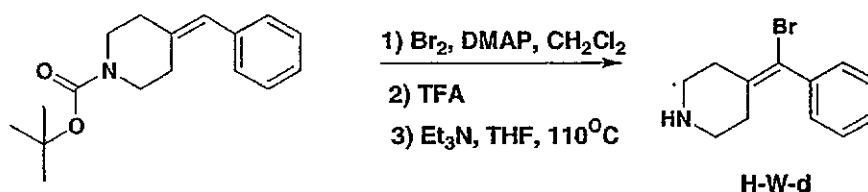


15

D = Cl, Br, I
A = as defined for compounds of Formula I

20

Method Example 4 - Preparation of intermediate H-W-d



Bromine (0.21 ml) and DMAP (535 mg) was added to a solution of 1-tert-butoxycarbonyl-4-piperidone (1 g) in dry CH₂Cl₂ (50 ml) at room temperature. The reaction mixture was kept stirring for 12 hours before being added with MeOH (2 ml).

25

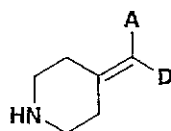
After solvents were removed under vacuum, the residue was charged with 20 ml TFA and the resulted mixture was stirred for 12 hours. Then, TFA was removed

30

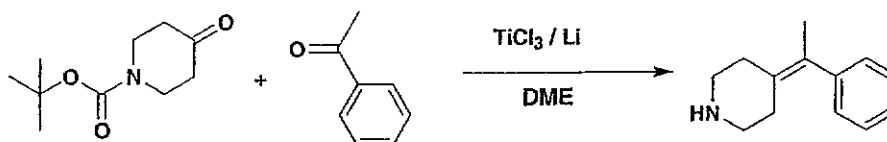
under vacuum and the residue was partitioned between saturated NaHCO_3 (50 ml) and EtOAc (20 ml). The aqueous solution was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 20 ml). The combined organic layer was filtered and concentrated to afford a residue.

- 5 The residue was then dissolved in a mixed solution of THF (20 ml) and triethylamine (5 ml) in a sealed tube. The mixture was heated up to 110°C for 12 hours. After cooling down, the solvents were removed to afford a crude product of H-W-d, which was used in the further reactions without any purification.

- 10 **Method I-E: Preparation of intermediates with the following sub-structure via McMurry reactions**



- 15 **Method Example 5 - Preparation of intermediate H-W-003**



- 20 Titanium trichloride (5 g) and DME (60 ml) were added to flask (250 ml) which was filled with nitrogen. Lithium (0.72 g) was etched to brilliance in methanol, quickly washed in petroleum ether, and cut into small pieces directly into the stirred suspension. The mixture was refluxed for three hours.

- 25 The black slurry was then cooled to room temperature, and N-Boc-piperidin-4-one (755 mg) and acetophenone (455 mg) dissolved in DME (20ml) were subjected to it. And the resulting mixture was refluxed for 16 hours.

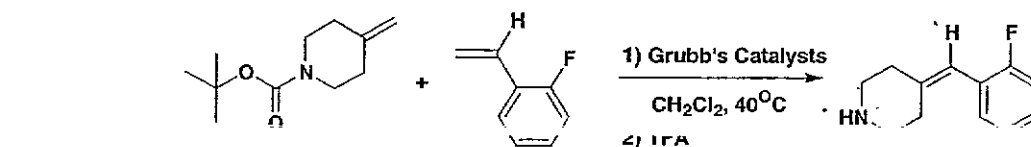
Saturated Na_2CO_3 solution (30 ml) and water (20 ml) were added into the reaction mixture after it cooled down to room temperature. Insolubles were filtered

away. Organic and aqueous layers were separated. The aqueous layer was then extracted with methylene chloride (3 x 50 ml) and combined organic layer was washed with brine, dried over MgSO_4 . Removal of solvents provided a residue, which was purified by silica gel column chromatography to afford the desired product H-W-003 (410 mg).

Method I-F: Preparation of intermediates with the following sub-structure via metathesis



Method Example 6 - Preparation of intermediate H-W-k

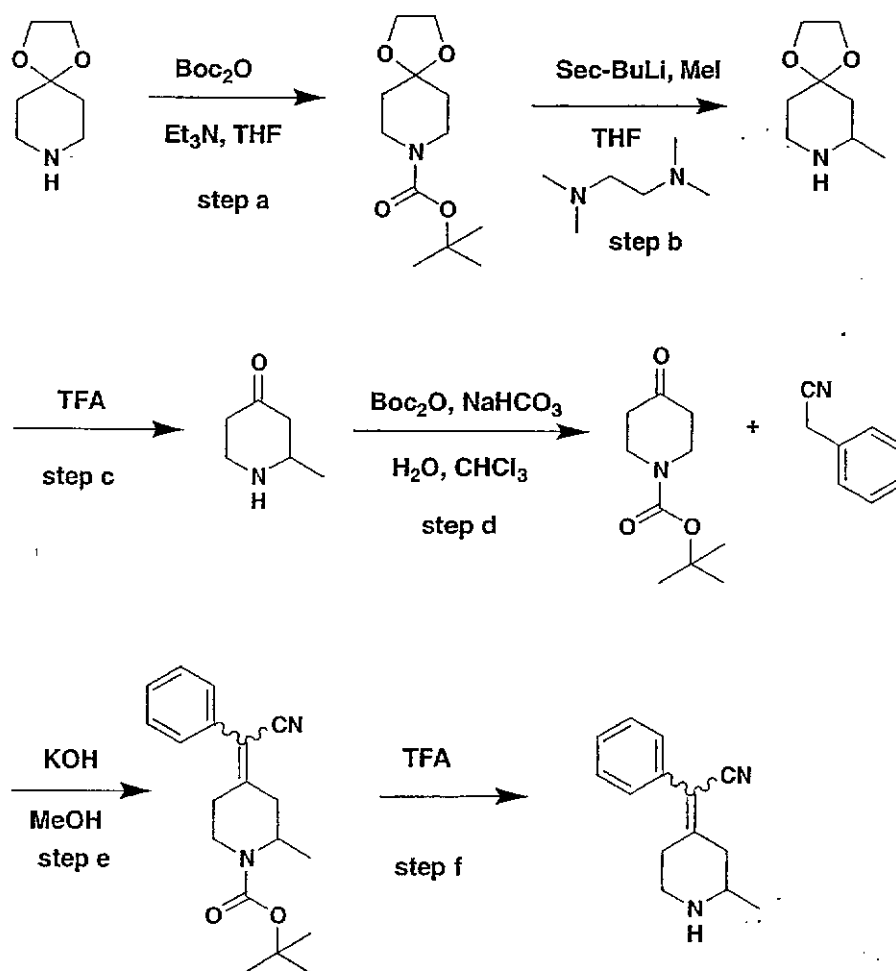


The Grubb's catalyst was added into a solution of N-Boc-4-methylenepiperidine (100 mg) and 1-fluoro-2-vinylbenzene (123 mg) in methylene chloride (10 ml). After the reaction was heated at 40°C for 10 hours, TFA (2 ml) was subjected to the solution at room temperature and the resulting mixture was kept stirring for another 10 hours. Solvents was removed under vacuum to give a residue, which could be purified using Shimadzu automated preparative HPLC System.

Method I-G: Preparation of intermediates with the following sub-structure



Method Example - Preparation of intermediate H-W-x



step a

10

A solution of di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (80 g) in THF (200 ml) was added dropwise into a solution of 1,4-dioxaspiro[4,5]decane (50 g) and triethylamine (66.8 ml) in THF (500 ml) over one hour. After the reaction was then stirred at room temperature for three hours, solvents were removed under vacuum. The residue was dissolved in EtOAc (600 ml) and the resulting organic solution was washed subsequently with water (300 ml), 5% NaHCO_3 (300 ml) and brine (300 ml). The organic layer was then dried over MgSO_4 and concentrated to provide crude product (93 g) which was carried to step b without purification.

step b

sec-Butyl lithium (1.3M in cyclohexane, 168 ml) was added into a solution of the crude product obtained in step a and *N,N,N',N'*-tetramethylethylenediamine (55.3 ml) in THF (1000 ml) dropwise at -78°C over two hours and MeI (43 ml) was added
5 four hours later at this temperature. After the reaction was warmed up to room temperature over 12 hours, it was quenched with water (300 ml). The aqueous layer was extracted with ether (3 x 500 ml) and the combined organic layer was dried over MgSO₄ and concentrated to provided a residue which was purified by silica gel
10 column chromatography to provide the desired compound (42 g).

step c

TFA (132 ml) was added to the product (27 g) obtained in step b at 0°C,
15 followed by an addition of water (3 ml). The reaction mixture was then heated to reflux for 2.5 hours. After solvents were removed under vacuum, the residue was dissolved in EtOAc (30 ml) and ether (60 ml). The suspension was left in a freezer for tow hours. And the final filtration gave 2-methyl-4-piperidone (16.5 g).

20 step d

A mixture of 2-methyl-4-piperidone (16.3 g), NaHCO₃ (9.5 g) and di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (17.4 g) in water (50 ml) and CHCl₃ (125 ml) was stirred at room temperature for six hours. 40 ml of water was then added and phases were separated.
25 The aqueous layer was extracted with CHCl₃ (4 x 30 ml) and the combined organic layer was dried over MgSO₄ and concentrated to provided a residue which was purified by silica gel column chromatography to provide the N-Boc-2-methyl-4-piperidone (13.3 g).

30 step e

Benzyl cyanide (2.75 g) and N-Boc-2-methyl-4-piperidone (5 g) were added into a solution of KOH (3.52 g) in MeOH (23 ml) and the mixture was stirred at 65°C

for 4.5 hours. Then, solvents were removed under vacuum to provide a residue which was dissolved in EtOAc (200 ml). The organic solution was washed with water and concentrated to give another residue which was purified by silica gel column chromatography to afford desired products (5.5 g).

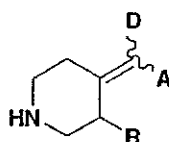
5

step f

To a stirred solution of the product (5.5 g) obtained in step e in methylene chloride (40 ml) was added TFA (17.6 ml) and the resulting mixture was left stirring at room temperature for two hours before solvents were removed under vacuum. The residue was partitioned between EtOAc (50 ml) and water (50 ml). After pH was adjusted to 10, the aqueous layer was extracted by EtOAc (3 x 30 ml). The Organic layers were combined, washed with water and brine, dried over MgSO_4 and concentrated to provide the desired product (2.7 g), which was carried onto the next step with purification.

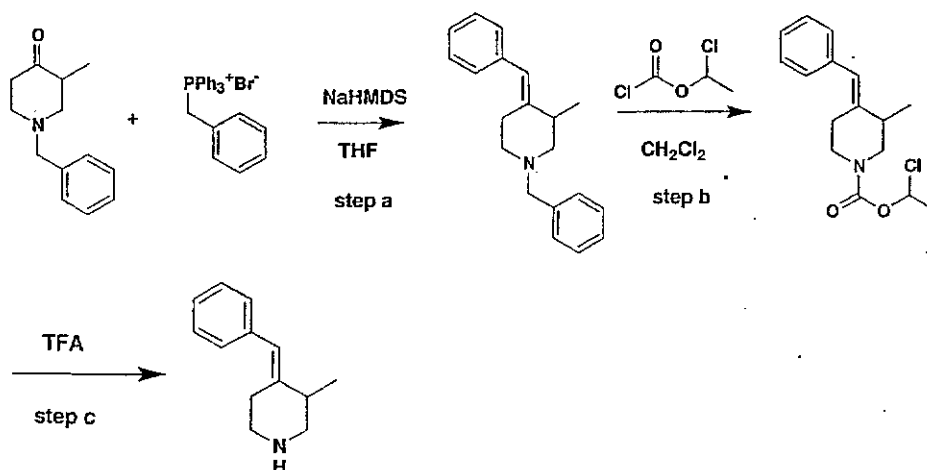
15

Method I-H: Preparation of intermediates with the following sub-structure



20

Method Example 8 - Preparation of intermediate H-W-y



step a

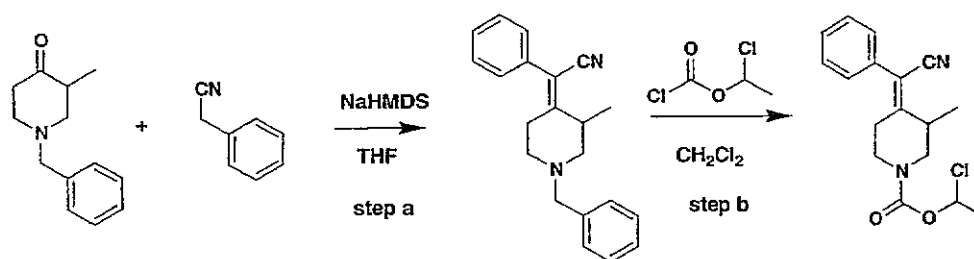
NaHMDS (1M in THF, 6.4 ml) was added into a solution of 1-benzyl-3-methyl-4-piperidone (1 g) and benzyl triphenylphosphonium bromide (2.56 g) in THF at room temperature and the reaction was heated to reflux for 12 hours. After the mixture cooled to room temperature, water (50 ml) and EtOAc (50 ml) were added. Organic and aqueous layers were then separated and aqueous solution was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 ml). Organic layers were combined, dried over MgSO₄ and concentrated to provided a residue which was carried onto the next step with purification.

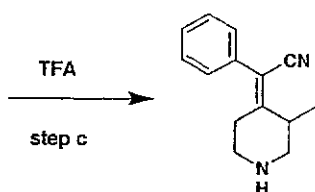
step b

The residue (200 mg) obtained from the previous step was dissolved in a solution of 1-chloroethylchloroformate (1 ml) in methylene chloride (20 ml), and the reaction was refluxed for 12 hours. Removal of solvents under vacuum provided a residue.

step c

The residue obtained in step b was dissolved in TFA (2 ml) at room temperature and the resulting mixture was kept stirring for 12 hours. The following concentration under vacuum afforded a residue which was used in further reactions without purification.

Method Example 9 - Preparation of intermediate H-W-z

**step a**

5 NaHMDS (1M in THF, 6.4 ml) was added into a solution of 1-benzyl-3-methyl-4-piperidone (1 g) and benzyl cyanide (0.68 ml) in and the reaction was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. After the mixture cooled to room temperature, water (50 ml) and EtOAc (50 ml) were added. Organic and aqueous layers were then separated and aqueous solution was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50
10 ml). Organic layers were combined, dried over MgSO_4 and concentrated to provided a residue which was carried onto the next step with purification.

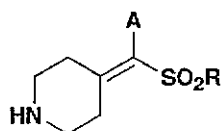
step b

15 The residue (200 mg) obtained from the previous step was dissolved in a solution of 1-chloroethylchloroformate (1 ml) in methylene chloride (20 ml), and the reaction was refluxed for 12 hours. Removal of solvents under vacuum provided a residue.

step c

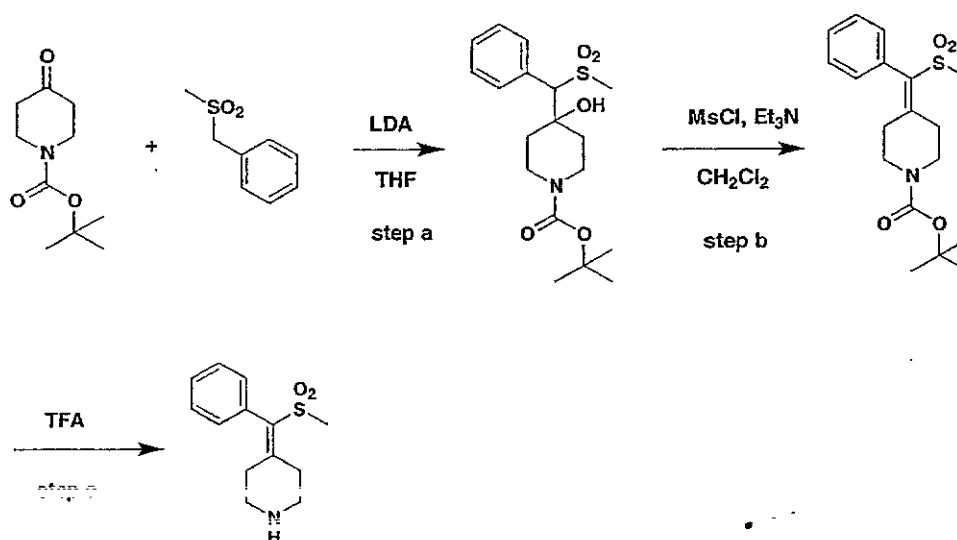
20 The residue obtained in step b was dissolved in TFA (2 ml) at room temperature and the resulting mixture was kept stirring for 12 hours. The following concentration under vacuum afforded a residue which was used in further reactions
25 without purification.

Method I-I: Preparation of intermediates with the following sub-structure



5

Method Example 10 - Preparation of intermediate H-W-004



10

step a

15

A solution of LDA (2M in THF, 13.8 ml) in THF (20 ml) was added dropwise to a solution of benzyl methyl sulfone (4.27 g) in THF (25 ml) at -30°C . The reaction mixture was stirred at -30°C for one hour before N-Boc-4-piperidone (5 g) in THF (20 ml) was added dropwise. After one and a half hour, the reaction was quenched with 1N HCl (28 ml). The solution was extracted with ether (3 x 100 ml). The combined organic layer was washed with brine, dried over MgSO_4 , concentrated to provide a residue which was used in step b without purification.

20

step b

MsCl (8 ml) was added to an ice-cooled solution of the residue obtained in step a and triethylamine (20 ml) in methylene chloride (150 ml) over 15 minutes.

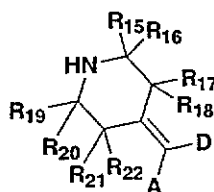
- 5 The reaction was then heated to reflux for three hours. After solvents were removed under vacuum, saturated NaHCO₃ solution (150 ml) was added and aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 ml). The combined organic layer was washed with brine, dried over MgSO₄, concentrated to provide a residue which was purified by silica gel column chromatography to afford the desired product (3.1 g).

10

step c

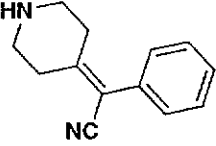
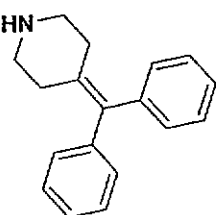
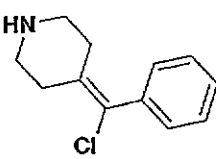
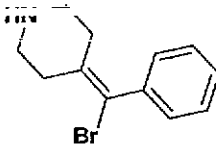
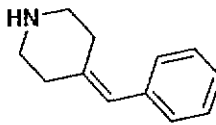
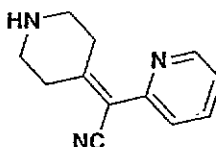
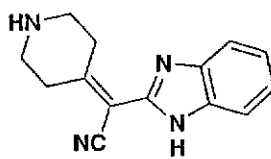
The product obtained in step b (2 g) was dissolved in TFA (10 ml) and the mixture was heated to reflux for one hour. After solvents were removed under vacuum, saturated NaHCO₃ solution was added to adjust pH to 8. The aqueous layer was extracted with ether (3 x 50 ml). After pH of water solution was adjust to 10, the aqueous layer was further extracted with methylene chloride (3 x 50 ml). The combine organic layer was washed with brine, dried over MgSO₄, concentrated to provide a residue (1.4 g) which was used in further reactions without purification.

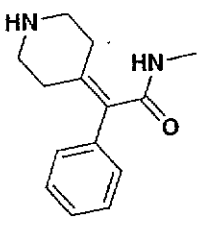
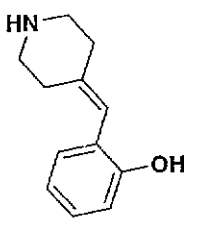
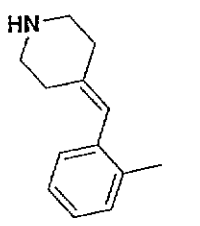
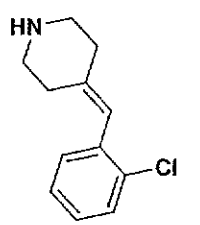
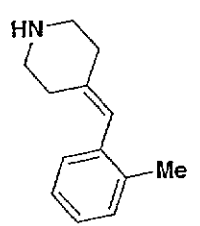
20

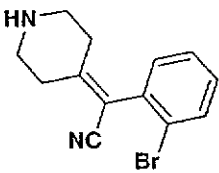
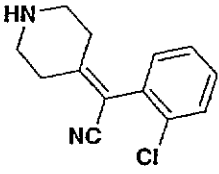
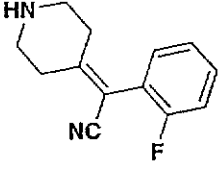
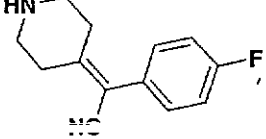
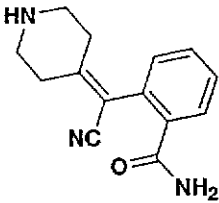
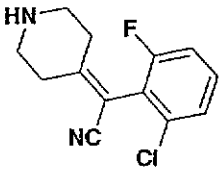
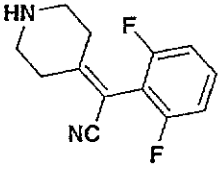
Characterization of the intermediates with the following sub-structure:

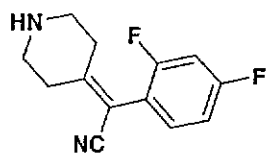
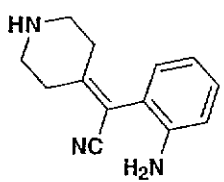
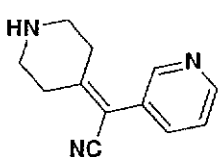
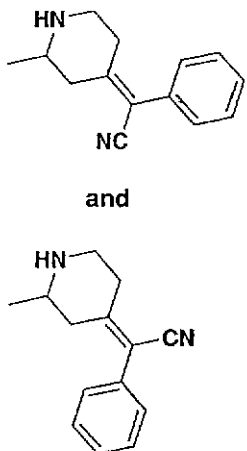
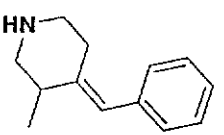
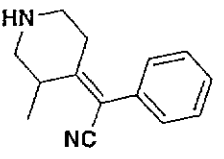
25

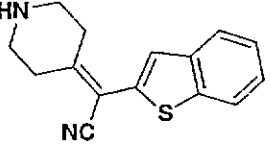
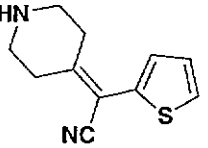
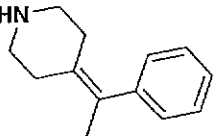
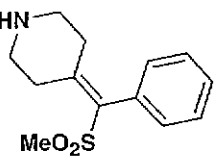
30

Compd. Number	Structure	Method Used	MS (M+H) ⁺ Calcd.	MS (M+H) ⁺ Observ. And Retention Time
H-W-a		I-A	199.12	199.15 Rf = 0.88 min (column C)
H-W-b		I-B	250.16	250.27 Rf = 1.35 min (column C)
H-W-c		I-C	208.09	208.19 Rf = 1.34 min (column C)
H-W-d		I-D	252.04	252.15 Rf = 1.31 min (column C)
H-W-e		*		
H-W-f		I-A	200.12	200.11 Rf = 0.41 min (column L)
H-W-g		I-A	239.13	239.11 Rf = 0.60 min (column L)

H-W-h		I-A (LDA used as base)	231.15	231.15 Rf = 0.71 min (column L)
H-W-i		I-C	190.12	190.13 Rf = 0.80 min (column L)
H-W-j		I-C or I-F	188.14	188.18 Rf = 1.18 min (column L)
H-W-k		I-F	192.12	192.17 Rf = 1.03 min (column L)
H-W-l		I-F	208.09	208.13 Rf = 1.18 min (column L)
H-W-m		I-C or I-F	188.14	188.16 Rf = 1.17 min (column L)

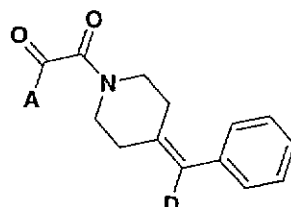
H-W-n		I-A	277.03	277.06 Rf = 1.01 min (column-L)
H-W-o		I-A	233.08	233.10 Rf = 0.97 min (column L)
H-W-p		I-A	217.11	217.14 Rf = 0.76 min (column L)
H-W-q		I-A	217.11	217.14 Rf = 0.89 min (column L)
H-W-r		I-A	242.13	242.16 Rf = 0.51 min (column L)
H-W-s		I-A	251.08	251.07 Rf = 0.93 min (column L)
H-W-t		I-A	235.10	235.11 Rf = 0.71 min (column L)

H-W-u		I-A	235.10	235.11 Rf = 0.91 min (column L)
H-W-v		I-A	214.13	214.16 Rf = 0.50 min (column L)
H-W-w		I-A	200.12	200.20 Rf = 0.38 min (column L)
H-W-x		I-G	213.14	213.24 Rf = 0.83 min (column M)
H-W-y		I-H	188.14	188.12 Rf = 1.15 min (column L)
H-W-z		I-H	213.14	213.14 Rf = 0.97 min (column L)

H-W-001		I-A	255.10	255.09 Rf = 1.13 min (column L)
H-W-002		I-A	205.08	205.12 Rf = 0.74 min (column L)
H-W-003		I-E	188.14	188.38 Rf = 1.53 min (column G)
H-W-004		I-I	252.11	252.20 Rf = 0.53 min (column M)

*The compound was prepared by removing the tBoc protecting group from commercially available N-BOC-4-PHENYLMETHYLENE PIPERIDINE which can be purchased from Arch Corporation, New Brunswick, NJ. Alternatively the preparation of either the free base or hydrochloride salt has been described in the patent literature: Free base: Fujita, Kazushi; Murata, Shinobu; Kawakami, Hajime.1999, JP 11001481 A2
Hydrochloride salt: Kato, Kaneyoshi; Terauchi, Jun; Suzuki, Nobuhiro; Takekawa, Shiro. PCT Int. Appl. (2001), WO 0125228 A1.

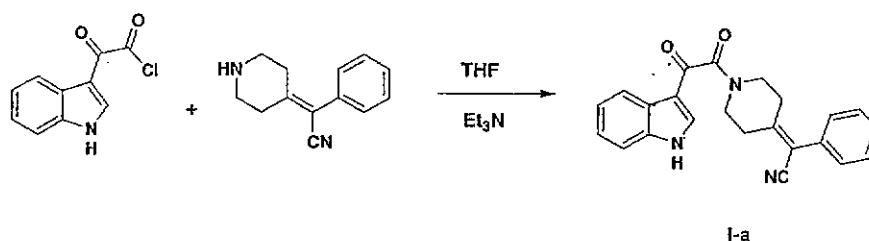
B. General procedure for the preparation of the final products with the following sub-structure:



5

Method F-A: Preparation of structures in claim I from acyl chloride

Example 1 - Preparation of compound I-a



10

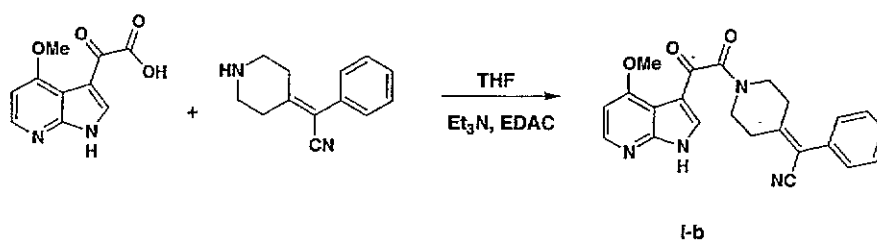
Intermediate **H-W-a** (160 mg, crude) and indole-3-glyoxylyl chloride (100 mg) was dissolved in a mixed solution of THF (10 ml) and triethylamine (1 ml). After the reaction was stirred for 11 hours, solvents were removed under vacuum and the residue was purified using Shimadzu automated preparative HPLC System to give compound **I-a** (6.3 mg).

15

Method F-B: Preparation of structures in claim I from acid

20

Example 2 - Preparation of compound I-b



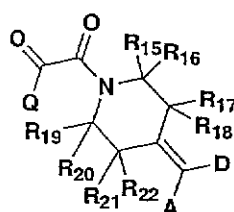
Intermediate **H-W-a** (235 mg, crude), 7-azaindole-3-glyoxylic acid (200 mg, Wang et al, U.S. 6476034 (WO 01/62255) reference 94) and EDAC (280 mg) was

25

dissolved in a mixed solution of THF (10 ml) and triethylamine (1 ml). After the reaction was stirred for 11 hours, solvents were removed under vacuum and the residue was purified using Shimadzu automated preparative HPLC System to give compound **I-b** (2.9 mg).

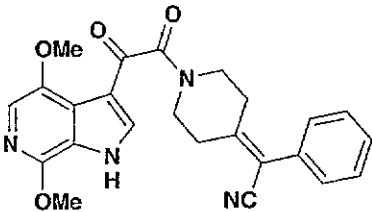
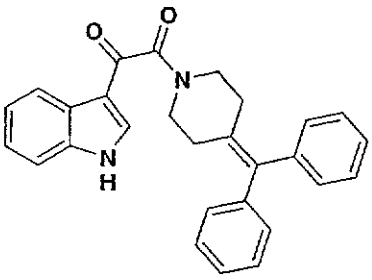
5

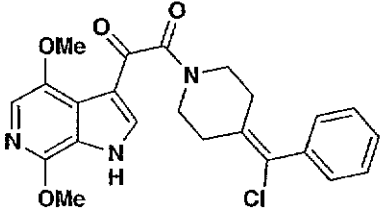
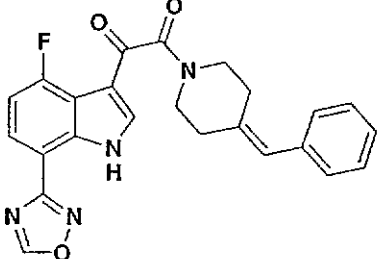
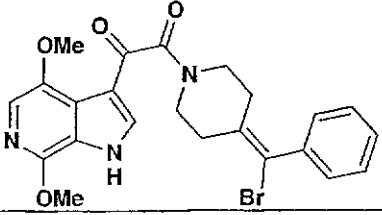
Characterization of the final compounds of formula I with the following formula:

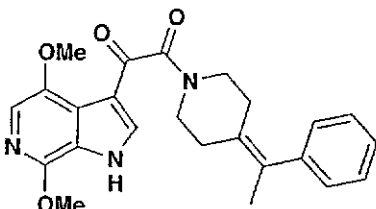
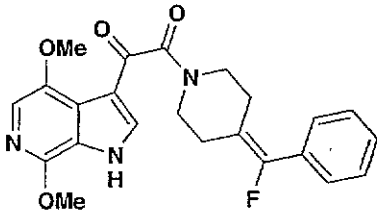
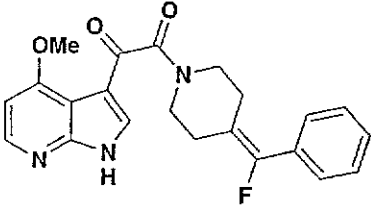


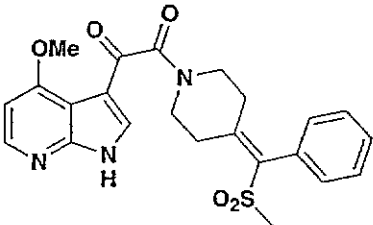
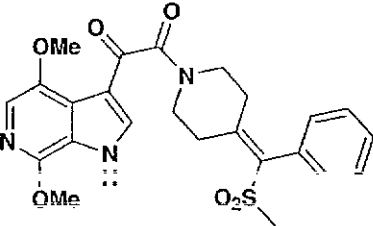
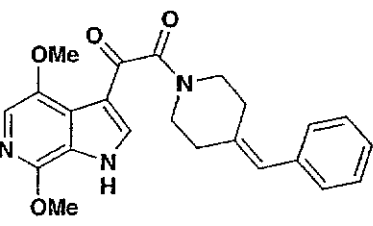
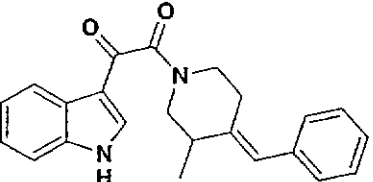
10

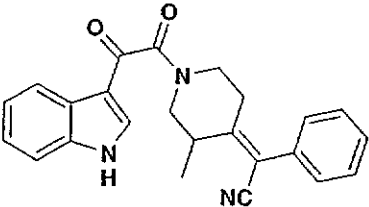
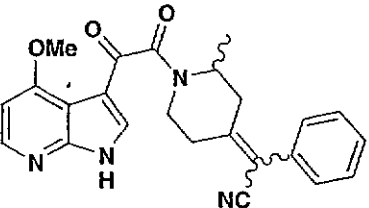
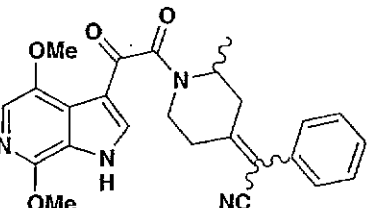
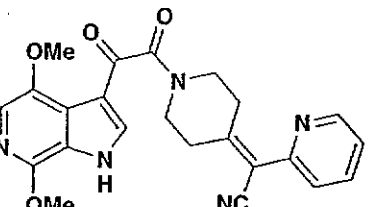
Compd. Number	Structure	Method Used	MS (M+H) ⁺ Calcd.	MS (M+H) ⁺ Observ. And Retention Time and NMR
Ia Example 1		F-A	370.16	370.33 min Rf = 1.63 min (column C)
Ib Example 2		F-B	401.16	401.23 Rf = 1.40 min (column K) ¹ H NMR (500 MHz, CD ₃ OD) δ 8.46 (m, 2H), 7.44 (m, 5H),

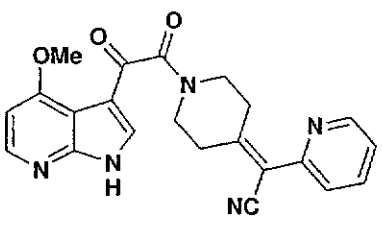
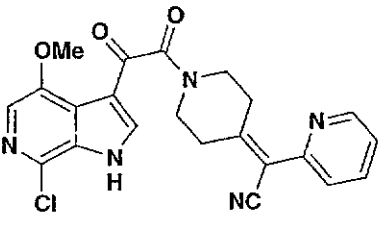
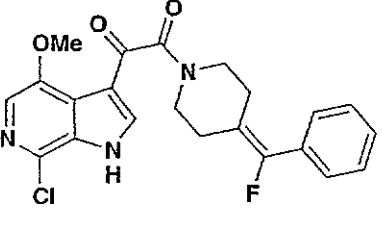
				6.90 (m, 1H), 3.95 (s, 1.5H), 3.93 (s, 1.5H), 3.81 (t, 1H, $J = 5.5$ Hz), 3.64, (t, 1H, $J = 5.5$ Hz), 3.54 (t, 1H, $J = 5.5$ Hz), 3.37 (t, 1H, $J = 5.5$ Hz), 2.87 (t, 1H, $J = 5.5$ Hz), 2.72 (t, 1H, $J = 5.5$ Hz), 2.55 (t, 1H, $J = 6.0$ Hz), 2.44 (t, 1H, $J = 5.5$ Hz)
Ic Example 3		F-B	431.17	431.12 Rf = 1.57 min (column K)
Id Example 4		F-A	421.19	421.34 Rf = 2.17 min (column J) ¹ H NMR (500 MHz,) δ 8.18 (s, 1H), 8.09 (d, 1H, $J = 7.5$ Hz), 7.53 (d, 1H, $J = 7.5$ Hz), 7.37 – 7.08 (m, 12H), 3.68 (t, 2H, $J = 5.5$ Hz), 3.40 (t,

				2H, $J = 5.0$ Hz), 2.40 (t, 2H, $J =$ 5.5 Hz), 2.24 (t, 2H, $J = 5.5$ Hz)
Ie Example 5		F-B	440.14	440.10 Rf = 1.82 min (column L)
If Example 6		F-A (Pr ₂ NEt used, Start% B = 20, Gradient Time = 8 min, Flow Rate = 40 ml/min, column Xterra MS C-18 5 μ M 30 x 100 mm)	431.44	431.09 Rf = 2.53 min (column G Gradient Time = 8 min Flow Rate = 4 ml/min)
Ig Example 7		F-B	484.09	483.98 Rf = 1.83 min (column L)

Ih Example 8		F-B	420.19	420.17 Rf = 1.74 min (column G) ¹ H NMR (500 MHz, CD ₃ OD) δ 8.18 (ss, 1H), 7.24 (m, 6H), 4.12 (s, 3H), 3.77 - 2.14 (m, 8H), 1.98 (ss, 3H)
Ii Example 9		F-B	424.17	424.11 Rf = 1.69 min (column G) ¹ H NMR (500 MHz, CD ₃ OD) δ 8.42 (d, 1H, J = 10.0Hz), 7.31 (m, 6H), 4.37 (s, 3H), 3.93 (s, 3H), 3.76 - 2.38 (m, 8H)
Ij Example 10		F-B	394.16	394.12 Rf = 1.50 min (column G) ¹ H NMR (500

				MHz, CD ₃ OD) δ 8.50 (m, 1H), 8.30 (d, 1H, J = 7.5Hz), 7.39 (m, 5H), 7.30 (m, 1H), 4.22 (s, 3H), 3.80 - 2.40 (m, 8H)
Ik Example 11		F-B	454.14	454.09 R _f = 1.50 min (column L)
Il Example 12		F-B	484.15	454.21 R _f = 1.19 min (column L)
Im Example 13		F-B	406.18	406.28 R _f = 1.69 min (column L)
In Example 14		F-B	381.16 (M+Na) ⁺	381.47 R _f = 1.97 min (column C)

Io Example 15		F-B	406.15 (M+Na) ⁺	406.47 Rf = 1.65 min (column C)
Ip Example 16		F-B	415.18	415.12 Rf = 1.38 min (column L)
Iq Example 17		F-B	445.19	445.54 Rf = 1.22 min (column L)
Is Example 18		F-B	432.17	432.10 Rf = 1.10 min (column G) ¹ H NMR (500 MHz, CD ₃ OD) δ 8.62 (m, 1H), 8.25 (m, 1H), 8.00 (m, 1H), 7.60 (m, 3H), 4.16 (s, 3H), 3.92 (s, 3H), 3.78 - 2.71 (m, 8H)

It Example 19		F-B	402.16	402.08 Rf = 0.91 min (column G)
Iu Example 20		F-B	436.12	436.07 Rf = 1.16 min (column G) ¹H NMR (500 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 8.67 (d, 1/2H, J = 7.5Hz), 8.62 (d, 1/2H, J = 7.5Hz), 8.34 (s, 1/2H), 8.31 (s, 1/2H), 8.00 (m, 1H), 7.76 (d, 1H, J = 9.0Hz), 7.63 (m, 1H), 7.59 (m, 1H), 3.99 (s, 3H), 3.97 - 2.73 (m, 8H)
Iv Example 21		F-B	428.12	428.05 Rf = 1.72 min (column G)

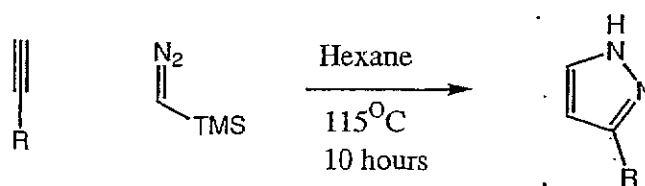
Iw Example 22		F-B	436.12	436.13 Rf = 0.98 min (column L)
Ix Example 23		F-B	471.18	471.48 Rf = 1.18 min (column C)
Iy Example 24		F-B	435.12	435.13 Rf = 1.54 min (column L)

General procedures for the preparation of pyrazoles

3-Substituted pyrazoles can be prepared *via* the following routes:

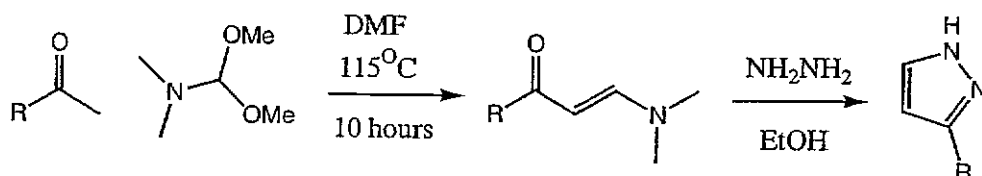
5

Route P-A



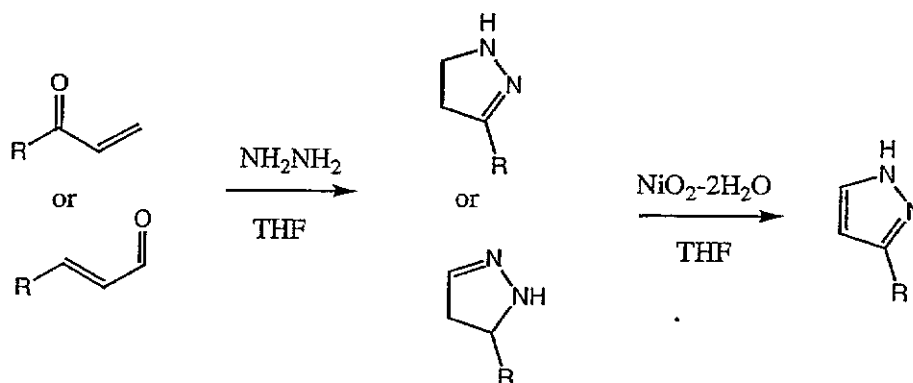
Alkyne (1 eq.) was dissolved in a 2M solution of diazomethane (5-10 eq.) in hexane and resulting mixture was heated to 110-115°C for 12 hours. After reaction was quenched with MeOH, removal of solvents provided a residue which was used in the next step without any purification.

5

Route P-B

10 Methyl ketone (1 eq.) was added into a solution of dimethoxy-DMF (5-10 eq.) in DMF and the resulting mixture was heated to 110-115°C for 12 hours. Solvents were then removed under vacuum to provide a residue.

15 The above residue was mixed with hydrazine (5-10 eq.) in ethanol and the reaction was kept in refluxing for 12 hours. Removal of solvents in vacuo gave a residue, which was carried onto further reactions without purification.

Route P-C

20

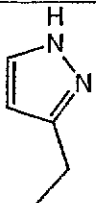
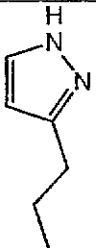
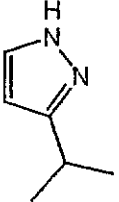
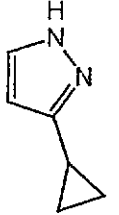
Hydrazine (10-20 eq.) was added into a solution of alkenone or alkenal (1 eq.) in THF and the resulting mixture was heated to 110-115°C for 12 hours. After the mixture cooled down to room temperature, an excess of NiO₂·2H₂O (5-10 eq.) was then added into the reaction mixture and the reaction was stirred at room temperature

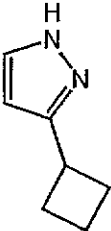
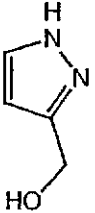
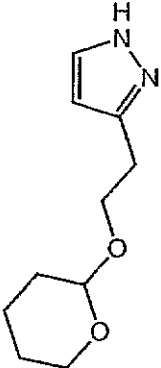
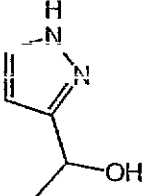
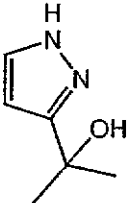
25

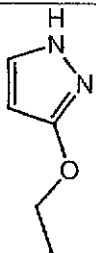
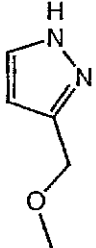
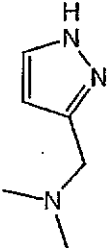
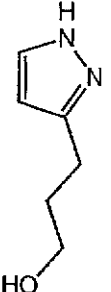
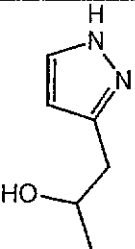
for another 12 hours. Insoluble materials were then filtered away and concentration under vacuum provided a residue that was used in the further reactions without purification.

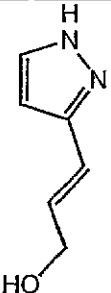
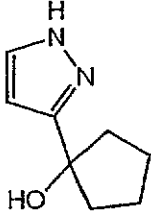
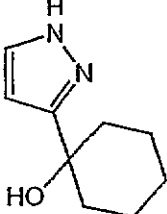
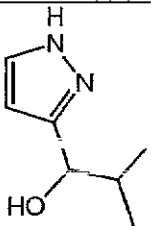
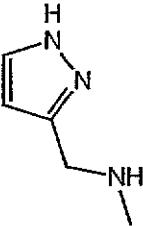
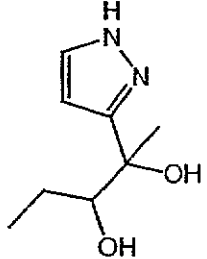
5

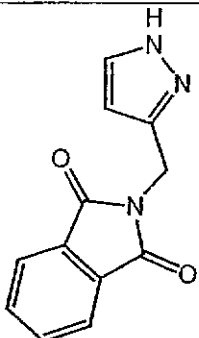
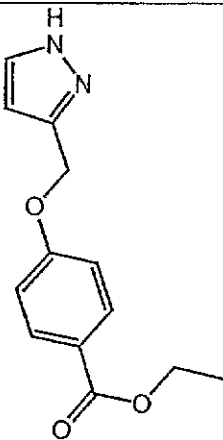
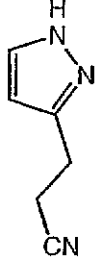
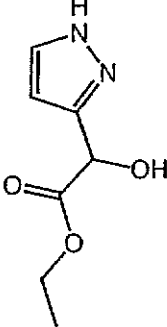
Table XX Preparation of Pyrazoles

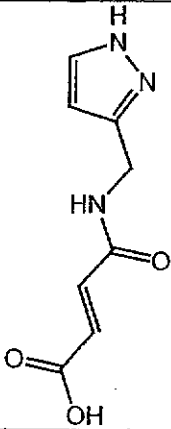
Compound [#]	Structure	Method Used	HPLC R _t (column) / MS (M+H) ⁺ or (M+Na) ⁺
Pyrazole-001		P-A	0.35 min (column L)
Pyrazole-002		P-A	0.59 min (column L)
Pyrazole-003		P-A	1.07 min (column L) / MS (M+H) ⁺ : Calc'd 139.12 Found 139.18
Pyrazole-004		P-A, P-B, P-C	0.53 min (column L)
Pyrazole-005		P-B	0.48 min (column L)

Pyrazole-006	 <chem>C1CC(C1)c2c[nH]cn2</chem>	P-A	0.63 min (column L)
Pyrazole-007	 <chem>OCc1c[nH]cn1</chem>	P-A	0.21 min (column G)
Pyrazole-008	 <chem>C1CCOC1CCc2c[nH]cn2</chem>	P-A	0.81 min (column L) / MS (M+H) ⁺ : Calc'd 197.13 Found 197.18
Pyrazole-009	 <chem>CC(C)C1=C[NH]CN1</chem>	P-A	
Pyrazole-010	 <chem>CC1(C)C(O)=CN=C1</chem>	P-A	0.34 min (column L)
Pyrazole-011	 <chem>COC(=O)CC1=C[NH]CN1</chem>	P-A	0.47 min (column L) / MS (M+H) ⁺ : Calc'd 155.08 Found 155.06

Pyrazole-012		P-A	0.38 min (column G)
Pyrazole-013		P-A	
Pyrazole-014		P-A	
Pyrazole-015		P-A	0.26 min (column L) / MS (M+Na) ⁺ : Calc'd 149.07 Found 149.11
Pyrazole-016		P-A	0.31 min (column L) / MS (M+H) ⁺ : Calc'd 141.10 Found 141.17
Pyrazole-017		P-A	0.27 min (column L) / MS (M+Na) ⁺ : Calc'd 149.07 Found 149.13

Pyrazole-018		P-A	0.22 min (column L)
Pyrazole-019		P-A	0.61 min (column L) / MS (M+Na) ⁺ : Calc'd 175.08 Found 175.14
Pyrazole-020		P-A	0.79 min (column L) / MS (M+Na) ⁺ : Calc'd 189.10 Found 189.17
Pyrazole-021		P-A	0.59 min (column L) / MS (M+H) ⁺ : Calc'd 141.10 Found 141.18
Pyrazole-022		P-A	0.22 (column L)
Pyrazole-023		P-A	0.34 min (column L) / MS (M+Na) ⁺ : Calc'd 193.10 Found 193.14

Pyrazole-024		P-A	1.05 min (column L) / MS (M+H) ⁺ : Calc'd 228.08 Found 228.14
Pyrazole-025		P-A	1.43 min (column G) / MS (M+H) ⁺ : Calc'd 247.11 Found 247.18
Pyrazole-026		P-A	0.25 min (column G)
Pyrazole-027		P-A	0.36 min (column G) / MS (M+H) ⁺ : Calc'd 171.08 Found 171.13

Pyrazole-028		P-A	0.93 min (column G)
Pyrazole-029		P-A	0.29 min (column G) / MS (M+H) ⁺ : Calc'd 155.08 Found 155.14

General Procedure to Cross-link N-nitrogen of N-containing Heterocycles (e.g., triazole, pyrazole and imidazole, etc) with Azaindole or Indole Halides

- 5 Method G-A: for N-containing heterocycles with melting points lower than or equal to 160°C

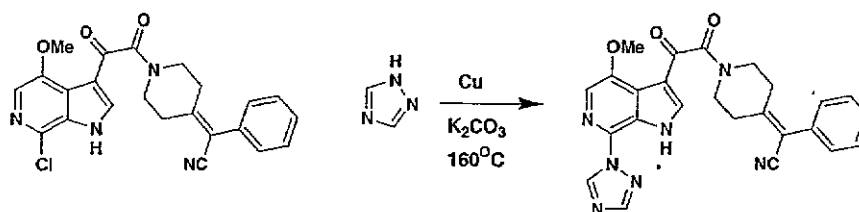
Indole or azaindole halide (30 mg, 1 eq.), triazole or pyrazole or imidazole (3 - 20 eq.), Cu (0.1 - 1 eq.) and K₂CO₃ (2 - 5 eq.) were combined in a sealed tube which
 10 was degassed before sealed. The mixture was heated to 160°C for 4 - 16 hours. After cooling down to room temperature, the mixture was added with MeOH (14 ml) and dichloromethane (7 ml). After filtration, the filtrate was concentrated to give a residue which was purified using a Shimadzu automated preparative HPLC System to provide the desired compound.

Method G-B: for N-containing heterocycles with melting points lower or higher than or equal to 160°C

Substituted pyrazole, imidazole or triazole (> 3 eq.) was mixed with an excess
5 of HMDS (> or = 10 eq.) or TMS-Cl (> or = 10eq.). After the resulting mixture was heated up to 140°C for 4 - 16 hours, HMDS or TMS-Cl was removed in vacuo and the residue was combined with indole or azaindole halide, under the condition described in Method G-A to provide desired products.

10

Example 25 Preparation of Product I-N-001

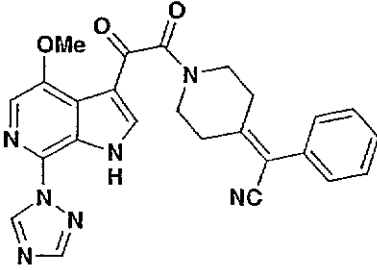


Compound Iy 100 mg), triazole (470 mg), Cu (28 mg.) and K₂CO₃ (60 mg)
15 were combined in a sealed tube which was degassed before sealed. The mixture was heated to 160°C for 6 hours. After cooling down to room temperature, the mixture was added with MeOH (30 ml) and dichloromethane (20 ml). After filtration, the filtrate was concentrated to give a residue which was purified using a Shimadzu automated preparative HPLC System to provide the desired compound I-N-001 (18
20 mg).

25

30

Characterization of the final compounds of formula I :

Compd. Number	Structure	Method Used	MS (M+H) ⁺ Calcd.	MS (M+H) ⁺ Observ. And Retention Time and NMR
I-N-001		G-A	468.18	468.41 R _f = 1.74 min (column G) ¹ H NMR (500 MHz, CD ₃ OD) δ 9.35 (s, 1H), 8.30 (m, 2H), 7.83 (d, 1H, J = 8.00 Hz), 7.42 (m, 5H), 4.03 (s, 3H), 3.95 - 2.56 (m, 8H)

General Procedures to Cross-link Tin or Boronic Agents with Azaindole or Indole Halides (WO-02/062423 published on August 15, 2003)

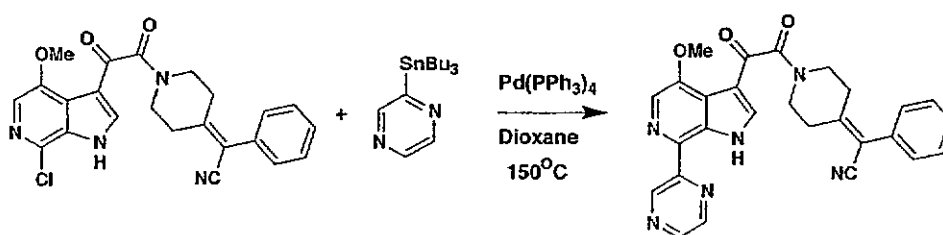
All the tin or boronic agents described in WO-02/062423 and its continuing-
 5 in-part applications are applicable in constructing Formula I defined in this application.

Coupling with Tin agents:

10 To a sealed tube, indole or azaindole halide (20 mg, 1 eq.), stannyl agent (1 - 2 eq.) and $\text{Pd}(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4$ (0.1 - 1 eq.) were combined in 1.5 ml of dioxane. The reaction was heated at 110-170 °C for 4 - 16 hours (it required much shorter time when reaction was run in a microwave reactor. After the mixture cooled down to room temperature, it was poured into 5 ml of water. The solution was extracted with
 15 EtOAc (4 x 5 ml). The combined extract was concentrated *in vacuo* to give a residue which was purified using a Shimadzu automated preparative HPLC System to give the desired compound.

Example 26 Preparation of Example I-C-001

20

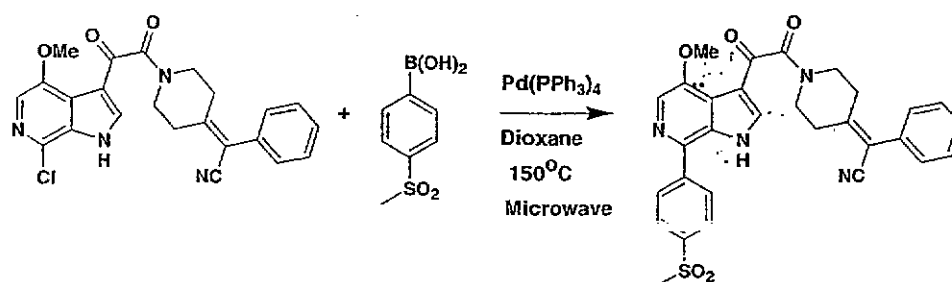


To a sealed tube, compound **Iy** (41 mg), tri-n-butyltin pyrazine (55 mg) and $\text{Pd}(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4$ (0.3 eq.) were combined in 3 ml of dioxane. The reaction was heated at
 25 150 °C for 5 hours. After the mixture cooled down to room temperature, it was poured into 5 ml of water. The solution was extracted with EtOAc (4 x 5 mL). The combined extract was concentrated *in vacuo* to give a residue which was purified using a Shimadzu automated preparative HPLC System to give the desired compound **I-C-001** (6 mg).

Coupling with boronic acids

To a sealed tube, indole or azaindole halide (20 mg, 1 eq.), boronic acid (1 - 5 eq.), $\text{Pd}(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4$ (0.1 - 1 eq.) and K_2CO_3 (2 - 5 eq.) were combined in 1.5 ml of DMF or dioxane with or without 1.5 ml of water. The reaction was heated at 110-170 °C for 4 - 16 hours (it required much shorter time when reaction was run in a microwave reactor). After the mixture cooled down to room temperature, it was poured into 20 ml of water. The solution was extracted with EtOAc (4 x 20 ml). The combined extract was concentrated to give a residue which was purified using a Shimadzu automated preparative HPLC System to give the desired product.

Example 32 Preparation of Example I-C-007

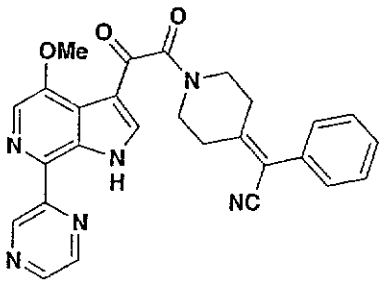
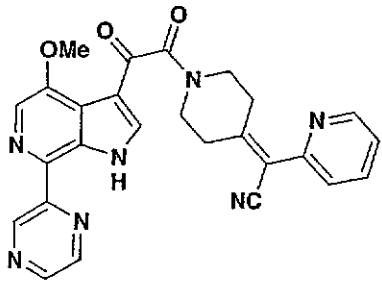


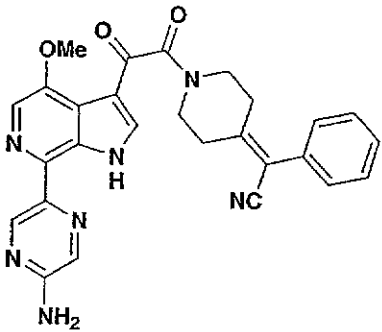
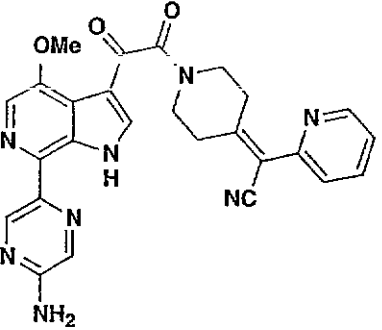
15

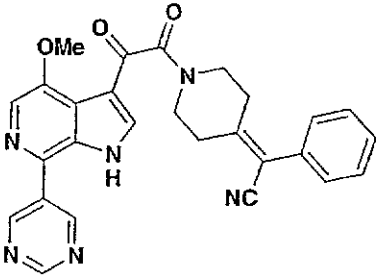
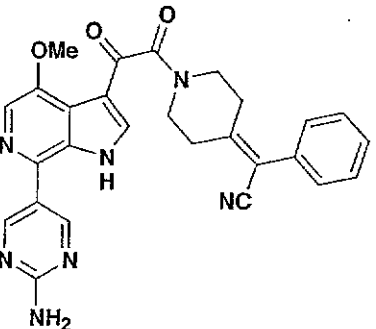
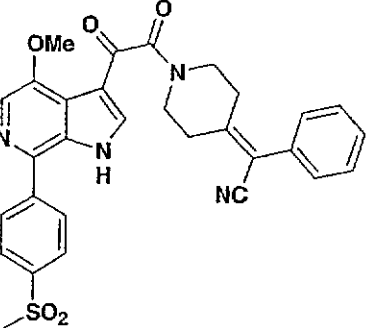
To a sealed tube, compound Iy (30 mg), 4-methylsulfonylphenyl boronic acid (42 mg) and $\text{Pd}(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4$ (0.3 eq.) were combined in 3 ml of dioxane. The reaction was heated at 150 °C in a microwave reactor for 20 minutes. After the mixture cooled down to room temperature, it was poured into 20 ml of water. The solution was extracted with EtOAc (4 x 20 ml). The combined extract was concentrated to give a residue which was purified using a Shimadzu automated preparative HPLC System to give the desired product I-C-007 (5 mg).

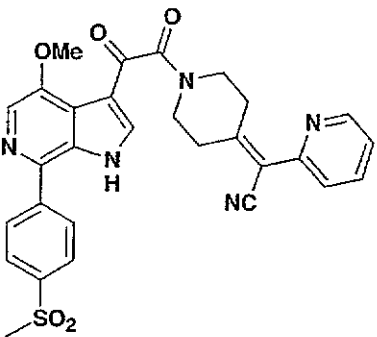
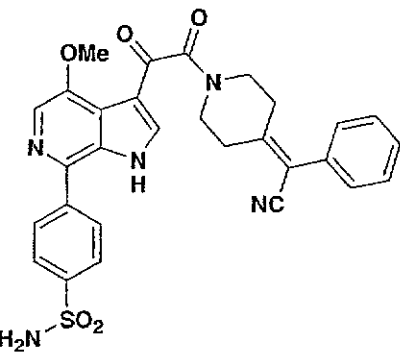
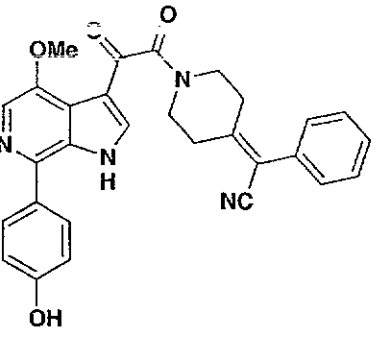
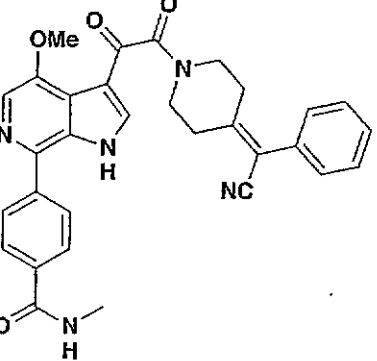
25

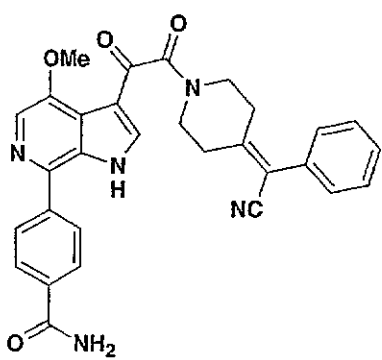
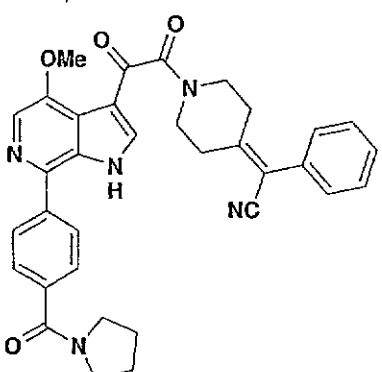
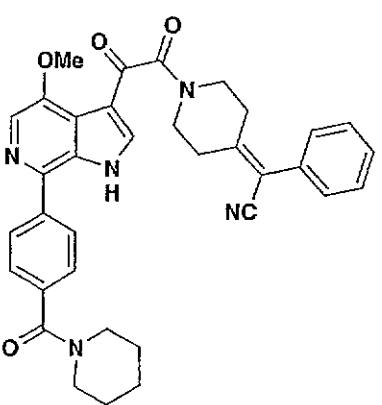
Characterization of the final compounds of formula I:

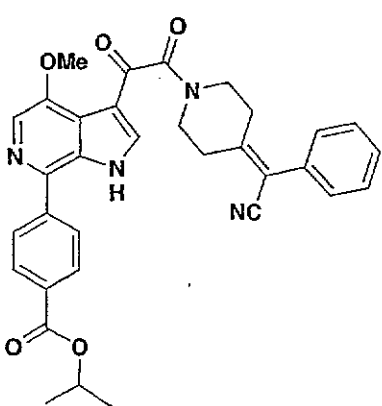
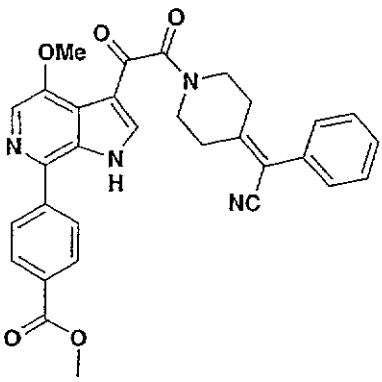
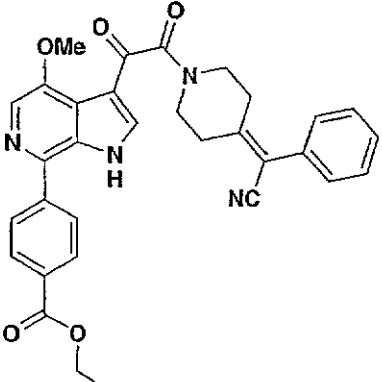
Compd. Number	Structure	MS (M+H) ⁺ Calcd.	MS (M+H) ⁺ Observ. And Retention Time and NMR
I-C-001 Example 26		479.18	479.21 R _f = 1.56 min (column G) ¹ H NMR (500 MHz, CDCl ₃) δ 9.80 (d, 1H, J = 6.5Hz), 8.58 (m, 2H), 8.20 (d, 1H, J = 8.5Hz), 8.13 (d, 1H, J = 8.5Hz), 7.30 (m, 5H), 4.11 (s, 3H), 3.96 - 2.60 (m, 8H)
I-C-002 Example 27		480.18	480.14 R _f = 1.25 min (column G) ¹ H NMR (500 MHz, CD ₃ OD) δ 9.63 (s, 1H), 8.78 (s, 1H), 8.60 (m, 2H), 8.39 (m, 1H), 8.20 (m, 1H), 7.92 (m, 1H), 7.61 (m, 1H), 7.56 (m, 1H),

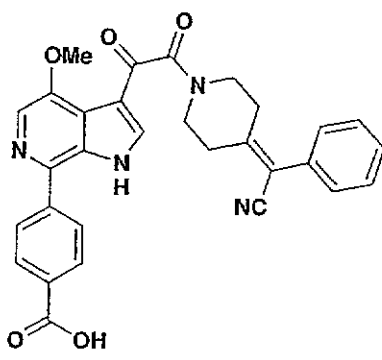
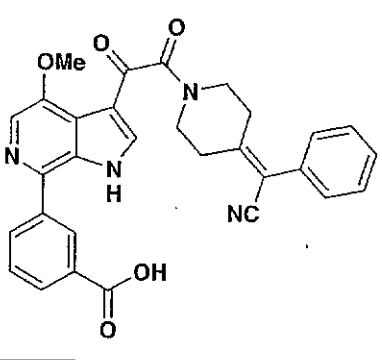
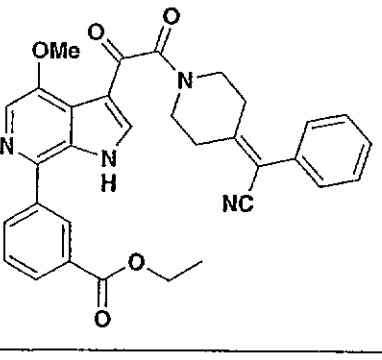
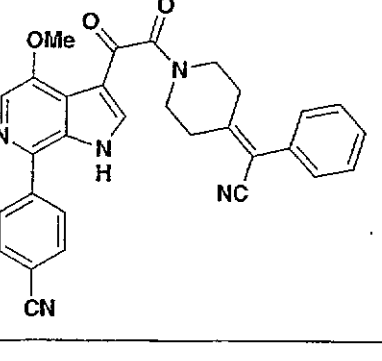
			4.10 (s, 3H), 4.10 - 2.70 (m, 8H)
I-C-003 Example 28		494.19	494.50 Rf = 1.38 min (column C) ¹ H NMR (500 MHz, CD ₃ OD) δ 8.84 (s, 1H), 8.61 (m, 2H), 8.22 (s, 1H), 8.00 (m, 2H), 7.63 (m, 1H), 7.60 (m, 1H), 4.11 (s, 3H), 3.98 - 2.79 (m, 8H)
I-C-004 Example 29		495.18	495.41 Rf = 1.20 min (column J) ¹ H NMR (500 MHz, CD ₃ OD) δ 8.84 (s, 1H), 8.61 (m, 2H), 8.22 (s, 1H), 8.00 (m, 2H), 7.63 (m, 1H), 7.60 (m, 1H), 4.11 (s, 3H), 3.98 - 2.79 (m, 8H)

I-C-005 Example 30		479.18	479.49 Rf = 1.33 min (column C) ¹ H NMR (500 MHz, CD ₃ OD) δ 8.39 (s, 1H), 8.63 (m, 2H), 8.22 (s, 1H), 7.56 (m, 2H), 7.61 (m, 1H), 7.50 (m, 1H), 4.11 (s, 3H), 3.98 - 2.79 (m, 8H)
I-C-006 Example 31		494.19	494.46 Rf = 1.29 min (column C)
I-C-007 Example 32		555.17	555.21 Rf = 1.34 min (column C)

I-C-008 Example 33		556.17	556.18 Rf = 0.99 min (column G)
I-C-009 Example 34		556.17	556.50 Rf = 1.27 min (column C)
I-C-010 Example 35		493.19	493.53 Rf = 1.29 min (column C)
I-C-011 Example 36		534.12	534.57 Rf = 1.31 min (column C)

I-C-012 Example 37		520.20	520.33 Rf = 520.33 min (column L)
I-C-013 Example 38		574.25	574.30 Rf = 1.41 min (column L)
I-C-014 Example 39		588.26	588.38 Rf = 1.46 min (column L)

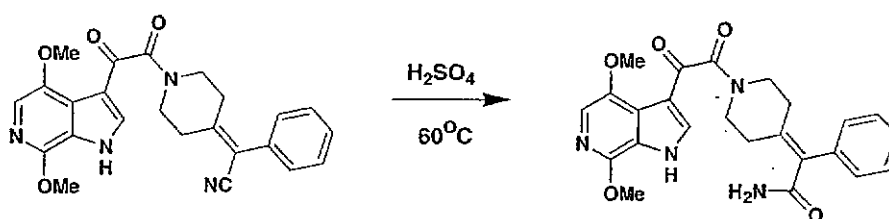
I-C-015 Example 40		563.23	563.31 Rf = 1.53 min (column L)
I-C-016 Example 41		535.20	535.58 Rf = 1.42 min (column C)
I-C-017 Example 42		549.21	549.27 Rf = 1.51 min (column L)

I-C-018 Example 43		521.18	521.51 Rf = 1.36 min (column C)
I-C-019 Example 44		521.18	521.22 Rf = 1.34 min (column L)
I-C-020 Example 45		549.21	549.48 Rf = 1.74 min (column C)
I-C-021 Example 46		502.19	502.20 Rf = 1.37 min (column L)

General procedure for hydrolysis of CN to amide

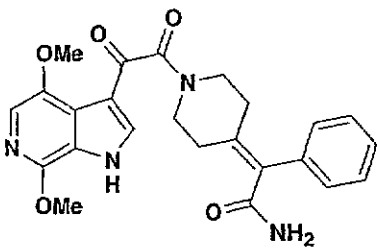
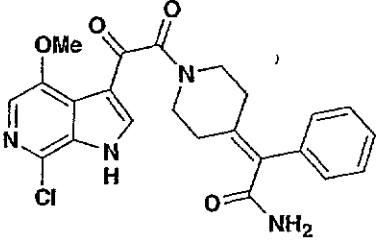
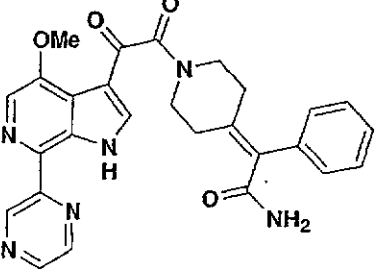
Nitrile derivative (40mg) was dissolved in 0.1 ml of concentrated H_2SO_4 and reaction was heated to 40 - 100 $^{\circ}\text{C}$ for 1 - 12 hours. After the mixture was cooled down to room temperature, it was diluted with water (10 ml) and methanol (10 ml). Saturated solution of NaHCO_3 was added to adjust pH to 5. Then, solvents was removed under vacuum to give a residue which was purified using a Shimadzu automated preparative HPLC System to provide the desired compound.

Example 47 Preparation of Example I-A-001



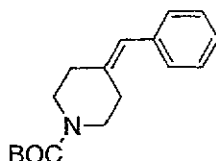
Compound Ic(40mg) was dissolved in 0.1 ml of concentrated H_2SO_4 and reaction was heated to 60 $^{\circ}\text{C}$ for three hours. After the mixture was cooled down to room temperature, it was diluted with water (10 ml) and methanol (10 ml). Saturated solution of NaHCO_3 was added to adjust pH to 5. Then, solvents was removed under vacuum to give a residue which was purified using a Shimadzu automated preparative HPLC System to provide the desired compound I-A-001 (1.2 mg).

Characterization of the final compounds of formula I:

Compd. Number	Structure	MS (M+H) ⁺ Calcd.	MS (M+H) ⁺ Observ. And Retention Time and NMR
I-A-001 Example 47		449.18	449.52 Rf = 1.31 min (column C)
I-A-002 Example 48		453.13	453.14 Rf = 1.32 min (column G)
I-A-003 Example 49		497.19	497.23 Rf = 1.39 min (column G)

Synthesis of Additional Vinylpiperidine Intermediates**Preparation of 4-(1-Phenyl-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:**

5

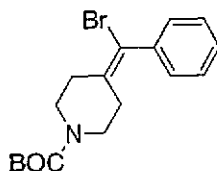


To a suspension of benzyltriphenylphosphonium chloride (2.24 g, 5.76 mmol)
10 was added n-BuLi (2.3M in hexanes, 3.0 mL, 6.9 mmol) at 0°C. The mixture was
allowed to stir for 30 min, after which time it had become a deep red solution. To
this was added N-Boc-4-piperidone (0.748 g, 6.05 mmol) and the solution was stirred
at room temperature for 48 hours. The reaction was quenched with NH₄Cl and
extracted with EtOAc (X2). The combined organic layers were washed, (H₂O, brine)
15 and dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated. The residue was purified by flash
chromatography (SiO₂/hexane:EtOAc, 4:1) to afford the product (1.41 g, 90%) as a
colourless liquid which solidified on standing:

¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.33 – 7.29, (m, 2H), 7.17 – 7.21 (m, 3H), 6.35 (s, 1H),
3.50 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 3.39 (t, J = 5.5 Hz, 2H), 2.45 (t, J = 5.5 Hz, 2H), 2.32 (app t,
20 J = 5.3, 5.6 Hz, 2H), 1.47 (s, 9H).

Preparation of 4-(1-Bromo-1-phenyl-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:

25



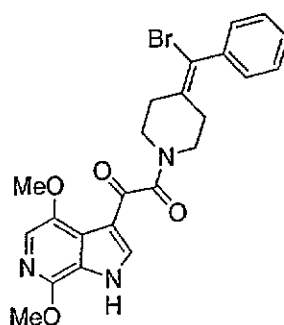
To a solution of 4-(1-phenyl-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (30.0 g, 0.11 mol) in CHCl₃ (300 mL) containing K₂CO₃ (22.5 g, 0.16

mol) was added a solution of Br₂ (5.9 mL, 0.16 mol) in CHCl₃ (50 mL) at 0°C over 1 h. The mixture was allowed to stir for 1 h at room temperature and then it was diluted with water, the layers were separated and the aqueous phase extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The combined organic layers were washed (H₂O, brine), dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated. The residue was dissolved in MeOH (300 mL) and a solution of NaOH (75 g, 1.88 mol) in H₂O (250 mL) was slowly added, followed by another 100 mL of MeOH to maintain homogeneity. The mixture was heated at 40°C for 4 hours and then most of the MeOH was removed *in vacuo* and the mixture was extracted with EtOAc (X3). The combined organic layers were washed, (H₂O, brine), dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (SiO₂/hexane-EtOAc, 4:1) to afford the product (36.2 g, 94%) as a yellow-orange solid:

¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.39 – 7.27 (m, 5H), 3.56 (app t, J = 5.9, 5.5 Hz, 2H), 3.36 (t, J = 5.9 Hz, 2H), 2.66 (t, J = 5.9 Hz, 2H), 2.26 (t, J = 5.9 Hz, 2H), 1.49 (s, 9H).

Example 48a

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Bromo-1-phenyl-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



A solution of 4-(1-bromo-1-phenyl-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester in 4N HCl-dioxane (10 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 2 h. The volatiles were then removed in vacuo and the residue was dissolved in CHCl₃ (15 mL). To this solution was added 4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl-oxoacetic acid (0.906 g, 3.37 mmol) and Hünig's base (2.40 mL, 13.8 mmol). After 5 min, BOPCl

(0.950 g, 3.73 mmol) was added as a solid and the mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 48 hours. The reaction mixture was then adsorbed directly onto silica gel and purified by flash chromatography ($\text{SiO}_2/\text{EtOAc}$) to give the title compound (1.101 g, 71%) as a yellow solid:

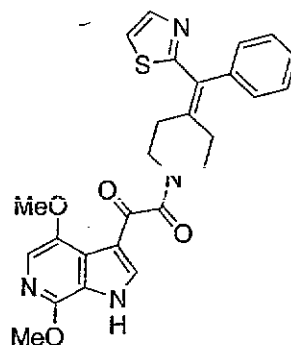
¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 12.98 (d, J = 14.2 Hz, 1H), 8.13 (dd, J = 12.4, 3.0 Hz, 1H), 7.46–7.28 (m, 6H), 3.97 (d, J = 6.6 Hz, 3 H), 3.82 (s, 3H), 3.71 (m, 1H), 3.54 (m, 1H), 3.45 (m, 1H), 3.27 (m, 1H), 2.71 (m, 1H), 2.56 (m, 1H), 2.34 (m, 1H), 2.20 (m, 1H).

LCMS m/e 484, 486 ($M+H$)⁺.

10

Example 49a

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(thiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



15

A mixture of 1-[4-(1-bromo-1-phenyl-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione (0.032 g, 0.066 mmol), 2-(tri-n-butylstannyl)thiazole (0.025 g, 0.066 mmol) and bistrisphenylphosphinepalladium dichloride (0.001 g, 1 mol%) in THF (4 mL) was heated at 90°C in a sealed tube under Ar for 15 h. The cooled mixture was then diluted with EtOAc, washed (1M KF, brine), dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated to give a clear yellow oil. Purification by preparative HPLC afforded the product (0.011 g, 34%) as a white solid:

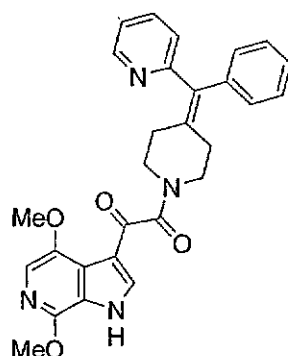
¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 9.38 (d, J = 11.6 Hz, 1H), 7.98 (dd, J = 3.5, 4.5 Hz, 1H), 7.84 (d, J = 3.0 Hz, 0.5H), 7.76 (d, J = 3.1 Hz, 0.5H), 7.44–7.19 (m, 7H), 4.02 (d, J = 4.6 Hz, 3H), 3.92 (s, 3H), 3.87 (app t, 1H), 3.73 (app t, 1H), 3.60 (app t, 1H), 3.47 (app t, 1H), 3.12 (app t, 1H), 3.03 (app t, 1H), 2.41 (app t, 1H), 2.32 (app t, 1H).

25

LCMS: m/e 489 ($M+H$)⁺.

Example 50

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(pyridin-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:

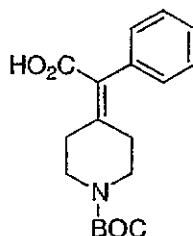


To a solution of 1-[4-(1-bromo-1-phenyl-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione (0.030 g, 0.062 mmole), pyridine-3-boronic acid (0.011 g, 0.093 mmol) in 4 mL of DME was added 2M sodium carbonate (0.12 mL, 0.24 mmol) and EtOH (1 mL) and the resulting mixture was degassed with a stream of Ar bubbles for 10 min. To this mixture was added Pd(dppf)₂Cl₂ (0.003 g, 5mol%) and the reaction mixture was heated with stirring at 90°C for 18 h. The cooled mixture was then filtered (C-18 cartridge and 0.45 μm filter), the residue was washed with MeOH and the filtrate was evaporated. Purification of the residual material by preparative HPLC afforded the title compound (0.011 g, 37%) as a light gray solid:

¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.38 (s, 1H), 8.50–8.40 (m, 2H), 8.00 (d, J= 3.0 Hz, 1H), 7.46–7.18 (m, 6H), 7.12–7.06 (m, 2H), 4.03 (s, 3H), 3.93 (s, 3H), 3.77 (q, J= 5.1, 5.5 Hz, 2H), 3.49 (m, 2H), 2.50 (m, 2H), 2.43 (m, 2H).

LCMS: m/e 483 ($M+H$)⁺.

Preparation of 4-(1-Phenylmethylene-1-carboxylic acid)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:

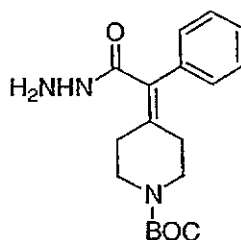


5

To a solution of 4-(1-bromo-1-phenyl-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (6.85 g, 19.4 mmol) in 50 mL of dry THF was added n-BuLi (1.8M in hexanes, 13.0 mL, 23.4 mmol) at -78°C under Ar. The mixture was allowed to stir for 20 min, after which time CO₂ gas (previously dried by passing through a CaCl₂ drying tube) was bubbled through the solution for 30 minutes and then a large excess of solid CO₂ was added. The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature over 12 h and then it was quenched with saturated aqueous NH₄Cl and the aqueous phase was washed with EtOAc. The pH of the aqueous phase was adjusted to about 2 with 10% HCl and then it was extracted with EtOAc (X3) and the combined organic phases were washed (H₂O, brine), dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (SiO₂/ hexane-EtOAc, 4:1) to afford the product (2.49 g, 40%) as a colorless liquid which solidified on standing: ¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 10.54, (br s, 1H), 7.38–7.34 (m, 3H), 7.18–7.15 (m, 2H), 3.55 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 3.40–3.37 (m, 2H), 2.88 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 2.18 (m, 2H), 1.45 (s, 9H). LCMS: m/e 316 (M-H).

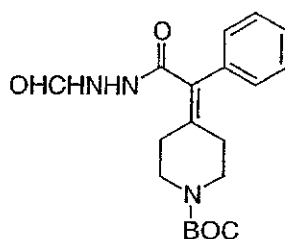
25

Preparation of 4-(1-Phenylmethylene-1-carboxylhydrazide)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:



A mixture of 4-(1-phenylmethylene-1-carboxylic acid)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.153 g, 0.481 mmol), EDCI (0.113 g, 0.590 mmol), and HOBt (g, 0.602 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) was stirred for 30 min at room temperature and hydrazine hydrate (1.0 mL) was added. Stirring was continued for 12h and then the mixture was poured into water and extracted with EtOAc (X3). The combined organic layers were washed, (H₂O X5, brine) and dried (Na₂SO₄). The solvent was removed in vacuo and the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to give a colorless oil (147 mg, 92%):
LCMS: m/e 330 (M-H)⁻.

Preparation of 4-(1-Phenylmethylene-1-(N'-formyl)carboxylhydrazide)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:

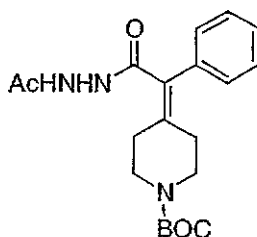


Prepared as per the previous example to give the title compound (52% yield) as a colourless foam:

¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 10.09 (s, 1H), 9.95 (s, 1H), 8.06 (s, 1H), 7.41–7.35 (m, 2H), 7.32–7.25 (m, 3H), 3.46 (br m, 2H), 3.32 (br m, 2H), 2.50 (m, 2H), 2.16 (dd, J= 5.3, 6.1 Hz, 2H), 1.41 (s, 9H).

LCMS: m/e 358 (M-H)⁻.

Preparation of 4-(1-Phenylmethylene-1-(N'-acetyl)carboxylhydrazide)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:

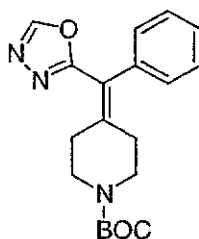


Prepared as per the previous example to give the title compound (45% yield) as a colourless oil:

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 8.19-8.12 (m, 1H, br), 7.40-7.21 (m, 5H), 3.93 (s, 1H, br) 3.54 (dd, $J=5.3, 5.6$ Hz, 2H), 3.39 (dd, $J=5.3, 6.1$ Hz, 2H), 2.81 (dd, $J=5.3, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.17 (dd, $J=5.3, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.08 s, 1H), 2.02, 2.01 (s, 3H), 1.45, 1.44 (s, 9H).

LCMS: m/e 372 (M-H^-).

10 **Preparation of 4-[1-Phenylmethylene-1-(1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:**

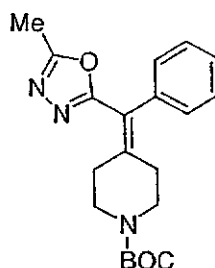


Method A: To a suspension of 4-(1-phenylmethylene-1-(N'-formyl)carboxylhydrazide)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.106 g, 0.294 mmol) in CH_3CN (2 mL) was added $i\text{Pr}_2\text{NEt}$ (0.30 mL, 1.7 mmol) and PPh_3 (0.137 g, 0.523 mmol), followed after 5 min by hexachloroethane (0.162 g, 0.685 mmol). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4h and then the solvent was removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned with $\text{EtOAc-H}_2\text{O}$. The organic phase was separated and the aqueous phase was re-extracted with EtOAc . The combined organic phases were washed (H_2O , brine), dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC to give the title compound (0.050 g, 50%) as a colorless solid:

$^1\text{HNMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 8.28 (s, 1H), 7.41-7.36 (m, 3 H), 7.18-7.16 (m, 2H), 3.59 (dd, $J=5.6, 5.8$ Hz, 2H), 3.43 (dd, $J=5.5, 5.9$ Hz, 2H), 2.91 (dd, $J=6.1, 5.5$ Hz, 2H), 2.31 (dd, $J=5.8, 5.5$ Hz, 2H), 1.45 (s, 9H).

LCMS: m/e 342 (M+H^+).

Preparation of 4-[1-Phenylmethylene-1-(5-methyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:



5

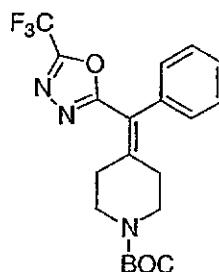
Method B: To a solution of 4-(1-phenylmethylene-1-carboxylhydrazide)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.056 g, 0.169 mmol) and $i\text{Pr}_2\text{NEt}$ (0.20 mL, 1.16 mmol) in CH_3CN (1 mL) was added acetic anhydride (0.02 mL, 0.212 mmol) and the mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 1 h. To this mixture was then

10 added PPh_3 (0.182 g, 0.694 mmol), followed by hexachloroethane (0.093 g, 0.394 mmol). The mixture was allowed to stir for 12 h and then it was worked up and purified as in Method A above to give the title compound (0.040 g, 64%) as a colorless solid:

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.44–7.34 (m, 3H), 7.39–7.23 (m, 2H), 3.56 (m, 3H),

15 3.40 (m, 3H), 2.85 (br m, 2H), 2.33 (s, 3H), 2.20 (m, 2H).

Preparation of 4-[1-Phenylmethylene-1-(5-trifluoromethyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:

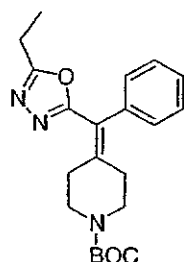


20

Prepared according to method B to give the title compound (77% yield) as a colourless solid:

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.42–7.37 (m, 3H), 7.18–7.16 (m, 2H), 3.61 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 3.45 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 2.92 (dd, J = 6.1, 5.5 Hz, 2H), 2.33 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 9.42 (s, 9H).

- 5 **Preparation of 4-[1-Phenylmethylene-1-(5-ethyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:**



- 10 Prepared according to method B and purified by flash chromatography (SiO_2 / EtOAc-hexane, 1:1) to give the title compound (68% yield) as a colourless solid:

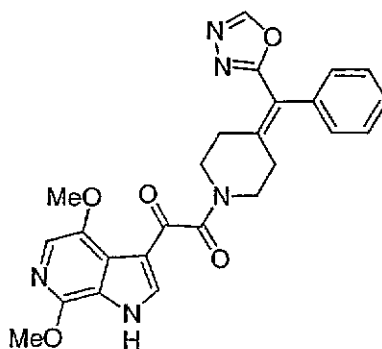
$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.43–7.36 (m, 3H), 7.21–7.19 (m, 2H), 3.61 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 3.46 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 2.88 (dd, J = 5.6, 6.0 Hz, 2H) 2.81 (q, J = 7.6 Hz, 2H), 2.33 (dd, J = 5.5, 6.1 Hz, 2H), 1.49 (s, 9H), 1.33 (t, J = 7.6 Hz, 3H).

- 15 LCMS: m/e 370 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Example 51

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:

20



General Method: A solution of 4-[1-phenylmethylene-1-(1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.050 g, 0.148 mmol) in dry CH_2Cl_2

(1 mL) was treated with TFA (0.25 mL). After stirring the mixture for 1 h, the solvent was evaporated in vacuo and the residue was dissolved in CHCl_3 . To this mixture was added 4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl-oxoacetic acid (0.044 g, 0.163 mmol), iPr_2NEt (0.10 mL, 0.57 mmol) and then BOPCl (0.049 g, 0.193 mmol). The mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 6 h and then the solvent was removed in vacuo. The residue was partitioned with $\text{EtOAc}-\text{H}_2\text{O}$, the organic phase was separated and the aqueous phase was re-extracted with EtOAc (2x). The combined organic layers were washed (H_2O , brine), dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC to give the title compound (0.015 g, 21%) as a colorless solid:

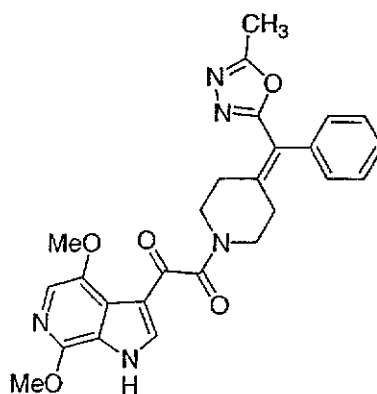
$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 9.96 (br s, 1H), 8.32, 8.28 (s, 1H), 7.96, 7.93 (s, 1H), 7.45–7.32 (m, 4H), 7.21–7.14 (m, 2H), 3.99, 3.98 (s, 3H), 3.93–3.90 (m, 1H), 3.90 (s, 3H), 3.74 (t, $J = 5.8$ Hz, 1H), 3.64 (dd, $J = 5.2, 5.9$ Hz, 1H), 3.47 (dd, $J = 5.3, 5.8$ Hz, 1H), 3.09 (t, $J = 5.9$ Hz, 1H), 3.02 (dd, $J = 5.6, 5.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.50 (dd, $J = 6.1, 5.8$ Hz, 2H), 2.41 (dd, $J = 5.9, 5.5$ Hz, 2H).

LCMS: m/e 474 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Compounds in Examples 52-68 were prepared by an analogous procedure to that of Example 51.

Example 52

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-methyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione.

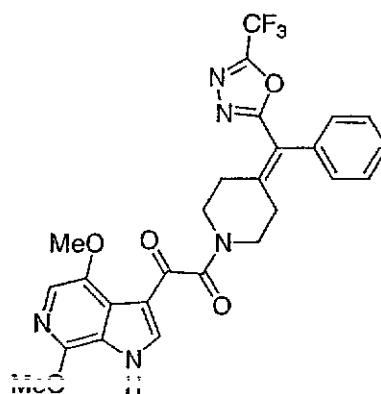


Prepared as a colourless solid (33% yield):

¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 10.5 (br s, 1H), 7.94, 7.91 (s, 1H), 7.40–7.30 (m, 4H), 7.20–7.13 (m, 2H), 3.96, 3.95 (s, 3H), 3.90–3.88 (m, 1H), 3.88 (s, 3H), 3.72 (dd, J = 5.9, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 3.61 (dd, J = 5.6, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.44 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.02 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 1H), (dd, J = 5.8, 5.6 Hz, 1H), 2.45–2.48 (m, 1H), 2.46, 2.43 (s, 3H), 2.38 (dd, J = 5.6, 5.8 Hz, 1H).
 LCMS: m/e 488 (M+H)⁺.

Example 53

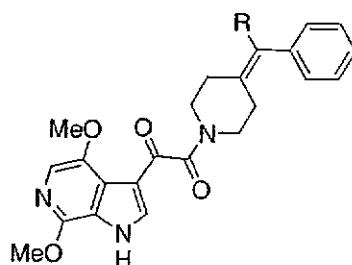
Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-trifluoromethyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione.



Prepared according to the general method as a light yellow solid (77% yield):

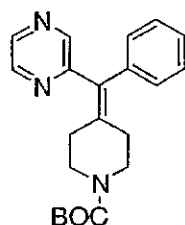
¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.23 (br s, 1H), 8.03, 8.02 (s, 1H), 7.47–7.34 (m, 4H), 7.21–7.14 (m, 2H), 4.04, 4.03 (s, 3H), 3.93–3.91 (m, 1H), 3.92 (s, 3H), 3.75 (dd, J = 5.8, 6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.66 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.50 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.10 (dd, J = 5.6, 6.3 Hz, 1H), 3.04 (dd, J = 5.6, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 2.51 (t, J = 6.1 Hz, 1H), 2.44 (dd, J = 5.8, 5.6 Hz, 1H).
 LCMS: m/e 542 (M+H)⁺.

TABLE 1: Representative 4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindole derivatives



Example	R	LCMS: m/e (M+H) ⁺
54		472
55		502
56		484
57		482
58		512
59		507
60		501
61		473
62		512
63		528
64		500
65		512
66		529
67		500
68		528

Preparation of 4-(1-Phenyl-1-(pyrazin-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:



5

To a solution of 4-(1-bromo-1-phenyl-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.352 g, 1.0 mmol) in 4 mL of dry THF, at -78°C under Ar, was added *n*-butyllithium solution (1.6M in hexanes, 0.75 mL, 1.2 mmol) dropwise. After 15 min, a solution of freshly fused ZnCl_2 in 1.2 mL of dry THF was added dropwise and then the cooling bath was removed and the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature. To this mixture was then added 2-iodopyrazine (0.119 mL, 1.2 mmol) and $(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4\text{Pd}$ (0.058 g, 5mol%) and the reaction vessel was sealed and then heated at 90°C for 16 h. The cooled mixture was quenched with saturated aqueous NH_4Cl and then it was partitioned with EtOAc-water. The organic phase was washed (brine), dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated to give a dark brown gum. Flash chromatography of this material [SiO_2 / 1-2% MeOH- NH_4OH (9:1) in CH_2Cl_2] afforded the title compound (0.237 g, 68%) as a light yellow solid:

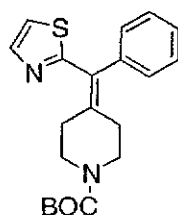
$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 8.58 (m, 1H), 8.42 (d, $J = 2.5$ Hz, 1H), 8.40 (d, $J = 1.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.37-7.16 (m, 5H), 3.51 (m, 4H), 2.44 (app t, 2H), 2.40 (app t, 2H), 1.49 (s, 9H).

20

LCMS: m/e 352 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Preparation of 4-(1-Phenyl-1-(thiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:

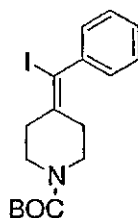
25



A solution of 4-(1-bromo-1-phenyl-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.205 g, 0.58 mmol) and 2-(tri-n-butylstannyl)thiazole (0.239 g, 0.64 mmol) in 6 mL of dry DMF was degassed with a stream of Ar bubbles for 10 min. To this solution was added $(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4\text{Pd}$ (0.067 g, 10mol%) and CuI (0.011 g, 10 mol%), and then the reaction vessel was sealed and heated at 90°C for 18 h. The cooled mixture was concentrated and then it was partitioned with EtOAc-water. The organic phase was washed (brine), dried (MgSO_4) and evaporated. Flash chromatography of the residue (SiO_2 / hexane-EtOAc, 3:2) afforded the title compound (0.195 g, 94%) as a yellow solid:

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.93-7.84 (m, 1H), 7.49-7.25 (m, 6H), 3.61 (app t, 2H), 3.47 (app t, 2H), 2.94 (app t, 2H), 2.28 (app t, 2H), 1.48 (s, 9H).
LCMS: m/e 357 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Preparation of 4-(1-Phenyl-1-iodo-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:



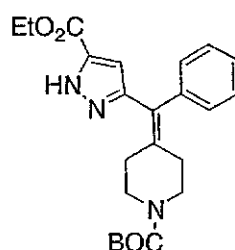
To a solution of 4-(1-bromo-1-phenyl-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.742 g, 2.11 mmol), in dry THF (15 mL) at -78°C, was added n-BuLi (1.7 M solution in hexanes, 1.6 mL, 2.72 mmol) dropwise over about 5 min. After stirring the mixture at -78°C for 20 min, solid I_2 (0.729 g, 2.87 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was allowed to slowly warm to room temperature. The mixture was then quenched with saturated NH_4Cl and saturated $\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_3$, diluted with water and extracted with EtOAc (X3). The combined organic phase was washed (H_2O , brine), dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated to give the title compound as a yellow orange solid (0.800 g) which was used in subsequent steps without further purification. An analytical sample was obtained by recrystallization from hexane (5°C) to afford the pure iodide as a cream coloured powder:

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.33–7.30 (m, 3H), 7.21–7.19 (m, 2H), 3.52 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 3.27 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 2.61 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 2.24 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 1.45 (s, 9H).

LCMS: m/e 385 ($\text{M}-\text{CH}_3$) $^+$.

5

Preparation of 4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-carboxyethylpyrazol-3-yl)-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:



10

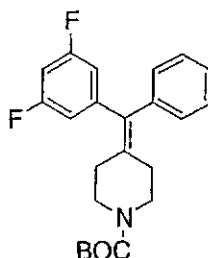
A mixture of 4-(1-iodo-1-phenyl-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.094 g, 0.235 mmol), Pd_2dba_3 (0.008 g, 0.0086 mmol), tri-2-furylphosphine (0.014 g, 0.062 mmol) and 3-(tri-*n*-butylstannyl)-5-carbethoxypyrazole (0.107 g, 0.249 mmol) in THF (2 mL) was heated at 70°C for 18 h. The reaction was then

15 partitioned with H_2O - EtOAc, the layers were separated and the aqueous phase was re-extracted with EtOAc (X2). The combined organic phase was washed (H_2O , brine), dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated, and the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to afford the title compound (0.054 g, 55%) as a light yellow solid:

20 $^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.34–7.29 (m, 3H), 7.13–7.11 (m, 2H), 6.68 (s, 1H), 4.36 (q, J = 7.1 Hz, 2H), 3.52 (dd, J = 5.3, 5.6 Hz, 2H), 3.42 (t, J = 5.6 Hz, 2H), 2.60 (dd, J = 5.3, 5.6 Hz, 2H), 2.29 (t, J = 5.6 Hz, 2H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 1.36 (t, J = 7.1 Hz, 3H).
LCMS: m/e 412 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

25

Preparation of 4-(1-Phenyl-1-(3,5-difluorophenyl)-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:



5

To a mixture of 4-(1-bromo-1-phenyl-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.115 g, 0.33 mmol) and 3,5-difluorophenylboronic acid (0.052 g 0.33 mmol) in DME (3mL) was added 2M sodium carbonate (0.65 mL, 1.30 mmol). The reaction vessel was then flushed with Ar for 10 minutes, Pd₂dba₃ (0.015 g, 0.016mmol) was added, the vessel was sealed and the mixture was heated at 90°C for 16 h. The cooled mixture was filtered (0.45µm syringe filter) and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC to give the title compound (0.080 g, 64%) as a white solid:

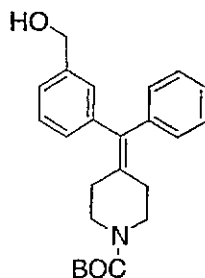
¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.27 (m, 3H), 7.08 (m, 2H), 6.64 (m, 3H), 3.45 (m, 4H), 2.30 (m, 4H), 1.45 (s, 9H).

LCMS: m/e 386 (M+H)⁺.

15

Preparation of 4-(1-Phenyl-1-(3-hydroxymethylphenyl)-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:

20



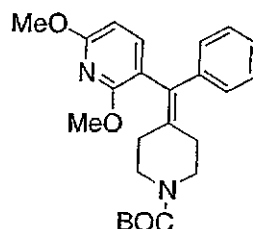
25

To a mixture of 4-(1-iodo-1-phenyl-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.132 g, 0.33 mmol) and 3-hydroxymethylphenylboronic acid (0.050 g 0.33 mmol) in DME (3mL) was added 2M sodium carbonate (0.65 mL, 1.30 mmol).

The reaction vessel was then flushed with Ar for 10 minutes, Pd_2dba_3 (0.015 g, 0.016mmol) was added, the vessel was sealed and the mixture was heated at 90°C for 16 h. The cooled mixture was filtered (0.45 μm syringe filter) and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC to give the title compound (0.037 g, 71%) as a white solid:

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.70-7.26 (m, 3H), 7.22-7.20 (m, 2H), 7.11-7.04 (m, 4H), 4.64 (s, 2H), 3.44 (m, 4H), 2.30 (m, 4H), 1.57 (br s, 1H), 1.44 (s, 9H).

Preparation of 4-(1-Phenyl-1-(2,6-dimethoxypyridin-3-yl)-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:



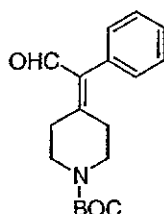
To a solution of 2,6-dimethoxypyridine (0.211 g, 1.51 mmol) in dry THF (7 mL) at –78°C under Ar was added *n*-BuLi (1.53 M in hexanes, 1.18 mL, 1.81 mmol) dropwise. After the addition, the mixture was stirred at 10°C for 30 minutes and then it was re-cooled to –78°C. To this mixture was added a solution of (previously fused in vacuo) zinc bromide (0.407 g, 1.81mmol) in THF (2 mL) and the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to ambient temperature. The resulting mixture was cannulated into a flame-dried flask containing 4-(1-bromo-1-phenyl-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.532 g, 1.51mmol) and $\text{Pd}(\text{PPh}_3)_4$ under Ar. The vessel was sealed and the mixture was heated at 90°C (oil bath temperature) for 4 h. The cooled mixture was then quenched with saturated NH_4Cl and extracted with EtOAc. The organic phase was dried (MgSO_4), filtered and concentrated to dryness.

The residue was then purified by flash chromatography ($\text{SiO}_2/\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ -hexane, 7:3) to afford the title compound (0.295 g, 48%) as a yellow gum:

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.19 (m, 6H), 6.24 (d, $J=8.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.89 (s, 3H), 3.44 (m, 4H), 2.32 (br s, 2H), 2.13 (br s, 2H), 1.45 (s, 9H).

LCMS: m/e 411 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Preparation of 4-(1-Phenylmethylene-1-formyl)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:



5

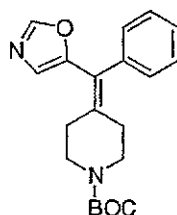
To a solution of 4-(1-bromo-1-phenyl-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (1.078 g, 3.06 mmol) in dry THF (100 mL) was added n-BuLi (1.8M in hexanes, 2.15 mL, 3.87 mmol) at -78°C under Ar. The mixture was allowed to stir for 20 min and then anhydrous DMF (0.36 mL, 4.65 mmol) was added. After stirring for 1.5 h at -78°C the cooling bath was removed and the solution was allowed to warm to room temperature over 2 h. The reaction mixture was then quenched with saturated aqueous NH_4Cl , the layers were separated and the aqueous phase was extracted with EtOAc (2x). The combined organic layers were washed (H_2O , brine), dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (SiO₂/hexane-EtOAc, 4:1) to give the title compound (0.568 g, 62%) as a colorless oil:

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 10.29 (s, 1H), 7.46–7.37 (m, 3H), 7.07–7.05 (m 2H), 3.67 (dd, $J = 5.8, 5.3$ Hz, 2H), 3.48 (t, $J = 5.8$, 2H), 3.01 (t, $J = 5.8$, 2H), 2.33 (t, $J = 5.5$ Hz, 2H), 1.49 (s, 9H).

LCMS: m/e 300 (M-H).

20

Preparation of 4-(1-Phenylmethylene-1-oxazol-5-yl)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:

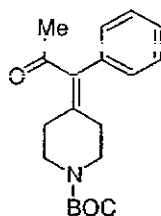


25

To a solution of 4-(1-phenylmethylene-1-formyl)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.060 g, 0.199 mmol) and tosylmethylisocyanide (0.046 g, 0.236 mmol) in MeOH (5 mL) was added K_2CO_3 (0.034 g, 0.247 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated at reflux for 3 h and then it was cooled to room temperature and quenched with saturated aqueous NH_4Cl . The ethanol was subsequently removed in vacuo and the aqueous mixture was diluted with EtOAc. The organic phase was separated and the aqueous phase re-extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic layers were washed (H_2O , brine), dried (Na_2SO_4) and the solvent was removed in vacuo. The residue was purified by flash chromatography to give the title compound (0.060 g, 89%) as a cream coloured solid:

^1H Nmr (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 7.80 (s, 1H), 7.38–7.29 (m, 3H), 7.14–7.12 (m, 2H), 6.65 (s, 1H), 3.55 (dd, J = 5.5, 5.1 Hz, 2H), 3.40 (dd, J = 5.8, 5.3 Hz, 2H), 2.73 (br s, 2H), 2.22 (dd, J = 5.6, 5.3 Hz, 2H), 1.45 (s, 9H).

15 Preparation of 4-(1-Phenylmethylene-1-acetyl)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:



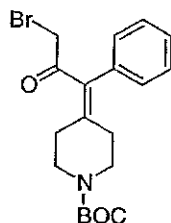
To a solution of 4-(1-phenylmethylene-1-formyl)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.518 g, 1.471 mmol) in THF (30 mL), at $-78^\circ C$ under Ar, was added n -BuLi (1.8M in hexanes, 1.13 mL, 2.034 mmol) and the solution was allowed to stir for 20 min. A solution of $ZnCl_2$ (0.211 g, 1.548 mmol) in THF (5 mL) was added and the mixture was allowed to stir for another 30 min before warming to room temperature. The mixture was then cooled to $0^\circ C$ and $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ (0.085 g, 0.734 mmol) was added, followed by acetyl chloride (0.21 mL, 2.95 mmol). The solution was allowed to warm to room temperature over 16 h and then quenched with saturated aqueous NH_4Cl . The layers were separated and the aqueous phase was extracted twice with EtOAc. The combined organic layers were washed (H_2O , brine),

dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated, and the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to give the title compound (0.237 g, 51%) as an orange liquid:

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.39–7.31 (m, 3H), 7.15–7.13 m, 2H), 3.51 (dd, $J=5.8$, 5.6 Hz, 2H), 3.38 (dd, $J=5.9$, 5.6 Hz, 1H), 2.62 (t, $J=5.8$ Hz, 2H), 2.13 (m, 2H), 2.02 (s, 3H), 1.44 (s, 9H).

LCMS: m/e 316 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

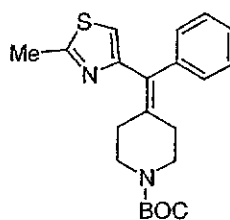
Preparation of 4-(1-Phenylmethylene-1-(2'-bromoacetyl)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:



A solution of 4-(1-phenylmethylene-1-acetyl)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.074 g, 0.234 mmol) in THF (2 mL) was added to a solution of LDA [prepared from $i\text{Pr}_2\text{NH}$ (0.04 mL, 0.285 mmol) and $n\text{-BuLi}$ (1.8M in hexanes, 0.15 mL, 0.270 mmol)] at -78°C and the solution was stirred for 30 min before TMSCl (0.04 mL, 0.326 mmol) was added. The mixture was allowed to stir for 1 h and then the cooling bath was removed and the solution allowed to warm to room temperature. The reaction was subsequently quenched with saturated aqueous NH_4Cl and diluted with EtOAc . The organic phase was separated and the aqueous phase was re-extracted with EtOAc (2x). The combined organic layers were washed (H_2O , brine), dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated, and the crude product (0.093 g) was dissolved in dry THF (1mL) and NaHCO_3 was added. This mixture was cooled to 0°C and NBS (0.046 g, 0.256 mmol) was added. After 2 hours the solution was allowed to warm to room temperature and saturated NaHCO_3 (2 mL) was added. The mixture was then extracted with Et_2O (2x) and the combined organic layers were washed (H_2O , brine) and dried (Na_2SO_4). The solvent was removed in vacuo and the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to give the title compound (0.045 g, 47%) as an orange liquid:

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.41–7.35 (m, 3H), 7.18–7.16 (m, 2H), 3.74 (s, 2H), 3.54 (dd, $J=5.8, 5.6$ Hz, 2H), 3.41 (t, $J=5.8$ Hz, 2H), 2.61 (dd, $J=5.8, 5.6$ Hz, 2H), 2.18 (dd, $J=6.0, 5.6$ Hz, 2H), 1.44 (s, 9H).

5 **Preparation of 4-(1-Phenylmethylene-1-(2-methylthiazol-4-yl)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:**

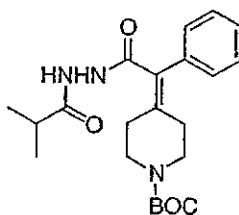


10 To a solution of 4-(1-phenylmethylene-1-(2'-bromoacetyl)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.045 g, 0.113 mmol) and NaHCO_3 (0.0104 g, 0.123 mmol) in EtOH (1 mL) was added thioacetamide (0.009 g, 0.118 mmol) and the reaction was heated at reflux. After 2 h the solution was cooled to room temperature and the solvent removed in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in EtOAc and the solution was
 15 washed (saturated aqueous NaHCO_3 , H_2O , brine), dried (Na_2SO_4) and the solvent was removed in vacuo. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC to give the title compound (0.033 g, 78%) as an orange liquid:

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 9.42 (br s, 1H), 7.36–7.30 (m, 3H), 7.17–7.15 m, 2H), 6.95 (s, 1H), 3.54–3.56 (m, 4H), 2.84 (s, 3H), 2.43 (dd, $J=5.8, 5.6$ Hz, 2H), 2.35 (dd, $J=5.8, 5.6$ Hz, 2H), 1.48 (s, 9H).
 20 LCMS: m/e : 371 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Preparation of 4-(1-Phenylmethylene-1-(N'-isobutyryl)carboxylhydrazide)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:

25

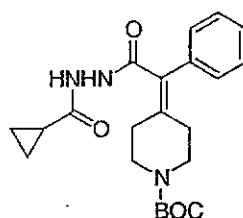


General Method: To a suspension of 4-(1-phenylmethylene-1-carboxylhydrazide)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.280 g, 0.85 mmol) in H₂O (5 mL) containing Na₂CO₃ (0.085 g, 0.85 mmol) at 0°C was added isobutyryl chloride (0.089 mL, 0.85 mmol). After 48 h at room temperature, a further 0.089 mL (0.85 mmol) of isobutyryl chloride was added and stirring continued for 4 h. The mixture was then quenched with saturated NH₄Cl and extracted with EtOAc (X3). The combined organic layers were washed, (H₂O, brine), dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated to give the title compound (0.163 g, 48%) as a colorless foam. This material was sufficiently pure to be used directly in the next step without further purification:

10 LCMS: m/e 400 (M-H)⁻.

Preparation of 4-(1-Phenylmethylene-1-(N'-cyclopropylcarbonyl)carboxylhydrazide)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:

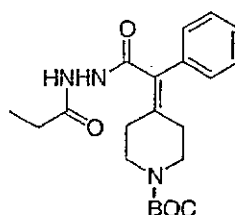
15



Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a colourless foam (59% yield):

20 LCMS: m/e: 400 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of 4-(1-Phenylmethylene-1-(N'-propanoyl)carboxylhydrazide)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:

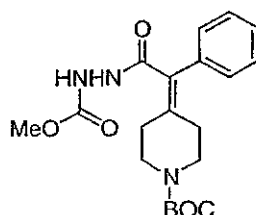


25

Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a colourless foam (20% yield):

LCMS: m/e: 388 (M+H)⁺.

- 5 **Preparation of 4-(1-Phenylmethylene-1-(N'-methoxycarbonyl)carboxylhydrazide)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:**

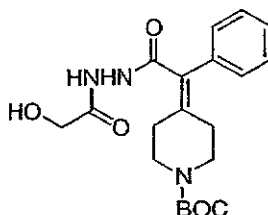


10

Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a colourless foam (40% yield):

LCMS: m/e: 388 (M-H)⁻.

- 15 **Preparation of 4-(1-Phenylmethylene-1-(N'-hydroxymethylcarbonyl)carboxylhydrazide)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:**



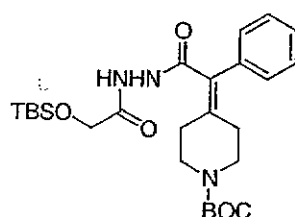
20

- A solution of 4-(1-phenylmethylene-1-carboxylhydrazide)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.250 g, 0.75 mmol), EDCI (0.202 g, 1.06 mmol) and HOBt (0.143 g, 1.06 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ was stirred at room temperature for 30 min and then glycolic acid (0.060 g, 0.75 mmol) was added. The solution was stirred for 48 hour and then it was diluted with water and the layers were separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (X2) and the combined organic layers were dried (Na₂SO₄). After removal of the solvent in vacuo, the residue was purified by flash
- 25

chromatography (SiO_2 / 15% $\text{MeOH-CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$) to give the title compound (0.058 g, 20%) as a colourless foam:

LCMS: m/e 388 (M-H) $^-$.

5 Preparation of 4-(1-phenylmethylene-1-(N'-tert-butyltrimethylsilyloxymethylcarbonyl)carboxylhydrazide)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:

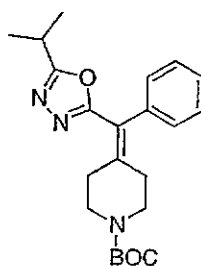


10

A solution of 4-(1-phenylmethylene-1-(N'-hydroxymethylcarbonyl)carboxylhydrazide)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.058 g, 0.15 mmol) and tert-butyltrimethylsilyl chloride (TBS-Cl) (0.027 g, 0.18 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) was treated at 0°C with imidazole (0.022 g, 0.33 mmol), and the mixture was then allowed to warm to room temperature and stirring was maintained for 48 h. The reaction was then poured into water and extracted with EtOAc (X3). The combined organic layers were washed (H_2O X3, brine), dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (SiO_2 / hexane-EtOAc, 7:3) to afford the title compound (0.022 g, 29%):

20 LCMS: m/e 502 (M-H) $^-$.

Preparation of 4-[1-Phenylmethylene-1-(5-isopropyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:



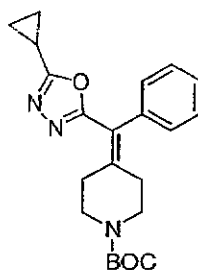
25

Method A: To a suspension of 4-(1-phenylmethylene-1-(N'-isobutyryl)carboxylhydrazide)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.163 g, 0.41 mmol) in CH₃CN (5 mL) was added iPr₂NEt (0.49 mL, 2.8 mmol) and PPh₃ (0.435 g, 1.66 mmol), followed after 5 min by hexachloroethane (0.221 g, 0.93 mmol). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4h and then the solvent was removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned with EtOAc-H₂O. The organic phase was separated and the aqueous phase was re-extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic phases were washed (H₂O, brine), dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (SiO₂/ hexane-EtOAc, 1:1) to give the title compound (0.077 g, 49%) as a colorless solid:

¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.42–7.35 (m, 3H), 7.21–7.19 (m, 2H), 3.61 (dd, J= 5.5, 6.1 Hz, 2H), 3.46 (dd, J= 5.8, 6.1 Hz, 2H), 2.88 (t, J= 5.8 Hz, 2H), 2.34 (t, J= 5.8 Hz, 2H), 1.49 (s, 9H), 1.33 (d, J= 7 Hz, 6H).

LCMS: m/e 384 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of 4-[1-Phenylmethylene-1-(5-cyclopropyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:

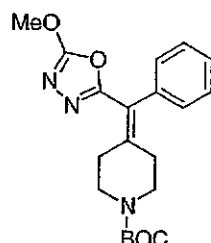


Prepared according to Method A above, to give the title compound (57% yield) as a colourless solid:

¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.42–7.35 (m, 3H), 7.20–7.17 (m, 2H) 3.60 (t, J= 5.8 Hz, 2H), 3.45 (t, J= 5.8 Hz, 2H), 2.86 (dd, J= 5.5, 6.1 Hz, 2H), 2.32 ((dd, J= 5.5, 6.1 Hz, 2H), 2.11–2.05 (m, 1H), 1.48 (s, 9H), 1.12–1.02 (m, 4H).

LCMS: m/e 382 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of 4-[1-Phenylmethylene-1-(5-methoxy-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:



5

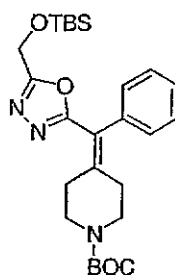
Prepared according to Method A above, to give the title compound (85% yield) as a colourless solid:

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.42–7.35 (m, 3H), 7.21–7.19 (m, 2H), 4.16 (s, 3H),
3.60 (dd, J = 5.5, 6.1 Hz, 2H), 3.45 (dd, J = 5.8, 6.1 Hz, 2H), 2.87 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 2H),
10 2.30 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 1.48 (s, 9H).

LCMS: m/e 372 ($M+H$) $^+$.

Preparation of 4-[1-Phenylmethylene-1-(5-tert-butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)]piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:

15

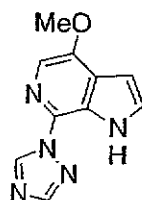


Prepared according to Method A above and purified by flash chromatography
(SiO_2 / hexane-EtOAc, 65:35) to give the title compound (74% yield) as a colourless
20 solid:

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.41–7.35 (m, 3H), 7.18–7.21 (m, 2H), 4.80 (s, 2H), 5.8
(t, J = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 3.46 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 2.93 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 2H), 2.33 (t, J = 5.8 Hz,
2H), 1.49 (s, 9H), 0.84 (s, 9H), 0.03 (s, 6H).

LCMS: m/e 486 ($M+H$) $^+$.

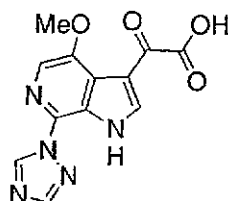
25

Preparation of 4-Methoxy-7-(1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindole:

- 5 General Method: A mixture of 7-chloro-4-methoxy-6-azaindole (1.029 g, 5.62 mmol), 1,2,4-triazole (11.6 g, 30 equiv), copper bronze (0.72 g, 11.2 mgatom) and finely pulverized KOH (0.63 g, 11.2 mmol) was heated in a sealed tube at 160°C (oil bath temperature) for 18 h. The cooled mixture was taken up in MeOH and the resulting slurry was filtered through a pad of Celite. The filtrate was evaporated, the
- 10 residue taken up in EtOAc and the resulting suspension was filtered. This process was repeated and the resulting solution was subsequently adsorbed on silica gel and the volatiles were removed *in vacuo*. This solid was applied to the top of a silica gel chromatography column, which was eluted with 10-50% EtOAc-CH₂Cl₂ to give the title compound (0.697 g, 58%) as an off-white solid:
- 15 ¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 10.23 (s, 1H), 9.23 (s, 1H), 8.16 (s, 1H), 7.59 (s, 1H), 7.40 (dd, J = 2.2, 3.1, 1H), 6.74 (dd, J = 2.2, 3.1, 1H), 4.06 (s, 3H).
LCMS: m/e 216 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of 4-Methoxy-7-(1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl-oxoacetic acid:

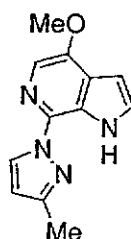
20



- General Method: To a mixture of AlCl₃ (0.665 g, 5.0 mmol) in 4 mL of CH₂Cl₂-MeNO₂ (4:1) was added 4-methoxy-7-(1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindole (0.108 g, 0.50
- 25 mmol) as a solid. To the resulting solution was added methyl oxalyl chloride (0.185 mL, 2.0 mmol) dropwise and then the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16

- h. The reaction mixture was then carefully poured into 20% aqueous ammonium acetate and EtOAc was added. The resulting emulsion was filtered and the residue was washed with additional EtOAc. The organic phase was washed (brine), dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated, and the residue was triturated with MeOH to give 4-methoxy-7-(1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl-oxoacetic acid methyl ester (0.069 g, 46%) as a yellow solid: MS m/e 300 (M-H^-). This material (0.069 g, 0.229 mmol) was taken up in 3 mL of MeOH, 1M K_2CO_3 (0.9 mL, 0.9 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 h. The solution was then diluted with an equal volume of water and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting aqueous solution was cooled at 0°C and acidified to pH 1-2 with 6N HCl. This gave a bright yellow precipitate which was filtered, washed with cold 0.1N HCl and then with ether. The wet solid was suspended in ether with sonication and then it was filtered and dried *in vacuo* to give the title compound (0.049 g, 75%) as a yellow powder:
- $^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, DMSO) δ 12.53 (s, 1H), 9.42 (s, 1H), 8.47 (s, 1H), 8.28 (s, 1H), 7.91 (s, 1H), 3.99 (s, 3H).
- LCMS: m/e 286 (M-H^-).

Preparation of 4-Methoxy-7-(3-methyl-pyrazol-1-yl)-6-azaindole:

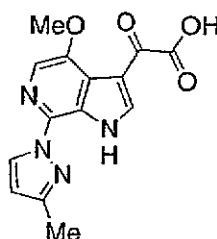


20

- Prepared according to the general method above to give a cream-coloured solid (46% yield):
- $^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 10.66 (br s, 1H), 8.55 (s, 1H), 7.57 (s, 1H), 7.41 (dd, $J=3.2, 2.3$ Hz, 1H), 6.71 (dd, $J=3.2, 2.3$ Hz, 1H), 6.30 (d, $J=2.5$ Hz, 1H), 4.06 (s, 3H), 2.45 (s, 3H).
- LCMS: m/e 229 (M+H^+).

25

Preparation of 4-Methoxy-7-(3-methyl-pyrazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl-oxoacetic acid:



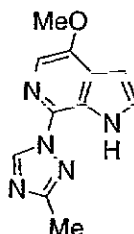
5

Prepared according to the general method above to give a cream coloured solid (25% overall yield):

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, DMSO) δ 12.33 (s, 1H), 8.57 (s, 1H), 8.29 (s, 1H), 7.85 (s, 1H), 6.47 (s, 1H), 3.98 (s, 3H), 2.54 (s, 3H).

10 LCMS: m/e 301 ($M+H$) $^+$.

Preparation of 4-Methoxy-7-(3-methyl-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindole:



15

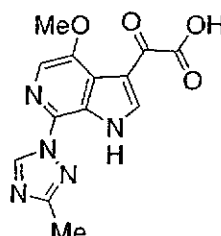
Prepared according to the general method above and purified by preparative HPLC (YMC-Pack C-18, 30x100mm; 10-90% MeCN-H₂O/0.05% NH₄OAc) to give the title compound as a cream-coloured solid (30% yield):

20 $^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 10.26 (br s, 1H), 9.27 (s, 1H), 7.62 (s, 1H), 7.45 (dd, $J=$ 2.5, 3.1 Hz, 1H), 6.77 (dd, $J=$ 3.2, 2.5 Hz), 4.09 (s, 3H), 2.61 (s, 3H).

LCMS: m/e 230 ($M+H$) $^+$.

25

Preparation of 4-Methoxy-7-(3-methyl-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl-oxoacetic acid:



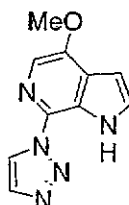
5

Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a solid (% yield):

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, DMSO) δ 12.4 (br s, 1H), 9.24 (s, 1H), 8.28 (d, $J = 3.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.86 (s, 1H), 3.96 (s, 3H), 2.48 (s, 3H).

10 LCMS: m/e 302 ($M+H$) $^+$.

Preparation of 4-Methoxy-7-(1,2,3-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindole:



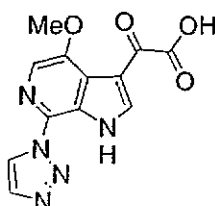
15

Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a white solid (32% yield):

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 10.36 (br s, 1H), 8.80 (s, 1H), 7.90 (s, 1H), 7.68 (s, 1H), 7.48 (br s, 1H), 6.81 (br s, 1H), 4.11 (s, 3H).

20 LCMS: m/e 216 ($M+H$) $^+$.

Preparation of 4-Methoxy-7-(1,2,3-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl-oxoacetic acid:

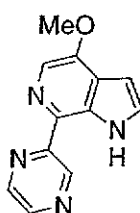


Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a beige solid (26% overall yield):

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, DMSO) δ 12.75 (br s, 1H), 8.94 (s, 1H), 8.28 (d, J = 3.5 Hz, 1H), 8.07 (s, 1H), 7.96 (s, 1H), 3.99 (s, 3H).

5 LCMS: m/e 288 ($M+H$) $^+$.

Preparation of 4-Methoxy-7-pyrazinyl-6-azaindole:



10

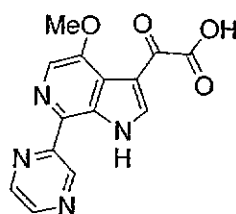
A mixture of 7-bromo-4-methoxy-6-azaindole (1.160 g, 5.11 mmol) and 2-(tri-*n*-butylstannyl)pyrazine (2.07 g, 5.62 mmol) in 25 mL of dry DMF was degassed with a stream of Ar bubbles for 10 min. To this solution was added

15 tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.590 g, 0.511 mmol) and CuI (0.097 g, 0.511 mmol) and the mixture was heated in a sealed tube at 90°C for 4 h. The cooled mixture was filtered through methanesulfonic acid SCX cartridges (7 x 3 g) with MeOH, to remove triphenylphosphine oxide. The filtrate was evaporated and the residue triturated with MeOH to give the title compound (0.612 g, 53%) as a light yellow solid:

20 $^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 11.79 (br s, 1H), 9.63 (d, J =1.5 Hz, 1H), 8.75 (m, 1H), 8.64 (d, J = 2.6 Hz, 1H), 8.04 (s, 1H), 7.56 (dd, J = 3.0, 2.6 Hz, 1H), 6.64 (dd, J = 3.0, 2.0 Hz, 1H), 4.08 (s, 3H).

LCMS: m/e 227 ($M+H$) $^+$.

25

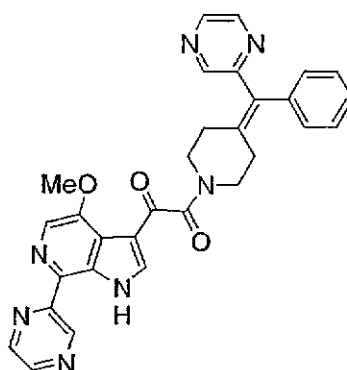
Preparation of 4-Methoxy-7-pyrazinyl-6-azaindol-3-yl-oxoacetic acid:

- 5 To a mixture of AlCl_3 (3.09 g, 23.2 mmol) in 20 mL of CH_2Cl_2 - MeNO_2 (4:1) was added 4-methoxy-7-pyrazinyl-6-azaindole (0.525 g, 2.32 mmol) as a solid. To the resulting burgundy solution was added methyl oxalyl chloride (0.853 mL, 9.28 mmol) dropwise and then the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 h. The reaction mixture was then carefully poured into cold 20% aqueous ammonium acetate and EtOAc was added. The resulting emulsion was filtered and the residue was washed with additional EtOAc. The organic phase was separated and the aqueous phase was again extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic phase was dried (MgSO_4) and evaporated to give 4-methoxy-7-pyrazinyl-6-azaindol-3-yl-oxoacetic acid methyl ester (0.494 g, 68%) as a brownish solid: LCMS m/e 313 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$)⁺. This material (0.456 g, 1.46 mmol) was taken up in 20 mL of MeOH, 1M K_2CO_3 (5.84 mL, 5.84 mmol) was added and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 min. The solution was then diluted with water (4 mL) and concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting aqueous solution was cooled at 0°C and acidified to pH 1-2 with 6N HCl. This gave a bright yellow precipitate which was filtered, washed with cold 0.1N HCl and ether and dried *in vacuo* to give the title compound (0.309 g, 71%) as a yellow solid:

¹Hnmr (400 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 12.72 (br s, 1H), 9.62 (d, J = 1.5 Hz, 1H), 8.78 (m, 1H), 8.71 (d, J = 2.5 Hz, 1H), 8.33 (d, J = 3.0 Hz, 1H), 8.25 (s, 1H), 4.05 (s, 3H).
LCMS: m/e 299 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$)⁺.

Example 70

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(pyrazinyl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4-methoxy-7-pyrazinyl-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



5

General Method: A solution of 4-(1-phenyl-1-(pyrazin-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.028 g, 0.080 mmol) in dry CH_2Cl_2 (2 mL) was treated with TFA (0.40 mL). After stirring the mixture for 1 h, the volatiles were evaporated and the residue was dissolved in CHCl_3 (4 mL). To this mixture was added 4-methoxy-7-pyrazinyl-6-azaindol-3-yl-oxoacetic acid (0.027 g, 0.080 mmol), $i\text{Pr}_2\text{NEt}$ (0.14 mL, 0.80 mmol) and then BOPCl (0.020 g, 0.080 mmol). The mixture was allowed to stir at room temperature for 1 h and then the solvent was removed in vacuo. The residue was partitioned with EtOAc- H_2O , the organic phase was separated and the aqueous phase was re-extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic layers were dried (MgSO_4) and evaporated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC to give the title compound (0.014 g, 37%) as a yellow solid:

15

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3): δ 11.72, (s, br, 1H), 9.84 (s, 1H), 8.60 (s, 2H), 8.51 (dd, $J=2.5, 1.5$ Hz, 1H), 8.43 (d, $J=2.5$ Hz, 1H), 8.38 (dd, $J=2.5, 1.5$ Hz, 1H), 8.34 (d, $J=1.5$ Hz, 1H), 8.23 (d, $J=3.1$ Hz, 1H), 8.16 (d, $J=1.3$ Hz, 1H), 7.40–7.30 (m, 2H), 7.20–7.13 (m, 2H), 4.12 (s, 3H), 3.86 (dd, $J=5.8, 6.0$ Hz, 1H), 3.81 (dd, $J=5.8, 6.0$ Hz, 1H), 3.59 (dd, $J=5.8, 5.3$ Hz, 1H), 3.55 (dd, $J=5.8, 5.6$ Hz, 1H), 2.61 (t, $J=5.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.55 (m, 2H), 2.49 (dd, $J=5.8, 5.6$ Hz, 1H).

20

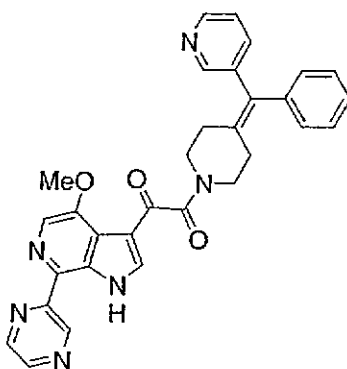
LCMS: m/e 532 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

25

Compound Examples 71-100 are prepared according to the procedure described in Example 70.

Example 71

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(pyridin-3-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4-methoxy-7-pyrazinyl-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



5

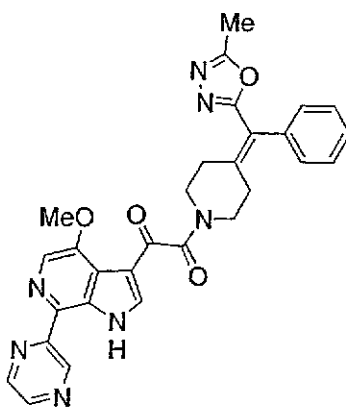
Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a beige solid (42% yield):

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 11.72 (s, 1H), 9.82 (s, 1H), 8.52-8.42 (m, 2H), 8.22 (d, $J = 3.0$ Hz, 1H), 8.16 (s, 1H), 7.51-7.45 (m, 1H), 7.37-7.22 (m, 4H), 7.09 (m, 2H), 4.12 (s, 3H), 3.80 (m, 2H), 3.54 (m, 2H), 2.49 (m, 4H).

LCMS: m/e 531 ($M+H$) $^+$.

Example 72

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-methyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4-methoxy-7-pyrazinyl-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



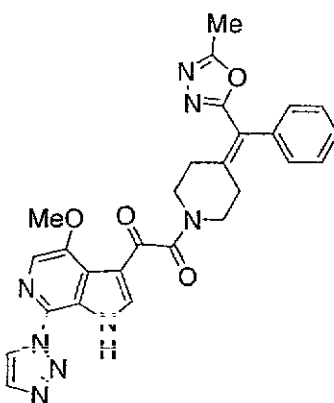
Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a light yellow solid (35% yield):

¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 11.72 (s, 1H), 9.83 (s, 0.5H), 9.81 (s, 0.5H), 8.59 (d, J= 3.1 Hz, 1H), 8.23 (dd, J= 5.3, 3.1 Hz, 1H), 8.15 (d, J= 5.3 Hz, 1H), 7.44-7.32 (m, 3H), 7.21-7.15 (m, 3H), 4.11 (s, 1.5H), 4.10 (s, 1.5H), 3.93 (dd, J= 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.75 (dd, J= 5.8, 5.6 Hz, 1H), 3.67 (t, J= 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.06 (dd, J= 6.0, 5.6 Hz, 1H), 2.49 (dd, J= 6.0, 5.6 Hz, 1H), 2.40 (dd, J= 6.0, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.47 (s, 1.5H), 2.42 (s, 1.5H).

LCMS: m/e 536 (M+H)⁺.

Example 73

10 Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-methyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-[4-methoxy-7-(1,2,3-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl]-ethane-1,2-dione:



15

Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a white solid (50% yield):

¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 11.07 (br s, 1H), 8.80 (br s, 1), 8.30 (t, J= 3.5 Hz, 1H), 7.94 (br s, 1H), 7.86 (d, J= 5.6 Hz, 1H), 7.41 (m, 3), 7.23 (d, J=8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.20 (d, J=8.1 Hz, 1H), 4.1 (3H 2s), 3.96 (t, J= 5.6 Hz, 1H), 3.78 (t, J= 5.6 Hz, 1H), 3.71 (t, J= 5.6 Hz, 1H), 3.53 (t, J= 5.6 Hz, 1H), 3.09 (t, J= 6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.05 (t, J= 6.1 Hz, 1H), 2.52 (t, J= 6.1 Hz, 1H), 2.50 (s, 1.5H), 2.47 (s, 1.5H), 2.46 (t, J= 6.1 Hz, 1H).

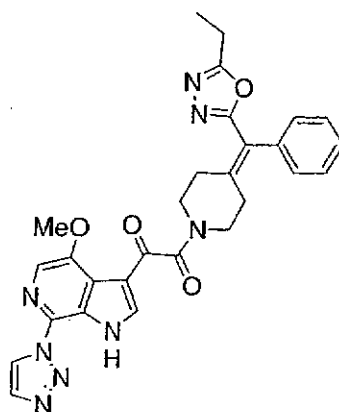
LCMS: m/e 525 (M+H)⁺.

25

Example 74

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-ethyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-[4-methoxy-7-(1,2,3-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl]-ethane-1,2-dione:

5



Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a white solid (38% yield):

- 10 $^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 11.07 (m, 1H), 8.85 (m, 1H), 8.30 (br s, 1), 7.95 (br s, 1H), 7.86 (d, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 7.41 (m, 3), 7.24 (d, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 7.20 (d, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 4.13 (s, 1.5H), 4.08 (s, 1.5H), 3.96 (t, $J = 5.6$ Hz, 1H), 3.78 (t, $J = 5.6$ Hz, 1H), 3.71 (t, $J = 5.6$ Hz, 1H), 3.54 (t, $J = 5.6$ Hz, 1H), 3.09 (t, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.04 (t, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.81 (q, $J = 7.58$ Hz, 2H), 2.53 (t, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.47 (t, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 1H),
15 1.35 (t, $J = 7.6$ Hz, 1.5H), 1.31 (t, $J = 7.6$ Hz, 1.5H).

LCMS: m/e 539 ($M+H$) $^+$.

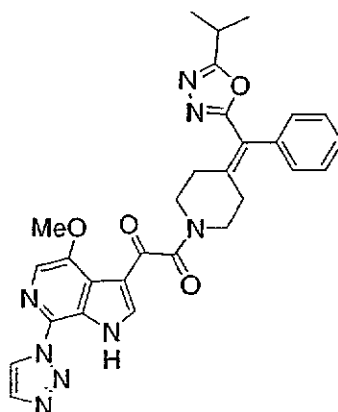
20

25

Example 75

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-isopropyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-[4-methoxy-7-(1,2,3-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl]-ethane-1,2-dione:

5



Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a white solid (50% yield):

10 $^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 11.08 (m, 1H), 8.80 (m, 1H), 8.30 (t, $J=3.0$ Hz, 1H), 7.94 (br s, 1H), 7.86 (d, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 7.41 (m, 3), 7.24 (d, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 7.20 (d, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 4.14 (s, 1.5H), 4.10 (s, 1.5H), 3.96 (t, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.78 (t, $J=5.6$ Hz, 1H), 3.71 (t, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.54 (t, $J=5.6$ Hz, 1H), 3.10 (m, 1H), 3.08 (t, $J=5.6$ Hz, 1H), 3.03 (t, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.54 (t, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.48 (t, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 1.35 (d, $J=7.1$ Hz, 3H), 1.32 (d, $J=7.1$ Hz, 3H).

15 LCMS: m/e 553 ($M+H$) $^+$.

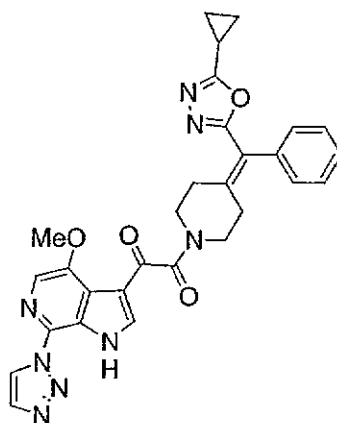
20

25

Example 76

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-cyclopropyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-[4-methoxy-7-(1,2,3-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl]-ethane-1,2-dione:

5



Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a white solid (45% yield):

- 10 $^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 11.07 (m, 1H), 8.80 (m, 1H), 8.30 (t, $J = 3.0$ Hz, 1H), 7.93 (br s, 1H), 7.86 (d, $J = 5.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.40 (m, 3H), 7.22 (d, $J = 6.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.18 (d, $J = 6.6$ Hz, 1H), 4.11 (s, 1.5H), 4.10 (s, 1.5H), 3.95 (t, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.77 (t, $J = 5.5$ Hz, 1H), 3.70 (t, $J = 5.5$ Hz, 1H), 3.53 (t, $J = 5.5$ Hz, 1H), 3.07 (t, $J = .56$ Hz, 1H), 3.02 (t, $J = 5.5$ Hz, 1H), 2.52 (t, $J = 5.5$ Hz, 1H), 2.46 (t, $J = 5.5$ Hz, 1H), 2.08 (m, 1H),
15 1.07 (m, 4H).

LCMS: m/e 551 ($M+H$) $^+$.

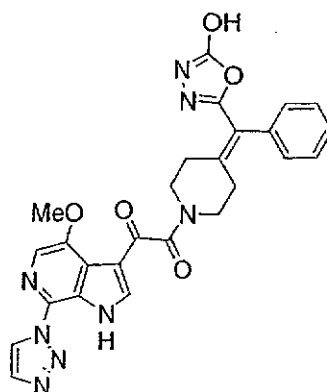
20

25

Example 77

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-hydroxy-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-[4-methoxy-7-(1,2,3-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl]-ethane-1,2-dione:

5



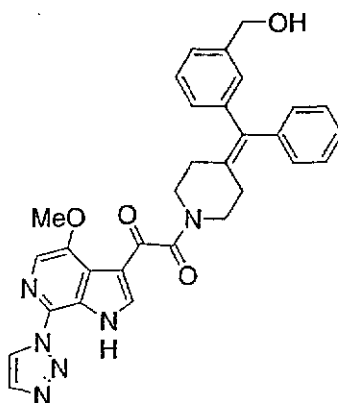
Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a white solid (6% yield):

- 10 $^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 11.08 (m, 1H m), 8.74 (m, 1H), 8.29 (t, $J=3.0$ Hz, 1H), 7.92 (br s, 1H), 7.86 (d, $J=8.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.42 (m, 3H), 7.23 (d, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 7.19 (d, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 4.14 (s, 1.5H), 4.09 (s, 1.5H), 3.94 (t, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.76 (t, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.69 (t, $J=5.6$ Hz, 1H), 3.52 (t, $J=5.6$ Hz, 1H), 3.04 (t, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.99 (t, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.46 (t, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.40 (t, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H).
- 15 LCMS: m/e 527 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Example 78

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(3-hydroxymethylphenyl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-[4-methoxy-7-(1,2,3-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl]-ethane-1,2-dione:

20



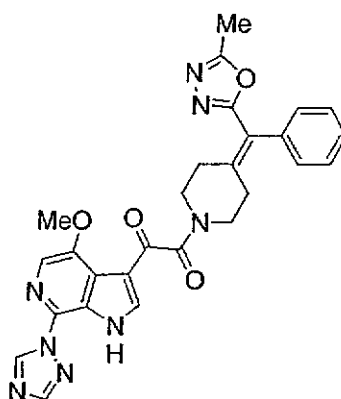
Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a white solid (46% yield):

¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ11.02 (m, 1H), 8.75 (br s, 1H), 8.26 (t, J= 3.0 Hz, 1H), 7.92 (br s, 1H), 7.86 (s, 1H), 7.32 (m, 4H), 7.15 (m, 5H), 4.71 (s, 1H), 4.66 (s, 1H), 4.12 (s, 3H), 3.81 (t, J= 5.5 Hz, 2H), 3.54 (t, J= 5.5 Hz, 2H), 2.54 (t, J= 5.5 Hz, 2H), 2.46 (t, J= 5.5 Hz, 2H).

LCMS: m/e 549 (M+H)⁺.

Example 79

- 10 **Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-methyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-[4-methoxy-7-(1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl]-ethane-1,2-dione:**



15

Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a white solid (50% yield):

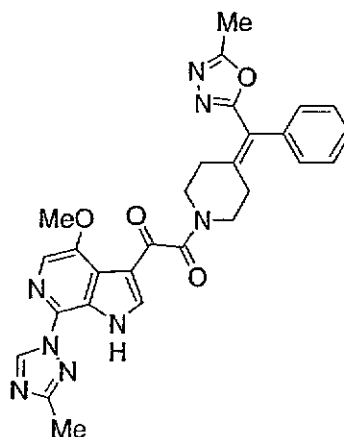
¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ10.98 (m, 1H), 8.27 (d, J= 3.5 Hz, 1H), 8.26 (d, J= 3.5 Hz, 1H), 7.80 (d, J= 5.0 Hz, 1H), 7.42 (m, 3H), 7.24 (d, J= 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.20 (d, J= 8.1 Hz, 1H), 4.08 (s, 3H), 3.95 (t, J= 6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.77 (t, J= 5.5 Hz, 1H), 3.70 (t, J= 5.5 Hz, 1H), 3.53 (t, J= 5.5 Hz, 1H), 3.09 (t, J= 6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.04 (t, J= 6.1 Hz, 1H), 2.52 (t, J= 5.5 Hz, 1H), 2.50 (s, 1.5H), 2.46 (s, 1.5H), 2.46 (t, J= 5.5 Hz, 1H),

LCMS: m/e 525 (M+H)⁺.

25

Example 80

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-methyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-[4-methoxy-7-(3-methyl-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl]-ethane-1,2-dione:



Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a white solid (73% yield):

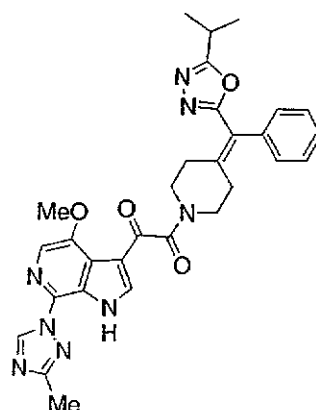
- 10 $^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 11.01 (s, 0.5H), 11.00 (s, 0.5H), 9.10 (s, 0.5H), 9.09 (s, 0.5H), 8.21 (m, 1H), 7.74 (s, 0.5H), 7.73 (s, 0.5H), 7.39 (m, 3H), 7.19 (m, 2H), 4.04 (s, 3H), 3.92 (t, J=6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.74 (t, J=6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.67 (dd, J=5.6, 6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.49 (dd, J=5.6, 6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.06 (t, J=6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.00 (dd, J=5.6, 6.1 Hz, 1H), 2.56 (s, 1.5H), 2.55 (s, 1.5H), 2.49 (m, 1H), 2.47 (s, 1.5H), 2.43 (s, 1.5H), 2.42 (m, 1H).

LCMS: m/e 539 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Example 81

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-isopropyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-[4-methoxy-7-(3-methyl-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl]-ethane-1,2-dione:

5



Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a white solid (54% yield):

10 $^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 11.02 (s, 0.5H), 11.00 (s, 0.5H), 9.11 (s, 0.5H), 9.10 (s, 0.5H), 8.21 (dd, $J = 3.0, 5.6$ Hz, 1H), 7.74 (s, 0.5), 7.73 (s, 0.5H), 7.37 (m, 3H), 7.18 (m, 2H), 4.03 (s, 3H), 3.92 (t, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.75 (dd, $J = 5.6, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.66 (dd, $J = 5.6, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.49 (dd, $J = 5.6, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.08 (m, 1H), 3.05 (m, 1H), 2.99 (t, $J = 5.6$ Hz, 1H), 2.56 (s, 1.5H), 2.55 (s, 1.5H), 2.50 (dd, $J = 5.6, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.44 (t, $J = 5.6$ Hz, 1H), 1.30 (m, 6H).

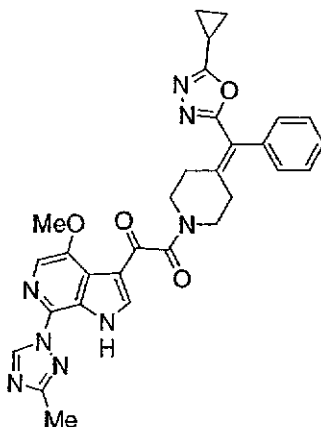
LCMS: m/e 567 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

20

25

Example 82

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-cyclopropyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-[4-methoxy-7-(3-methyl-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl]-ethane-1,2-dione:



Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a white solid (51% yield):

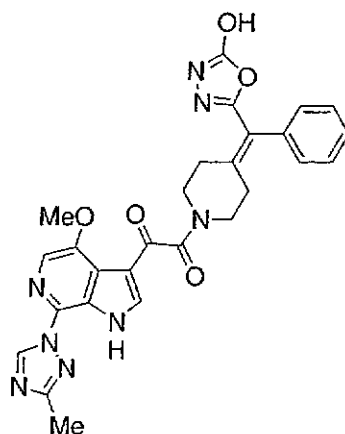
- 10 $^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 11.02 (s, 0.5H), 11.01 (s, 0.5H), 9.10 (s, 0.5H) 9.09 (s, 0.5H), 8.21 (d, $J=3.0$ Hz, 0.5H), 8.19 (d, $J=3.0$ Hz, 0.5H), 7.73 (s, 0.5H), 7.72 (s, 0.5H), 7.43-7.29 (m, 3H), 7.19-7.14 (m, 2H), 4.03 (s, 3H), 3.91 (dd, $J=5.6, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.74 (m, 1H), 3.65 (m, 1H), 3.48 (t, $J=5.6$ Hz, 1H), 3.03 (t, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.98 (dd, $J=5.6, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.55 (s, 1.5H), 2.54 (s, 1.5H), 2.48 (t, $J=6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.42
- 15 (dd, $J=5.6, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.05 (m, 1H), 1.03 (m, 4H).

LCMS: m/e 565 ($M+H$) $^+$.

Example 83

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-hydroxy-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-[4-methoxy-7-(3-methyl-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl]-ethane-1,2-dione:

5



Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a white solid (52% yield):

- 10 $^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 11.03 (s, 0.5H), 11.01 (s, 0.5H), 9.10 (s, 0.5H), 9.09 (s, 0.5H), 8.23 (d, $J = 3.0$ Hz, 0.5H), 8.21 (d, $J = 3.0$ Hz, 0.5H), 7.76 (s, 0.5H), 7.74 (s, 0.5H), 7.45-7.30 (m, 3H), 7.20-7.14 (m, 2H), 4.04 (s, 3H), 3.90 (dd, $J = 5.6, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.72 (m, 1H), 3.64 (m, 1H), 3.47 (m, 1H), 3.00 (dd, $J = 5.6, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.95 (dd, $J = 5.6, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.56 (s, 1.5H), 2.55 (s, 1.5H), 2.42 (t, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.36 (t, $J = 5.6$ Hz, 1H), 1.68 (br s 1H).

LCMS: m/e 541 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

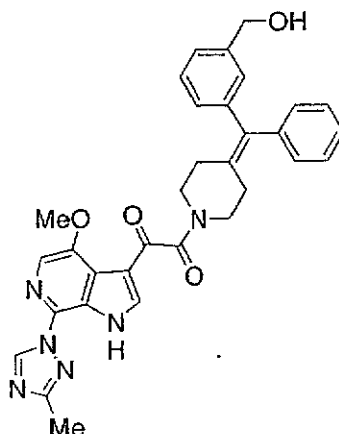
20

25

Example 84

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(3-hydroxymethylphenyl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-[4-methoxy-7-(3-methyl-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl]-ethane-1,2-dione:

5



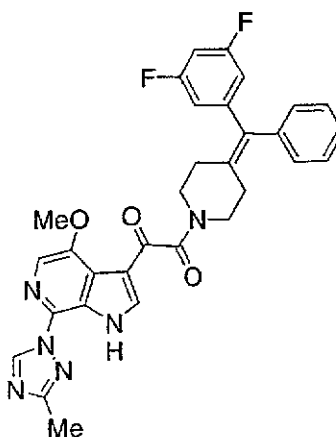
Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a white solid (36% yield):

- 10 $^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 10.99 (s, 1H), 9.09 (s, 1H), 8.20 (d, $J = 3.0$ Hz, 1H), 7.74 (s, 1H), 7.35-7.03 (m, 9H), 4.67 (s, 1H), 4.62 (s, 1H), 4.05 (s, 3H), 3.77 (t, $J = 5.6$ Hz, 2H), 3.50 (m, 2H), 2.55 (s, 3H), 2.50 (m, 2H), 2.42 (m, 2H), 1.55 (br s, 1H).
LCMS: m/e 563 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

15

Example 85

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(3,5-difluorophenyl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-[4-methoxy-7-(3-methyl-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl]-ethane-1,2-dione:



20

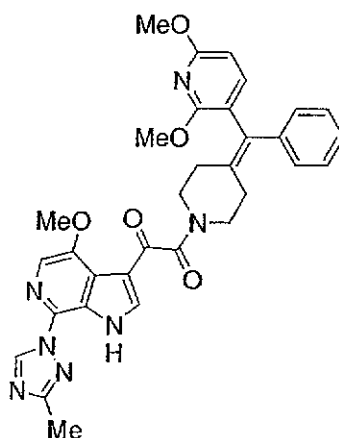
Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a white solid (57% yield):

¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 11.00 (s, 1H), 9.10 (s, 1H), 8.21 (m, 1H), 7.74 (s, 1H), 7.37-7.20 (m, 3H), 7.09 (m, 2H), 6.73-6.60 (m, 3H), 4.05 (s, 3H), 3.78 (m, 2H), 3.51 (m, 2H), 2.55 (s, 3H), 2.50 (m, 2H), 2.42 (m, 2H).

LCMS: m/e 569 (M+H)⁺.

Example 86

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(2,5-dimethoxypridin-3-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-[4-methoxy-7-(3-methyl-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl]-ethane-1,2-dione:



Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a white solid (24% yield):

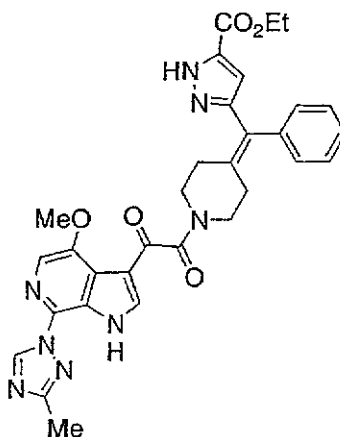
¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 10.99 (s, 1H), 9.09 (s, 1H), 8.19 (dd, J= 2.0, 3.5 Hz, 1H), 7.74 (d, J= 1.5 Hz, 1H), 7.31-7.08 (m, 6H), 6.27 (d, J= 8.1 Hz, 0.5H), 6.22 (d, J= 8.1 Hz, 0.5H), 4.05 (s, 3H), 3.91 (s, 1.5H), 3.90 (s, 1.5H), 3.87 (s, 1.5H), 3.85 (s, 1.5H), 3.78 (m, 2H), 3.51 (m, 2H), 2.55 (s, 3H), 2.51 (br s, 1H), 2.44 (br s, 1H), 2.32 (br s, 1H), 2.24 (m, 1H).

LCMS m/e 594 (M+H)⁺.

Example 87

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-carboxyethyl-pyrazin-3-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-[4-methoxy-7-(3-methyl-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl]-ethane-1,2-dione:

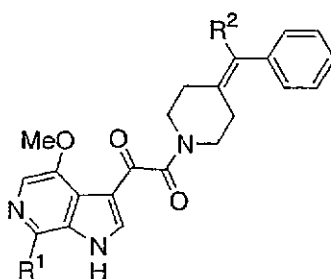
5

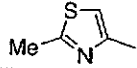
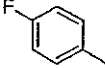
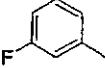
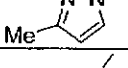
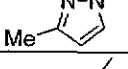
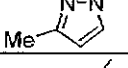
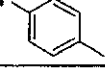
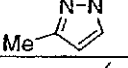
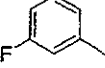
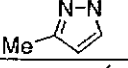
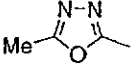
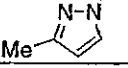
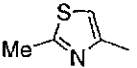


Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound as a beige solid (56% yield):

- 10 $^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 11.02 (s, 0.5H), 11.01 (s, 0.5H), 9.09 (s, 0.5H), 9.08 (s, 0.5H), 8.21 (m, 1H), 7.74 (s, 0.5), 7.73 (s, 0.5H), 7.41-7.24 (m, 3H), 7.14 (m, 2H), 6.68 (s, 0.5H), 6.63 (s, 0.5H), 4.36 (m, 2H), 4.04 (s, 3H), 3.85 (t, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.75 (dd, $J = 5.6, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.60 (t, $J = 5.6$ Hz, 1H), 3.50 (dd, $J = 5.6, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.81 (dd, $J = 5.6, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.75 (dd, $J = 5.6, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.55 (s, 1.5H), 2.54 (s, 1.5H),
 15 2.48 (dd, $J = 5.6, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.41 (t, $J = 5.6$ Hz, 1H), 1.60 (br s, 1H), 1.36 (m, 3H).
 LCMS: m/e 595 ($M+H$) $^+$.

TABLE 2: Representative 4-methoxy-7-substituted-6-azaindole derivatives

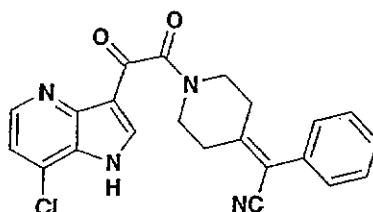


Example	R ¹	R ²	LCMS: m/e (M+H) ⁺
88		Br	522
89		Br	533
90			537
91			551
92			521
93			548
94			548
95			539
96			534
97			550
98			550
99			538
100			553

Example 101

Preparation of {1-[2-(7-Chloro-1H-pyrrolo[3,2-b]pyridin-3-yl)-2-oxo-acetyl]-piperidin-4-ylidene}-phenyl-acetonitrile

5



To a solution of (7-chloro-1H-pyrrolo[3,2-b]pyridin-3-yl)-oxo-acetic acid (1.5 g, 6.7 mmol) and phenylpiperidine-4-ylidene acetonitrile (1.3 g, 6.7 mmol) in DMF (50 mL) was added DEPBT (3.15 g, 10.5 mmol) and ethyl diisopropylamine (6.1 mL, 35

10

mmol). The solution was stirred 20h, concentrated under vacuum and partitioned between 5% Na₂CO₃(aq) (80 mL) and EtOAc (5 x 100 mL). The combine organic layers were dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated. The residue was purified by

5 preparative HPLC to yield the title compound (300 mg, 0.74 mmol, 11%) as a yellow solid.

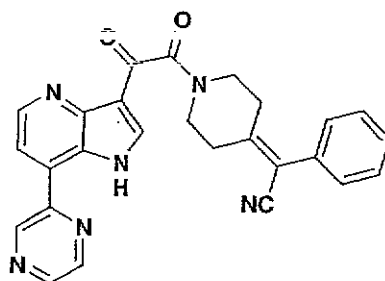
¹HNMR (500 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 8.80 (s, 0.5H), 8.80 (s, 0.5H), 8.64 (d, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 0.5H), 8.61 (d, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 0.5H), 7.90 (d, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 0.5H), 7.87 (d, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 0.5H), 7.49–7.30 (m, 5H), 3.96 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.79 (t, *J* = 5.8 Hz, 1H),
10 3.77 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.60 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.97 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.88 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.65 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.56 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H).

LCMS: *m/e* 405 (M+H)⁺.

15

Example 102

{1-[2-Oxo-2-(7-pyrazin-2-yl-1H-pyrrolo[3,2-*b*]pyridin-3-yl)-acetyl]-piperidin-4-ylidene}-phenyl-acetonitrile



20

A mixture of **compound of Example 101** (30 mg, 0.074 mmol), 2-tributylstannanyl pyrazine (82 mg, 0.22 mmol), Pd(PPh₃)₄ (88 mg, 0.076 mmol) and dioxane (1 mL) in a sealed tube was heated at 140 °C for 15 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with MeOH, filtered through Celite and concentrated. The residue was purified by
25 preparative HPLC to yield **title compound** (2.6 mg, 0.0058 mmol, 9%) as a yellow oil.

¹HNMR (500 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 9.65 (s, 0.5H), 9.64 (s, 0.5H), 8.98 (br s, 1H), 8.87 (br s, 1H), 8.81 (d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 0.5H), 8.78 (d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 0.5H), 9.77 (s, 0.5H), 8.76 (s, 0.5H), 8.50 (d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 0.5H), 8.47 (d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 0.5H), 7.52–7.31 (m, 5H), 3.99
30 (t, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.83 (t, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.80 (t, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.64 (t, *J* = 6.1

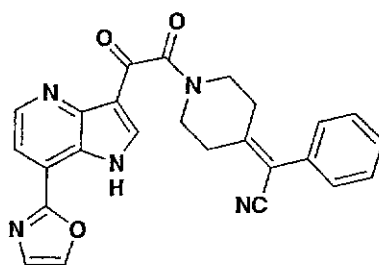
Hz, 1H), 2.99 (t, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.91 (t, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.67 (t, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.59 (t, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 1H).

LCMS: m/e 449 ($M+H$)⁺.

5

Example 103

{1-[2-(7-Oxazol-2-yl-1H-pyrrolo[3,2-b]pyridin-3-yl)-2-oxo-acetyl]-piperidin-4-ylidene}-phenyl-acetonitrile



10

A mixture of **compound of example 101** (30 mg, 0.074 mmol), 2-tributylstannanyl oxazole (106 mg, 0.30 mmol), Pd(PPh₃)₄ (129 mg, 0.112 mmol) and dioxane (1 mL) in a sealed tube was heated at 120 °C for 15 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with MeOH, filtered through Celite and concentrated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC to yield **title compound** (11.3 mg, 0.026 mmol, 39%) as a yellow oil.

15

¹HNMR (500 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 8.80 (d, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 0.5H), 8.78 (s, 0.5H), 8.78 (s, 0.5H), 8.77 (d, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 0.5H), 8.38 (br s, 1H), 8.36 (br s, 1H), 8.32 (d, $J = 5.8$ Hz, 0.5H), 8.29 (d, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 0.5H), 7.73 (br s, 0.5H), 7.72 (br s, 0.5H), 7.50–7.32 (m, 5H), 3.98 (t, $J = 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.83 (dd, $J = 6.1, 5.5$ Hz, 1H), 3.79 (dd, $J = 6.1, 5.8$ Hz, 1H), 3.64 (t, $J = 5.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.98 (dd, $J = 6.1, 5.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.91 (t, $J = 5.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.66 (dd, $J = 6.1, 5.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.58 (t, $J = 5.8$ Hz, 1H).

20

LCMS: m/e 438 ($M+H$)⁺.

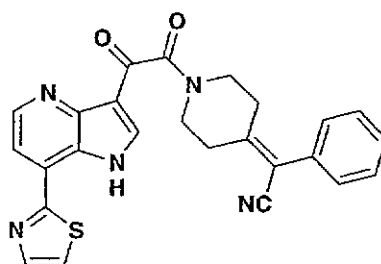
25

30

Example 104

{1-[2-Oxo-2-(7-thiazol-2-yl-1H-pyrrolo[3,2-b]pyridin-3-yl)-acetyl]-piperidin-4-ylidene}-phenyl-acetonitrile

5

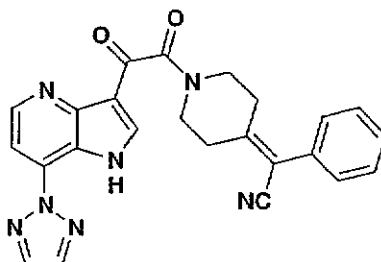


A mixture of **Example 101** (30 mg, 0.074 mmol), 2-tributylstannanyl thiazole (111 mg, 0.30 mmol), Pd(PPh₃)₄ (172 mg, 0.149 mmol) and dioxane (1 mL) in a sealed tube was heated at 120 °C for 15 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with MeOH, filtered through Celite and concentrated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC to yield **title compound** (5.6 mg, 0.012 mmol, 19%) as an orange solid. LCMS: m/e 454 (M+H)⁺.

15

Example 105

{1-[2-Oxo-2-(7-[1,2,3]triazol-2-yl-1H-pyrrolo[3,2-b]pyridin-3-yl)-acetyl]-piperidin-4-ylidene}-phenyl-acetonitrile



20

A mixture of **compound of example 101** (34 mg, 0.084 mmol), 1,2,3-triazole (0.40 mL, 6.9 mmol), copper metal (5.4 mg, 0.084 mmol), and K₂CO₃ (11.5 mg, 0.083 mmol) in a sealed tube was heated at 160 °C for 5 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with MeOH (2 mL), filtered through Celite and concentrated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC to yield **title compound** (3.1 mg, 0.026 mmol, 39%) as a yellow solid.

25

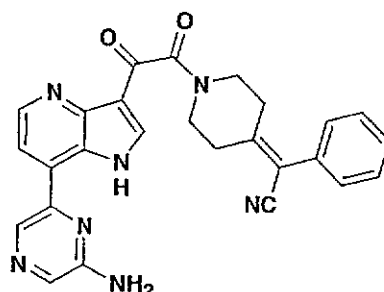
¹HNMR (500 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 8.80-8.67 (m, 3H), 8.45-8.35 (m, 3H), 7.52-7.30 (m, 5H), 3.98 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.84 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.5 Hz, 1H), 3.80 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.65 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.99 (dd, *J* = 6.7, 5.2 Hz, 1H), 2.92 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.67 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.59 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.5 Hz, 1H).

5 LCMS: *m/e* 438 (M+H)⁺.

Example 106

(1-{2-[7-(6-Amino-pyrazin-2-yl)-1H-pyrrolo[3,2-b]pyridin-3-yl]-2-oxo-acetyl}-piperidin-4-ylidene)-phenyl-acetonitrile

10



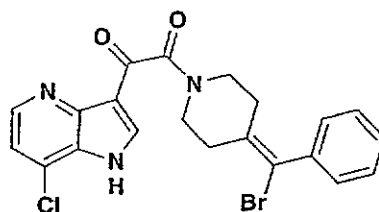
A mixture of compound of example 101 (35 mg, 0.087 mmol), 5-tri-*n*-butylstannanypyrazine-2-ylamine (135 mg, 0.35 mmol), Pd(PPh₃)₄ (202 mg, 0.174 mmol) and dioxane (1 mL) in a sealed tube was heated at 160 °C for 0.5 h with microwaves. The reaction mixture was diluted with MeOH, filtered through Celite and concentrated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC to yield **title compound** (9.2 mg, 0.020 mmol, 23%) as an orange solid.

¹HNMR (500 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 8.80 (s, 0.5H), 8.79 (s, 0.5H), 8.77 (s, 0.5H), 8.77 (s, 0.5H), 8.72 (d, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 0.5H), 8.69 (d, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 0.5H), 8.45 (d, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 0.5H), 8.45 (d, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 0.5H), 8.16 (s, 0.5H), 8.15 (s, 0.5H), 7.50-7.32 (m, 5H), 3.99 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.85 (t, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.80 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.66 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.5 Hz, 1H), 2.98 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.93 (t, *J* = 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.66 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.60 (t, *J* = 5.8 Hz, 1H).

25 LCMS: *m/e* 464 (M+H)⁺.

Example 107

1-[4-(Bromo-phenyl-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(7-chloro-1H-pyrrolo
[3,2-b]pyridin-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione



5

To a solution of (7-chloro-1H-pyrrolo[3,2-b]pyridin-3-yl)-oxo-acetic acid (191 mg, 0.87 mmol), 4-(bromophenylmethylene)-piperidine hydrochloride salt (245 mg, 0.85 mmol) and diisopropylethylamine (440 mg, 3.4 mmol) in chloroform (10 mL) was added BOPCl (261 mg, 1.02 mmol). The reaction solution was stirred two days, treated with additional diisopropylethylamine (440 mg, 3.4 mmol) and BOPCl (130 mg, 0.50 mmol) and stirred three days. The reaction mixture was concentrated, dissolved into MeOH and purified by preparative HPLC to yield **title compound shown** (293 mg, 0.64 mmol, 75%) as a white solid.

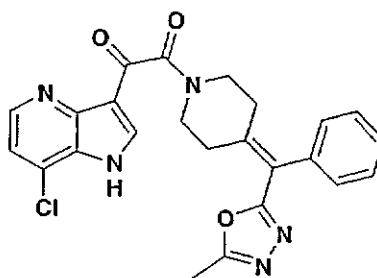
¹HNMR (500 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.77 (d, *J* = 5.5 Hz, 0.5H), 8.75-8.72 (m, 0.5H), 8.72 (s, 0.5H), 8.71 (s, 0.5H), 7.69-7.61 (m, 1H), 7.38-7.20 (m, 5H), 3.80 (t, *J* = 5.5 Hz, 1H), 3.67 (br s, 1H), 3.58 (t, *J* = 5.5 Hz, 1H), 3.48 (br s, 1H), 2.78 (t, *J* = 5.5 Hz, 1H), 2.68 (br s, 1H), 2.39 (t, *J* = 5.5 Hz, 1H), 2.32 (br s, 1H),

LCMS: *m/e* 458 (M+H)⁺.

20

Example 108

1-(7-Chloro-1H-pyrrolo[3,2-b]pyridin-3-yl)-2-{4-[(5-methyl-[1,3,4]oxadiazol-2-yl)-phenyl-methylene]-piperidin-1-yl}-ethane-1,2-dione

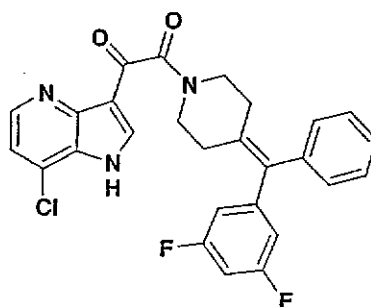


25

- 4-[(5-Methyl-[1,3,4]oxadiazol-2-yl)-phenyl-methylene]-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (30 mg, 0.085 mmol) was stirred with 4.0M HCl in dioxane (2.0 mL) for 2h and then concentrated under vacuum. The resulting residue, (7-chloro-1H-pyrrolo[3,2-b]pyridin-3-yl)-oxo-acetic acid (27 mg, 0.12 mmol), and
- 5 diisopropylethylamine (0.5 mL, 2.9 mmol) were dissolved into chloroform (2 mL) and treated with added BOPCl (34 mg, 0.13 mmol). The reaction solution was stirred three days, concentrated, dissolved into MeOH and purified by preparative HPLC to yield the TFA salt of **title compound shown** (43 mg, 0.075 mmol, 89%) as an off-white solid.
- 10 ¹HNMR (500 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 8.78 (s, 0.5H), 8.77 (s, 0.5H), 8.61 (d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 0.5H), 8.59 (d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 0.5H), 7.86 (d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 0.5H), 7.84(d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 0.5H), 7.46–7.18 (m, 5H), 3.92 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.79 (t, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.75 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.62 (t, *J* = 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.03 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.94 (t, *J* = 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.54 (dd, *J* = 6.1, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.48 (s, 1.5H), 2.43 (s, 1.5H), 2.48–
- 15 2.42 (m, 1H).
LCMS: *m/e* 462 (M+H)⁺.

Example 109

- 20 **1-(7-Chloro-1H-pyrrolo[3,2-b]pyridin-3-yl)-2-{4-[(3,5-difluoro-phenyl)-phenyl-methylene]-piperidin-1-yl}-ethane-1,2-dione**



- 4-[(3,5-Difluoro-phenyl)-phenyl-methylene]-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (29 mg, 0.074 mmol) was stirred with 4.0M HCl in dioxane (2.0 mL) for 2h and then concentrated under vacuum. The resulting residue, (7-chloro-1H-pyrrolo[3,2-b]pyridin-3-yl)-oxo-acetic acid (27 mg, 0.12 mmol), and diisopropylethylamine (0.5 mL, 2.9 mmol) were dissolved into chloroform (2 mL) and treated with added BOPCl

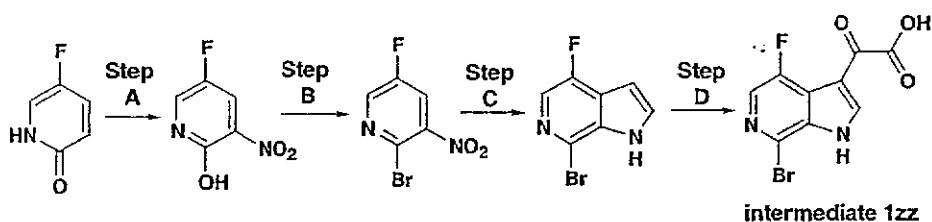
(34 mg, 0.13 mmol). The reaction solution was stirred three days, concentrated, dissolved into MeOH and purified by preparative HPLC to yield the TFA salt of **title compound shown** (37 mg, 0.061 mmol, 83%) as a white solid.

¹HNMR (500 MHz, CD₃OD) δ 8.71 (s, 0.5H), 8.70 (s, 0.5H), 8.59 (d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 0.5H), 8.58 (d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 0.5H), 7.80 (d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 0.5H), 7.79 (d, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 0.5H), 7.39–7.12 (m, 5H), 6.87–6.71 (m, 3H), 3.81 (p, *J* = 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.60 (p, *J* = 5.6 Hz, 1H), 2.52 (p, *J* = 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.41 (p, *J* = 6.0 Hz, 1H),
LCMS: *m/e* 492 (M+H)⁺.

10

Intermediate 1zz

Intermediate 1zz, was prepared according to the following scheme:



A) fuming HNO₃, H₂SO₄;

B) POBr₂/DMF, 110°C;

C) vinylmagnesium bromide, THF, -78°C ~ -20°C

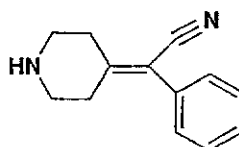
D) AlCl₃, methylethylimidazolium chloride, ClCOCO₂Me

15

Intermediate 1zz was isolated as a white solid. LC/MS: (ES⁺) *m/z* (M+H)⁺ = 289. Rt = 0.85min.

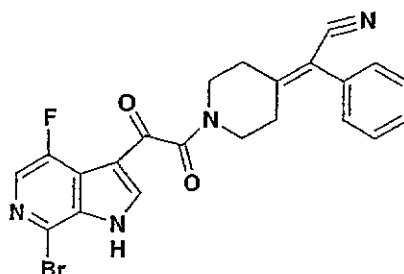
Intermediate 2zz

20



The title compound was prepared according to general procedures described before.

25

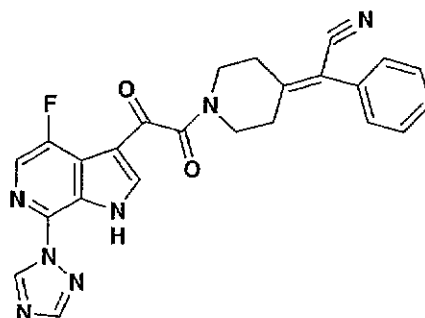
Intermediate 3zz

- 5 A mixture of intermediate 1zz(760mg, 2.65 mmol), Intermediate 2zz (577mg, 2.92mmol), HOBT (811mg, 5.30mmol) EDAC (1.0g, 5.30mmol) and NMM (1.80ml, 15.90mmol) in DMF (5.0ml) was stirred at room temperature for 20hr. The resulting solution was diluted with ethylacetate (30ml), then washed with water (25ml x 2) and brine (20ml). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and
- 10 concentrated. The residue was crystallized in methanol. After filtration, the solid was dried in air to afford the title compound (385mg, 31%). ¹H NMR (300MHz, CDCl₃): 9.41(bs,1H); 8.27-8.26(m, 1H); 8.12-8.10(m, 1H); 7.44-7.25(m, 5H); 3.95-2.59(m, 8H). LC/MS: (ES⁺) m/z(m+H)⁺ = 469. Rt = 1.52 min.

15

Example 110

{1-[2-(4-Fluoro-7-[1,2,4]triazol-1-yl-1H-pyrrolo[2,3-c]pyridin-3-yl)-2-oxo-acetyl]-piperidin-4-ylidene}-phenyl-acetonitrile



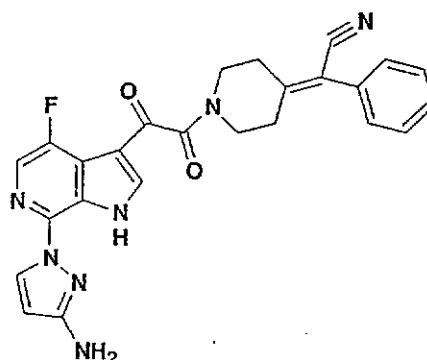
20

- The title compound was prepared from intermediate 3zz (300mg, 0.64mmol) following the procedure described before (Cu coupling) using the following reagents and amounts: 1,2,3-triazole (1.3g, 19.2mmol); potassium carbonate (88mg, 0.64mmol); Copper (41mg, 0.64mmol). Title compound was obtained as a brown
- 25 solid (78mg, 27%). ¹H NMR (500MHz, CDCl₃): 11.09(bs,1H); 9.28-9.27(m, 1H);

8.32-8.31(m, 1H); 8.22(m, 1H); 8.09-8.08(m, 1H); 7.49-7.25(m, 5H); 3.96-2.61(m, 8H). LC/MS: (ES⁺) m/z(m+H)⁺ = 456, Rt = 1.56min.

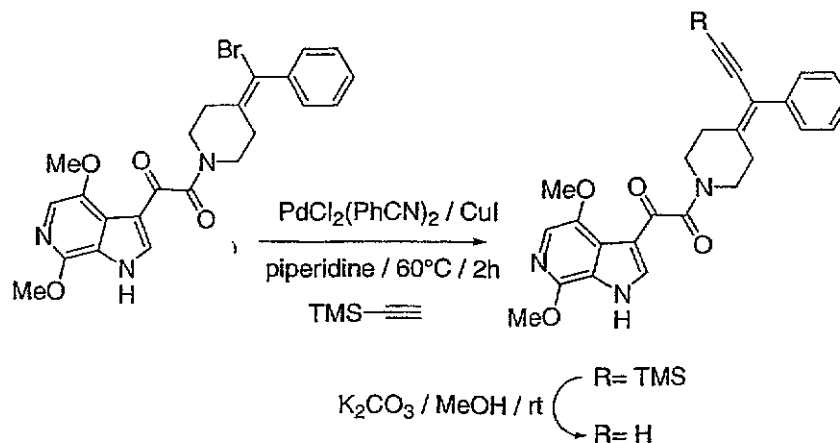
Example 111

- 5 (1-{2-[7-(3-Amino-pyrazol-1-yl)-4-fluoro-1H-pyrrolo[2,3-c]pyridin-3-yl]-2-oxo-acetyl}-piperidin-4-ylidene)-phenyl-acetonitrile



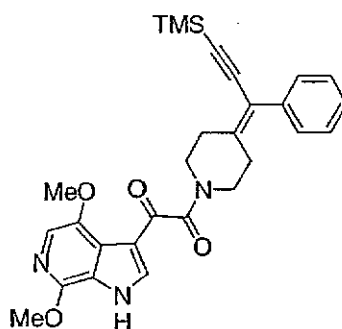
- 10 The title compound was prepared from intermediate 3zz (105mg, 0.22mmol) according to general procedures described before (Cu-coupling) using the following reagents and amounts: 3-aminopyrazole (450mg, 5.41mmol); potassium carbonate (50mg, 0.22mmol), copper (10mg, 0.25mmol). The compound was obtained as a yellow solid (13.6mg, 3.5%). ¹H NMR(300MHz, DMSO): 12.40(bs,1H); 8.37-8.29(m, 2H); 8.08-8.02(m, 1H); 7.55-7.35(m, 5H); 5.93-5.90(m, 1H); 3.85-2.49(m, 8H). LC/MS: (ES⁺) m/z(m+H)⁺ = 470, Rt = 1.57min.

SCHEME 31



Example 112

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(2-trimethylsilylethyn-1-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



5

As shown in Scheme 31 to a solution of 1-[4-(1-bromo-1-phenyl-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione (0.094 g, 0.195 mmol), $\text{PdCl}_2(\text{PhCN})_2$ (0.005 g, 0.0117 mmol), and CuI (0.005 g, 0.0252 mmol) in piperidine (1.5 mL) was added trimethylsilylacetylene (0.070 mL, 0.495 mmol). The mixture was heated at 60°C for 2 h and the solvent removed in vacuo. The residue was diluted with EtOAc and H_2O , the organic phase was separated and the aqueous phase was re-extracted with EtOAc (x2). The combined organic layers were washed, (H₂O, brine), dried (Na_2SO_4) and evaporated, and the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to give the title compound as a colorless solid (0.038 g, 39%).

15

^1H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 10.32 (s, br, 1H), 7.81 (d, J = 9.9 Hz, 1H), 7.33–7.15 (m, 6H), 3.89 and 3.87 (s, 3H), 3.82 and 3.81 (s, 3H), 3.59 (t, J = 6.0, 1H), 3.59 (dd, J = 5.3, 6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.50 (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.82, (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.75, (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.43, (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.35, (t, J = 5.8 Hz, 1H), 0.12 and 0.06 (s, 9H).

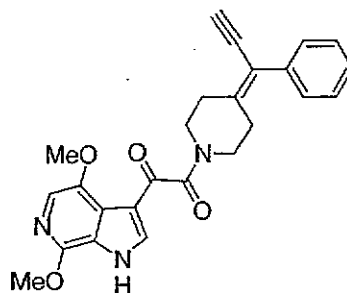
20

LCMS m/e 502 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$)⁺.

25

Example 113

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-ethynyl-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



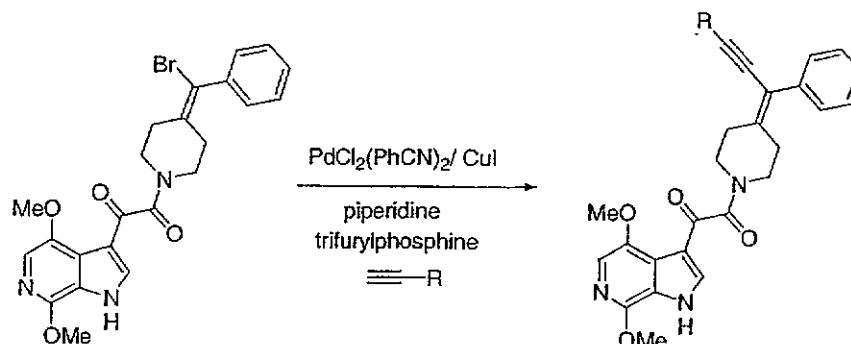
5

To a solution of 1-[4-(1-phenyl-1-(2-trimethylsilylethyn-1-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione (0.035 g, 0.0699 mmol) in MeOH (1 mL) was added K_2CO_3 (0.010 g, 0.0724 mmol) and the mixture was
 10 allowed to stir at room temperature for 6 h. The mixture was then evaporated and the residue was purified by preparative HPLC to give the title compound as a colorless solid (0.027 g, 91%).

^1H NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 10.16 (d, $J = 5.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.94 (dd, $J = 3.0, 9.1$ Hz, 1H), 7.35–7.18 (m, 6H), 3.92 and 3.91 (s, 3H), 3.83 (s, 3H), 3.82 (t, $J = 5.8$ Hz, 1H), 3.61
 15 (t, $J = 5.8$ Hz, 1H), 3.52 (dd, $J = 5.5, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.32 (t, $J = 5.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.84 (dd, $J = 5.8, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.76 (dd, $J = 5.8, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.45 (dd, $J = 5.8, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.37 (dd, $J = 5.8, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 1.85 (br s, 1H).

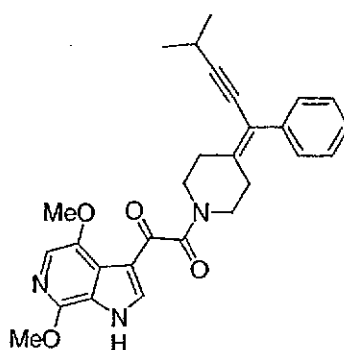
LCMS m/e 430 ($M+H$) $^+$.

SCHEME 47



Example 114

- 5 **Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(2-isopropylethyn-1-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:**



- 10 General Method: As shown in Scheme 47 to a mixture of 1-[4-(1-bromo-1-phenylmethylene)piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione (0.101 g, 0.208 mmol), $\text{PdCl}_2(\text{PhCN})_2$ (0.004 g, 0.0107 mmol), tri-2-furylphosphine (0.010 g, 0.045 mmol), CuI (0.004 g, 0.023 mmol) was added piperidine (2 mL), followed by isopropylacetylene (0.11 mL, 1.07 mmol). The mixture was heated in a sealed tube at 100°C for 3 h and the solvent was then removed in vacuo. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC to afford the title compound (0.212 g, 22%) as a light yellow solid:

- ^1H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ (1:1 mixture of rotamers) 8.02 and 7.99 (s, 1H), 7.45 and 7.43 (s, 1H), 7.37–7.23 (m, 6H), 4.04 and 4.03, (s, 3H), 3.93 and 3.92 (s, 3H), 3.84 (t, $J = 5.8$ Hz, 1H), 3.64 (dd, $J = 5.8, 6.0$ Hz, 1H), 3.57 (dd, $J = 5.5, 5.8$ Hz, 1H), 3.36 (dd, $J = 5.3, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.85 (dd, $J = 5.8, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.78 (t, $J = 5.6$ Hz, 1H),

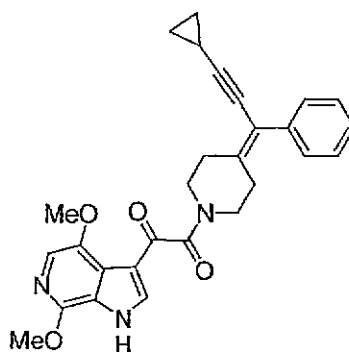
2.49 (t, $J = 5.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.73 and 2.67 (pent, $J = 6.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.49 (t, $J = 5.8$ Hz, 1H),
2.41 (t, $J = 5.6$ Hz, 1H), 1.21 and 1.14 (d, $J = 6.8$ Hz, 6H).

LCMS m/e 472 ($M+H$)⁺.

5 Compound Examples 115-118 are prepared according to the method of
Example 114.

Example 115

10 Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(2-cyclopropylethyn-1-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-
1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



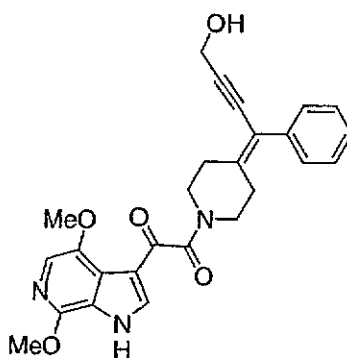
15 Prepared according to the general method to give the title compound (21% yield) as a
solid:

¹HNMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.17 and 9.16, (s, 1H), 8.02 and 8.01, (d, $J = 3.3$ Hz,
1H), 7.46 and 7.43 (s, 1H), 7.37–7.20 (m, 5H), 4.05 and 4.03 (s, 3H), 3.93 and 3.92
(s, 3H), 3.83 (dd, $J = 5.8, 6.0$ Hz, 1H), 3.63 (dd, $J = 5.5, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 3.56 (dd, $J = 5.6,$
6.0 Hz, 1H), 3.35 (dd, $J = 5.5, 5.8$ Hz, 1H), 2.83 (dd, $J = 5.8, 6.1$ Hz, 1H), 2.75 (t, $J =$
20 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.46 (dd, $J = 5.8, 6.0$ Hz, 1H), 2.38 (t, $J = 5.8$ Hz, 1H), 1.43–1.32 (m,
1H), 0.85–0.63 (m, 4H).

LCMS m/e 468 ($M+H$)⁺.

Example 116

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(2-hydroxymethylethyn-1-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



5

Prepared according to the general method to give, after crystallization from MeOH, the title compound (22% yield) as a solid:

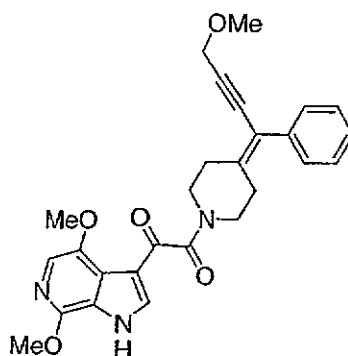
¹HNMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.08 and 8.05 (d J= 3.3 Hz, 1H), 8.02 (s, 1H), 7.44 (s, 1H), 7.39–7.36 (m, 1H), 7.33–7.23 (m, 5H), 4.44 and 4.38 (s, 2H), 4.05 and 4.04 (s, 3H), 3.95 and 3.94 (s, 3H), 3.85 (dd, J= 5.8, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 3.66 (t, J= 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.56 (t, J= 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.38 (dd, J= 5.5, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.89 (dd, J= 6.3, 5.6 Hz, 1H), 2.79 (dd, J= 5.8, 6.1 Hz, 1H), 2.50 (t, J= 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.41 (t, J= 5.8 Hz, 1H).

LCMS m/e 460 (M+H)⁺.

15

Example 117

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(2-methoxymethylethyn-1-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



20

Prepared according to the general method to give the title compound (59% yield) as a solid:

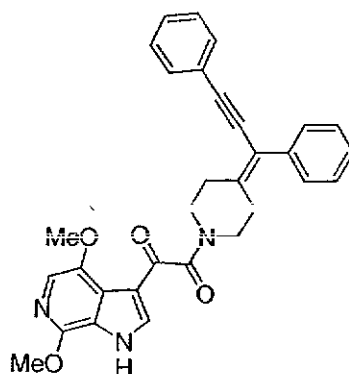
¹HNMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.19 and 9.14 (br s, 1H), 8.02 and 8.01 (d, J= 3.3 Hz, 1H), 7.46 and 7.44 (s, 1H), 7.39–7.23 (m, 5H), 4.28 and 4.22 (s, 1H), 4.05 and 4.04 (s, 3H), 3.93 and 3.92 (s, 3H), 3.90 (m, 1H), 3.85 (dd, J= 5.8, 6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.66 (dd, J= 5.8, 6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.58 (dd, J= 5.8, 5.6 Hz, 1H), 3.39 and 3.34 (s, 3H), 2.88 (dd, J= 5.8, 6.1 Hz, 1H), 2.81 (dd, J= 5.8, 5.6 Hz, 1H), 2.50 (dd, J= 5.8, 6.3 Hz, 1H), 2.43 (dd, J= 5.8, 5.6 Hz, 1H).

LCMS m/e 474 (M+H)⁺.

10

Example 118

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(2-phenylethyn-1-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



15

Prepared according to the general method to give the title compound (29% yield) as a solid:

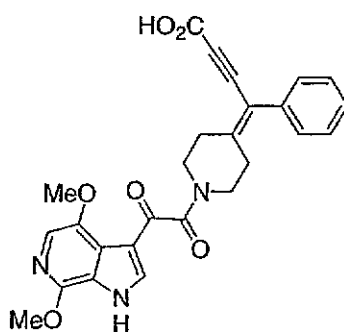
¹HNMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.10 (s, 1H), 8.04 and 8.02 (d, J= 3.3 Hz, 1H), 7.46–7.27 (m, 11H), 4.05 and 4.04, (s, 3H), 3.94 and 3.93 (s, 3H), 3.89 (m, 1H), 3.69 (t, J= 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.62 (dd, J= 5.5, 5.8 Hz, 1H), 3.41 (dd, J= 5.1, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 2.97 (dd, J= 5.8, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 2.90 (dd, J= 5.8, 5.5 Hz, 1H), 2.56 (t, J= 5.8 Hz, 1H), 2.49 (t, J= 5.8 Hz, 1H).

LCMS m/e 506 (M+H)⁺.

25

Example 119

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(2-carboxyethyn-1-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



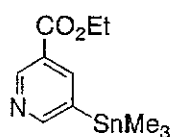
5

To a solution of LDA [prepared from $i\text{Pr}_2\text{NH}$ (0.15 mL, 1.070 mmol) and $n\text{-BuLi}$ (0.52 mL, 0.936 mmol)] in THF (3 mL) at -78°C under Ar was added 1-[4-(1-phenyl-1-ethynyl-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione (0.160 g, 0.373 mmol). The solution was allowed to stir for 30 min and then a large excess of powdered dry ice was added directly into the flask. The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature overnight and was then quenched with 10% aqueous HCl. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (x3) and the combined organic layers were washed (H_2O , brine), dried (Na_2SO_4) and concentrated. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC to afford the title compound as a colorless solid (0.026 g, 15%):

^1H NMR (400 MHz, CD_3OD) δ 8.15 and 8.12 (s, 1H), 7.42–7.26 (m, 6H), 4.04 and 4.03, (s, 3H), 3.90 (s, 3H), 3.86–3.88 (m 1H), 3.69 (dd, J = 5.3, 6.3 Hz, 1H), 3.59 (m, 1H), 3.42 (m, 1H), 3.13–3.11 (m, 1H), 2.97 (dd, J = 5.3, 6.1 Hz, 1H), 2.85 (dd, J = 5.1, 6.3 Hz, 1H), 2.54 (dd, J = 5.5, 6.4 Hz, 1H), 2.44 (dd, J = 5.1, 6.3 Hz, 1H).

LCMS m/e 474 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

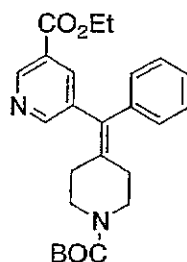
Preparation of 3-Trimethylstannyl-5-carboxyethylpyridine:



25

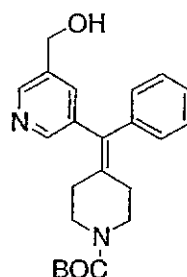
A mixture of 3-bromo-5-carboxyethylpyridine (0.108 g, 0.469 mmol), hexamethylditin (0.088 mL, 0.422 mmol) and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0.010 g, 0.008 mmol) in dry THF (2 mL) was degassed with a stream of Ar bubbles for 10 min. The reaction vessel was then sealed and the mixture was heated at 80°C (oil bath temperature) for 16 h. The cooled mixture was then evaporated to dryness and the residue chromatographed (SiO₂/ hexane-EtOAc, 1:1) to give the title compound (0.113 g, 77%) as a clear yellow oil:
LCMS: m/e 316 (M+H)⁺.

10 Preparation of 4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-carboxyethylpyridin-3-yl)-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:



15 A mixture of 3-trimethylstannyl-5-carboxyethylpyridine (0.298 g, 0.949 mmol) and 4-(1-bromo-1-phenyl-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.334 mL, 0.949 mmol) in dry THF (5 mL) was degassed with a stream of Ar bubbles for 10 min. To this solution was added bis(triphenylphosphine)palladium dichloride (0.033 g, 0.047 mmol) and then the reaction vessel was sealed and the mixture was
20 heated at 90°C (oil bath temperature) for 16 h. The cooled mixture was then evaporated to dryness and the residue chromatographed (SiO₂/ hexane-EtOAc, 7:3) to give the title compound (0.294 g, 73%) as a clear yellow oil:
¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.07 (s, 1H), 8.56 (s, 1H), 8.01 (s, 1H), 7.34-7.23 (m, 3H), 7.10 (m, 2H), 4.38 (m, 2H), 3.48 (s, 4H), 2.36 (s, 2H), 2.30 (s, 2H), 1.46 (s, 9H),
25 1.38 (m, 3H).
LCMS: m/e 423 (M+H)⁺.

Preparation of 4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-hydroxymethylpyridin-3-yl)-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester:



5

To a solution of 4-(1-phenyl-1-(5-carboxyethylpyridin-3-yl)-methylene)-piperidine-1-carboxylic acid tert-butyl ester (0.058 g, 0.137 mmol) in dry THF (2 mL) was added LAH (0.334 mL, 0.949 mmol) portionwise over 10 min. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for an additional 30 min and then it was quenched with a saturated aqueous solution of Rochelle's salt (5 mL). The resulting mixture was filtered and the filtrate concentrated to dryness to give the title compound (0.046 g, 87%) as a clear brown oil:

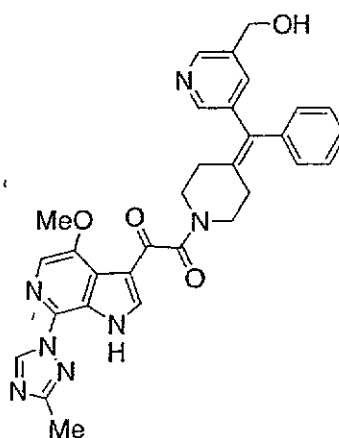
10

LCMS: m/e 381 ($M+H$)⁺.

15

Example 120

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-hydroxymethylpyridin-3-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-[4-methoxy-7-(3-methyl-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl]-ethane-1,2-dione:



20

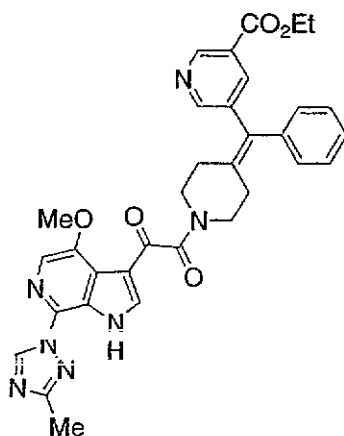
Prepared analogously to the general method of Example 70 to give the title compound as a white solid (8% yield):

¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 11.00 (s, 1H), 9.09 (s, 1H), 8.49-8.41 (m, 2H), 8.34 (s, 1H), 8.21 (s, 0.5H), 8.20 (s, 0.5H), 7.75 (s, 1H), 7.43-7.22 (m, 3H), 7.13-7.07 (m, 2H), 4.71 (s, 1H), 4.67 (s, 1H), 4.05 (s, 3H), 3.78 (m, 2H), 3.51 (m, 2H), 2.55 (s, 3H), 2.51-2.41 (m, 4H), 1.60 (br s, 1H).

LCMS: m/e 564 (M+H)⁺.

Example 121

- 10 Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Phenyl-1-(5-carboxyethylpyridin-3-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-[4-methoxy-7-(3-methyl-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-6-azaindol-3-yl]-ethane-1,2-dione:



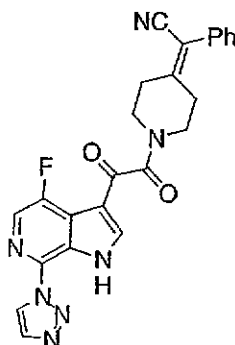
- 15 Prepared analogously to the general method of Example 70 to give the title compound as a white solid (12% yield):

¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 11.00 (s, 1H), 9.09 (s, 1H), 8.56 (m, 1H), 8.21 (s, 1H), 8.01 (m, 1H), 7.75 (s, 1H), 7.37-7.07 (m, 6H), 4.38 (q, J= 7.1 Hz, 2H), 4.05 (s, 3H), 3.79 (m, 2H), 3.53 (m, 2H), 2.65-2.40 (m, 4H), 2.55 (s, 3H), 1.38 (t, J= 7.1 Hz, 3H).

20 LCMS: m/e 606 (M+H)⁺.

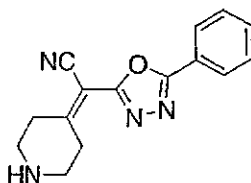
Additional Experimental procedures**Example 129a**

5 {1-[2-(4-Fluoro-7-[1,2,3]triazol-1-yl-1H-pyrrolo[2,3-c]pyridin-3-yl)-2-oxo-acetyl]-piperidin-4-ylidene}-phenyl-acetonitrile



10 **Example 129a** was prepared analogously to **Example 110**.

Preparation of 4-[1-Cyano-1-(5-phenyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)-methylene]-piperidine:



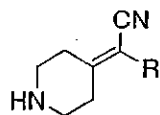
15 To a mixture of N-Boc-4-piperidone (0.200 g, 1.00 mmol) and 2-(cyanomethyl)-5-phenyl-1,3,4-oxadiazole in dry THF (5 mL), at 5°C under Ar, was added NaHMDS solution (1M in THF, 1.1 mL, 1.1 mmol) and the mixture was then stirred at room temperature for 16 h. The reaction was quenched with MeOH (1 mL) and then the mixture was evaporated to dryness. The residue was taken up in HCl-dioxane (4 M,

20 2 mL) and the reaction mixture was kept at room temperature for 20 h before again being evaporated to dryness. The residue was taken up in EtOAc, washed (sat. NaHCO₃ x2, brine), dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to give the title compound (0.212 g, 80%) as a dark red semi-solid, which was used as such in the next step:

LCMS m/e 267 (M+H)⁺.

25

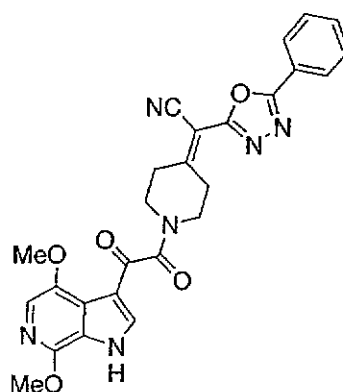
TABLE X: Representative cyanovinylpiperidine intermediates



Example	R	Yield (%)	LCMS: m/e (M+H) ⁺
1		70	256
2		50	206
3		83	247
4		100	205
5		100	239
6		91	255
7		82	282

Example 122

- 5 **Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Cyano-1-(5-phenyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:**



- 10 **General Method:** To a solution of oxalyl chloride (0.030 mL, 0.34 mmol) in DCM (4 mL), at 5°C under Ar, was added DMF (0.02 mL) and stirring was continued at the

same temperature for 10 min. The mixture was then cooled at -20°C , a solution of 4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl-oxoacetic acid (0.060 g, 0.24 mmol) in NMP-DCM (1:2, 1.5 mL) was added dropwise, and stirring was continued at -20°C for 1 h. To this mixture was added a mixture of 4-[1-cyano-1-(5-phenyl-1,3,4-oxadiazol-2-yl)-methylene]-piperidine (0.064 g, 0.24 mmol) and Hünig's base (0.080 mL, 0.48 mmol) in DCM (1.5 mL). This mixture was stirred at 5°C for 1 h and then it was evaporated to dryness. The residue was purified by preparative HPLC to give the title compound (0.037 g, 31%) as a beige solid:

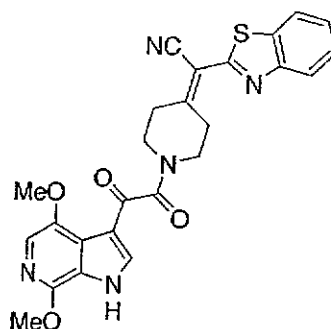
$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 9.34 (m, 1H), 8.02 (m, 3H), 7.50 (m, 3H), 7.40 (m, 1H), 4.04 (s, 3H), 3.97 (m, 2H), 3.87 (s, 3H), 3.64 (m, 2H), 3.34 (m, 2H), 2.99 (m, 2H). LCMS m/e 499 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

Compound Examples 123-129 were prepared analogously to Example 122.

15

Example 123

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Cyano-1-benzothiazol-2-yl-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



20

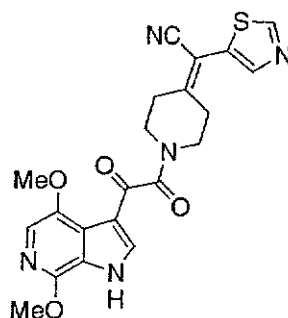
Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound (20% yield) as beige solid:

$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 9.50 (m, 1H), 8.02 (m, 2H), 7.87 (m, 1H), 7.47 (m, 2H), 7.38 (m, 2H), 4.04 (s, 3H), 3.87 (m, 2H), 3.85 (s, 3H), 3.62 (m, 2H), 3.33 (m, 2H), 2.95 (m, 2H). LCMS m/e 488 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$) $^+$.

25

Example 124

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Cyano-1-thiazol-5-yl-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



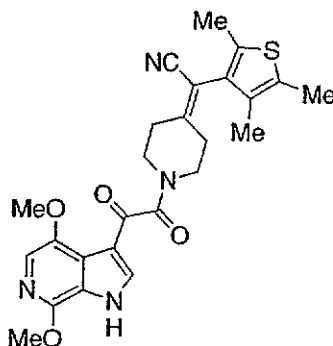
Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound (51% yield) as white solid:

¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.56 (br s, 1H), 8.79 (s, 0.5H), 8.72 (s, 0.5H), 7.96 (m, 1H), 7.50 (m, 1H), 7.37 (s, 0.5H), 7.36 (s, 0.5H), 3.99 (s, 3H), 3.86 (m, 1H), 3.85 (s, 3H), 3.76 (dd, J= 6.1, 5.5 Hz, 1H), 3.60 (dd, J= 6.1, 5.5 Hz, 1H), 3.50 (dd, J= 6.0, 5.6 Hz, 1H), 3.14 (dd, J= 6.1, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 3.08 (dd, J= 6.1, 5.5 Hz, 1H), 2.90 (dd, J= 6.1, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 2.84 (dd, J= 5.6, 3.9 Hz, 1H).

LCMS m/e 438 (M+H)⁺.

Example 125

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Cyano-1-(2,3,5-trimethylthien-4-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:

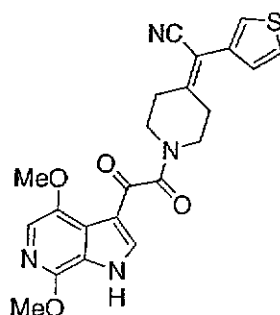


Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound (2% yield) as yellow solid:

LCMS m/e 479 (M+H)⁺.

Example 126

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Cyano-1-thien-3-yl-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



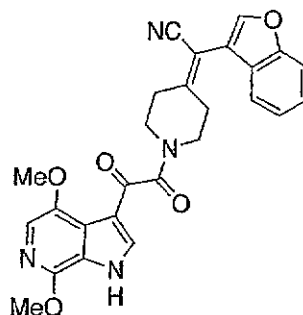
Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound (7% yield) as white solid:

¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.79 (br s, 1H), 8.07 (m, 1H), 7.3-7.4 (m, 3H), 7.01 (m, 1H), 4.19 (s, 1.5H), 4.17 (s, 1.5H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 3.67 (m, 2H), 3.58 (m, 1H), 3.42 (m, 1H), 2.83 (m, 2H), 2.61 (m, 2H).

LCMS m/e 437 (M+H)⁺.

Example 127

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Cyano-1-benzofuran-3-yl-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound (5% yield) as white solid:

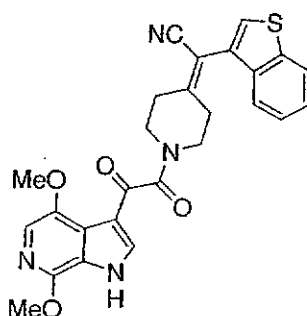
$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 9.09 (br s, 1H), 8.01 (m, 1H), 7.60 (m, 1H), 7.5-7.2 (m, 5H), 4.03 (s, 1.5H), 4.01 (s, 1.5H), 3.89 (m, 2H), 3.85 (s, 1.5H), 3.83 (s, 1.5H), 3.63 (m, 1H), 3.39 (m, 1H), 2.91 (m, 2H), 2.56 (m, 2H).

LCMS m/e 471 ($M+H$) $^+$.

5

Example 128

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Cyano-1-benzothien-3-yl-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



10

Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound (20% yield) as white solid:

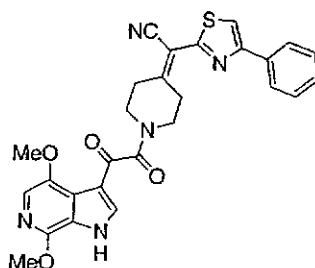
$^1\text{Hnmr}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 9.46 (br s, 1H), 8.00 (s, 0.5H), 7.97 (s, 0.5H), 7.83 (m, 1H), 7.62 (m, 1H), 7.36 (m, 5H), 4.05 (s, 1.5H), 4.02 (s, 1.5H), 3.90 (t, $J=6.1$ Hz, 2H), 3.86 (s, 1.5 Hz), 3.85 (s, 1.5H), 3.63 (m, 3H), 3.35 (dd, $J=6.1, 5.5$ Hz, 1H), 2.96 (dd, $J=6.1, 5.5$ Hz, 1H), 2.92 (dd, $J=6.1, 5.5$ Hz, 1H), 2.42 (dd, $J=6.1, 5.5$ Hz, 1H), 2.38 (dd, $J=5.6, 5.5$ Hz, 1H).

LCMS m/e 487 ($M+H$) $^+$.

20

Example 129

Preparation of 1-[4-(1-Cyano-1-(4-phenylthiazol-2-yl)-methylene)-piperidin-1-yl]-2-(4,7-dimethoxy-6-azaindol-3-yl)-ethane-1,2-dione:



25

Prepared according to the general method above to give the title compound (15% yield) a white solid:

¹Hnmr (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.46 (br s, 1H), 8.0-7.75 (m, 3H), 7.55-7.49 (m, 1H), 7.41-7.27 (m, 4H), 4.02 (s, 1.5H), 4.01 (s, 1.5H), 3.91 (dd, J= 6.0, 6.1 Hz, 1H), 3.86
5 (s, 3H), 3.85 (m, 1H), 3.64 (m, 2H), 3.42 (dd, J= 6.0, 5.6 Hz, 1H), 3.39 (dd, J= 5.6, 5.5 Hz, 1H) 2.96 (dd, J= 6.0, 5.6 Hz, 1H), 2.90 (dd, J= 6.1, 5.6 Hz, 1H).
LCMS m/e 514 (M+H)⁺.

Biology

10

- "μM" means micromolar;
- "mL" means milliliter;
- "μl" means microliter;
- "mg" means milligram;

15

The materials and experimental procedures used to obtain the results reported in Tables 1-2 are described below.

Cells:

20

- Virus production-Human embryonic Kidney cell line, 293T, was propagated in Dulbecco's Modified Eagle Medium (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA) containing 10% fetal Bovine serum (FBS, Sigma, St. Louis , MO).
- Virus infection- Human epithelial cell line, HeLa, expressing the HIV-1 receptor
25 CD4 was propagated in Dulbecco's Modified Eagle Medium (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA) containing 10% fetal Bovine serum (FBS; Sigma, St. Louis , MO) and supplemented with 0.2 mg/mL Geneticin (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA).

Virus-Single-round infectious reporter virus was produced by co-transfecting human
30 embryonic Kidney 293 cells with an HIV-1 envelope DNA expression vector and a proviral cDNA containing an envelope deletion mutation and the luciferase reporter gene inserted in place of HIV-1 nef sequences (Chen et al, Ref. 41). Transfections

were performed using lipofectAMINE PLUS reagent as described by the manufacturer (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA).

Experiment

5

1. HeLa CD4 cells were plated in 96 well plates at a cell density of 1×10^4 cells per well in 100 μ l Dulbecco's Modified Eagle Medium containing 10 % fetal Bovine serum and incubated overnight.
- 10 2. Compound was added in a 2 μ l dimethylsulfoxide solution, so that the final assay concentration would be $\leq 10 \mu\text{M}$.
3. 100 μ l of single-round infectious reporter virus in Dulbecco's Modified Eagle Medium was then added to the plated cells and compound at an approximate
15 multiplicity of infection (MOI) of 0.01, resulting in a final volume of 200 μ l per well.
4. Virally-infected cells were incubated at 37 degrees Celsius, in a CO₂ incubator, and harvested 72 h after infection.
- 20 5. Viral infection was monitored by measuring luciferase expression from viral DNA in the infected cells using a luciferase reporter gene assay kit, as described by the manufacturer (Roche Molecular Biochemicals, Indianapolis, IN). Infected cell supernatants were removed and 50 μ l of lysis buffer was added per well.
25 After 15 minutes, 50 μ l of freshly-reconstituted luciferase assay reagent was added per well. Luciferase activity was then quantified by measuring luminescence using a Wallac microbeta scintillation counter.
- 30 6. The percent inhibition for each compound was calculated by quantifying the level of luciferase expression in cells infected in the presence of each compound as a percentage of that observed for cells infected in the absence of compound and subtracting such a determined value from 100.

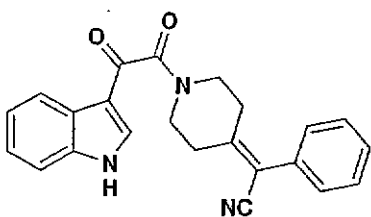
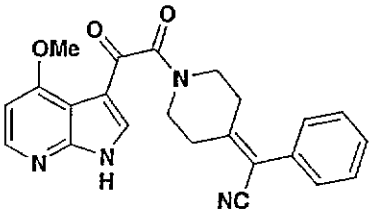
7. An EC_{50} provides a method for comparing the antiviral potency of the compounds of this invention. The effective concentration for fifty percent inhibition (EC_{50}) was calculated with the Microsoft Excel Xlfit curve fitting software. For each compound, curves were generated from percent inhibition calculated at 10 different concentrations by using a four parameter logistic model (model 205). The EC_{50} data for the compounds is shown in Table 2. Table 1 is the key for the data in Table 2.

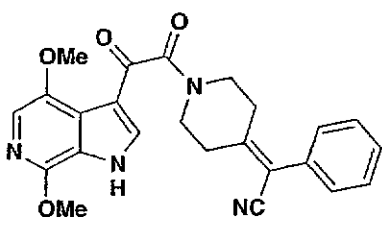
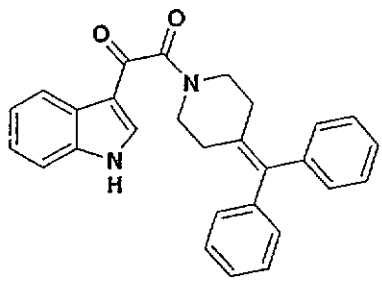
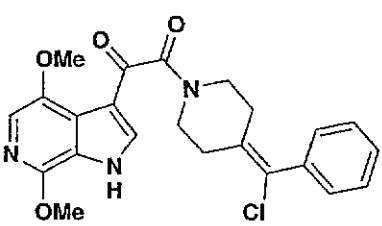
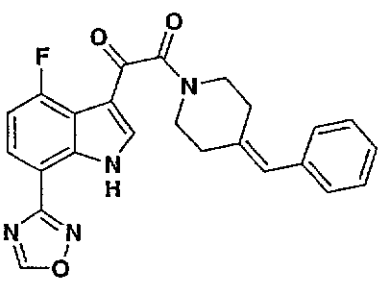
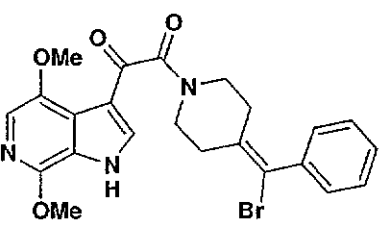
Results

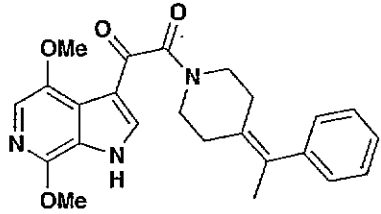
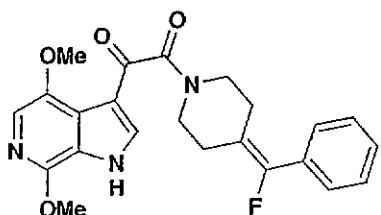
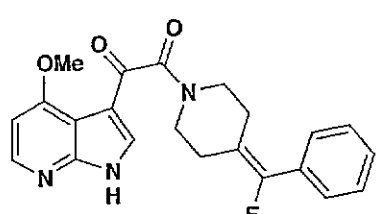
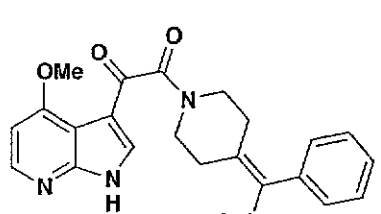
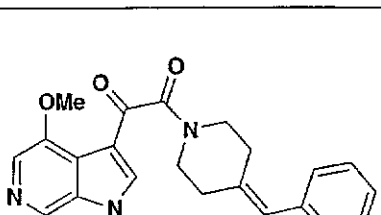
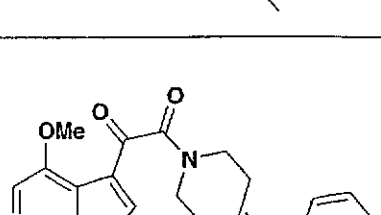
10 Table 1. Biological Data Key for EC_{50} s

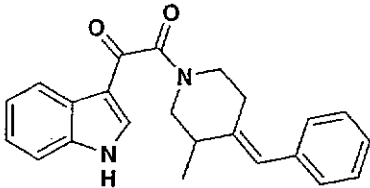
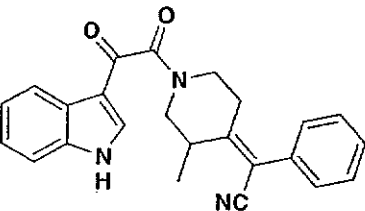
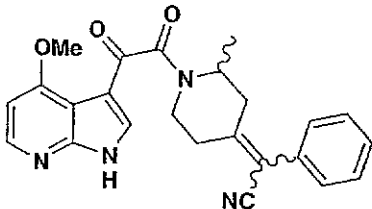
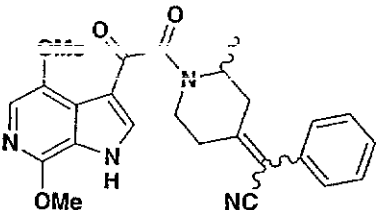
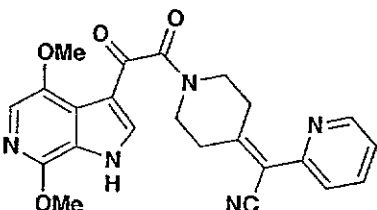
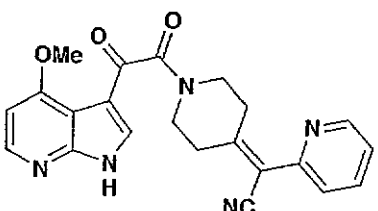
Compounds with EC_{50} s $>5\mu\text{M}$	Compounds with EC_{50} s $>1\mu\text{M}$ but $<5\mu\text{M}$	Compounds with $EC_{50} < 1\mu\text{M}$
Group C	Group B	Group A

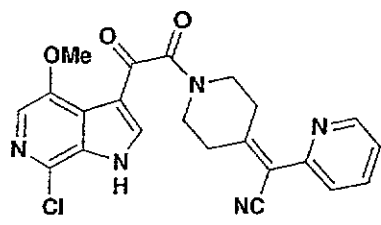
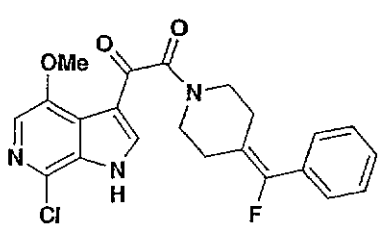
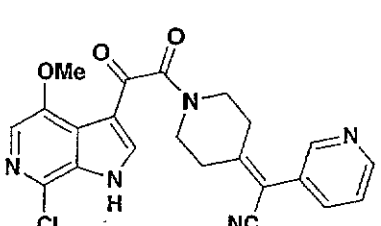
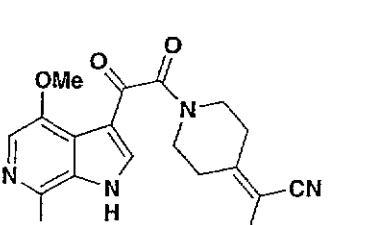
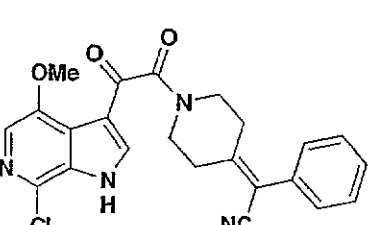
Table 2

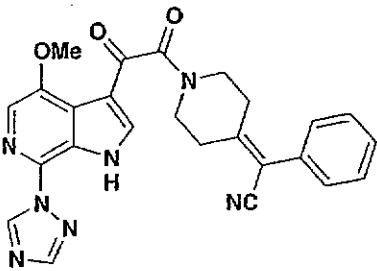
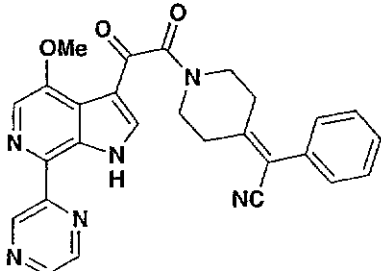
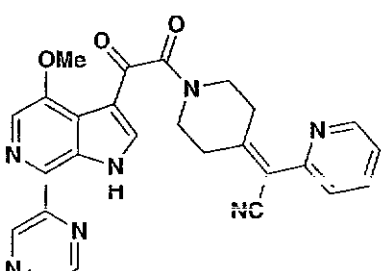
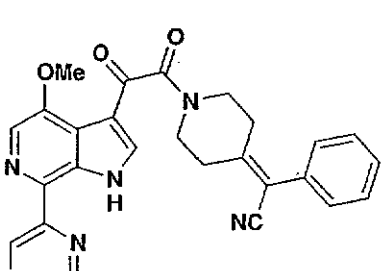
Compd. Number	Structure	EC_{50} Group from Table 1
Ia Example 1		B
Ib Example 2		A

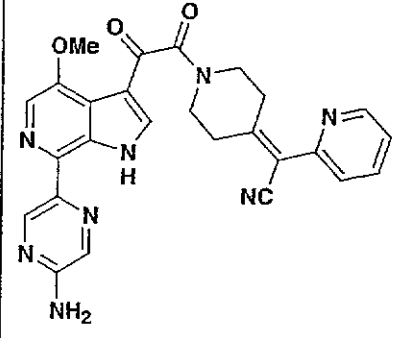
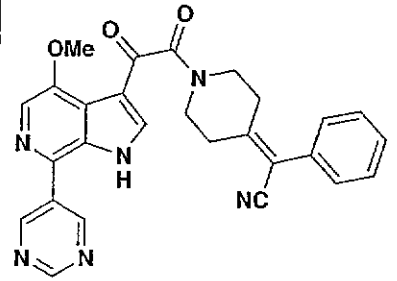
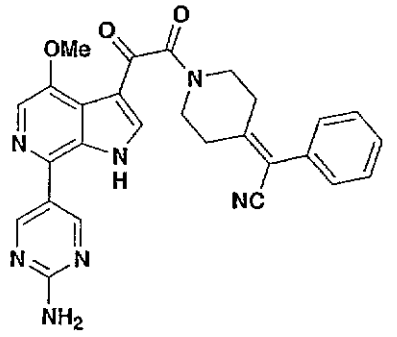
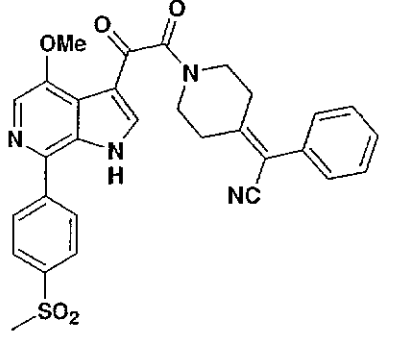
Ic Example 3		A
Id Example 4		B
Ie Example 5		A
If Example 6		A
Ig Example 7		A

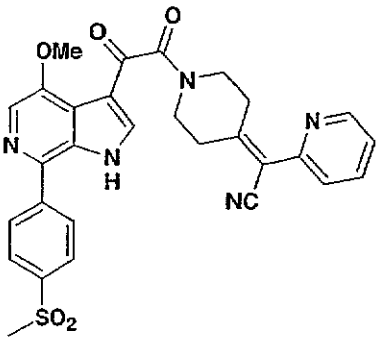
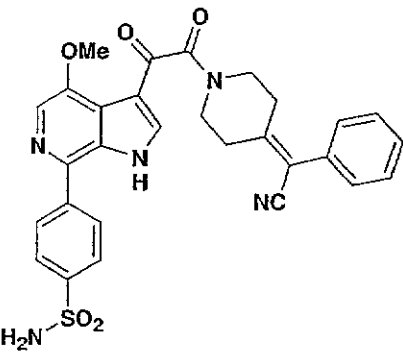
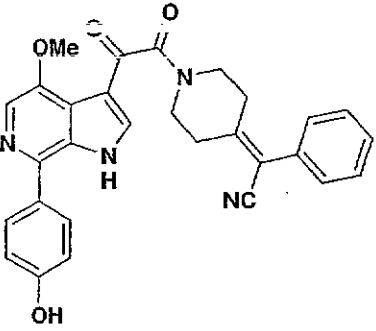
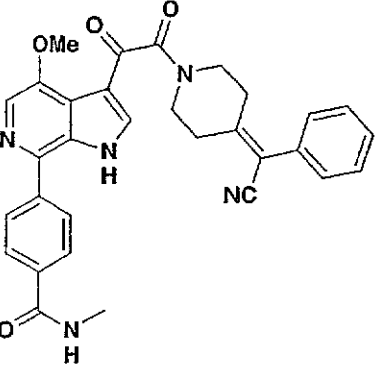
Ih Example 8		A
Ii Example 9		A
Ij Example 10		A
Ik Example 11		
Il Example 12		B
Im Example 13		C

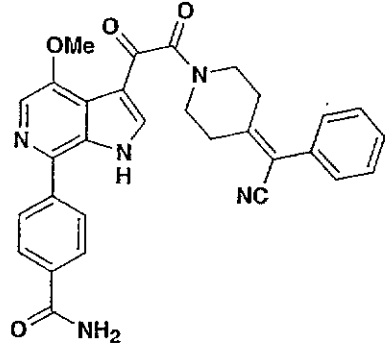
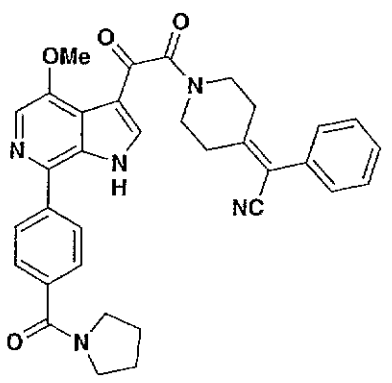
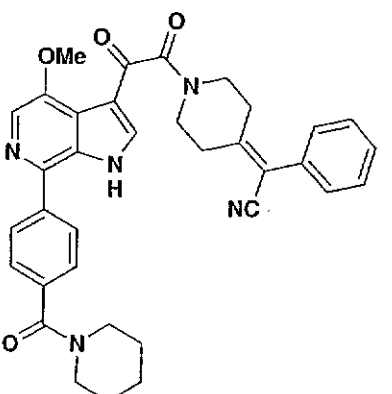
In Example 14		B
Io Example 15		A
Ip Example 16		A
Iq Example 17		A
Is Example 18		A
It Example 19		A

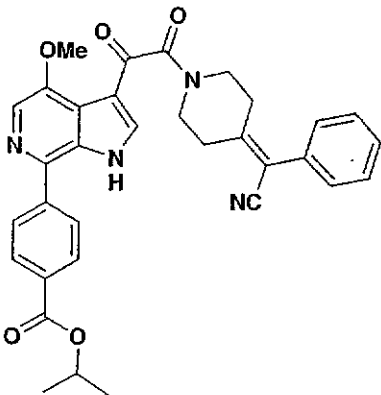
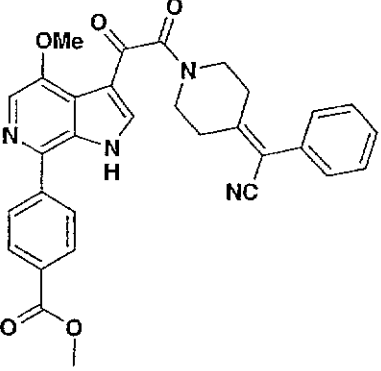
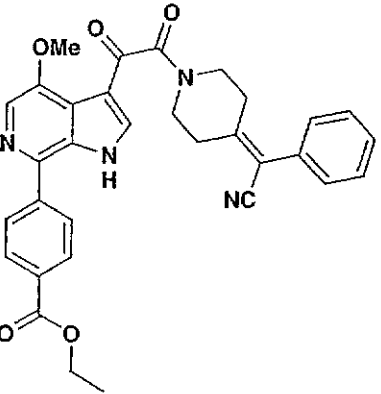
Iu Example 20		A
Iv Example 21		A
Iw Example 22		A
Ix Example 23		A
Iy Example 24		A

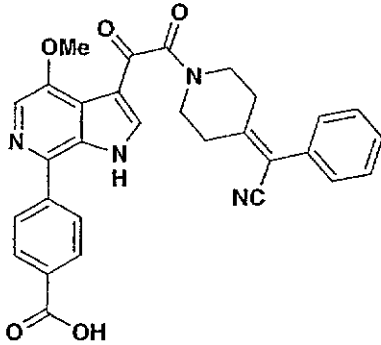
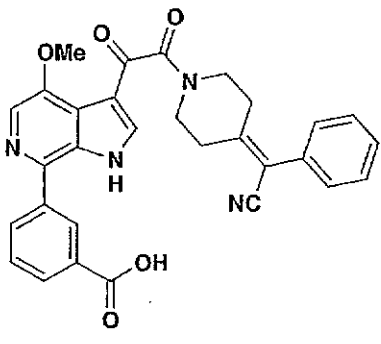
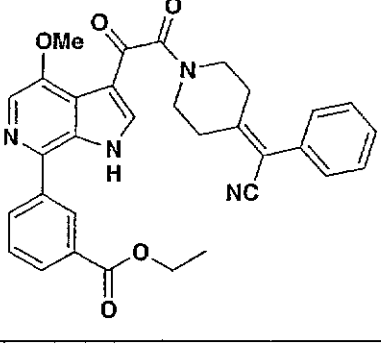
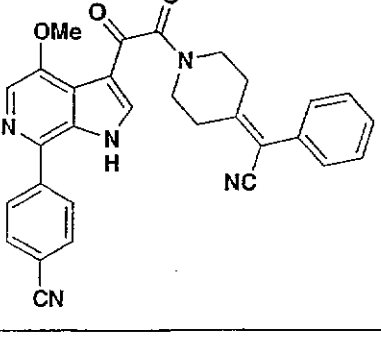
Example 25		A
I-C-001 Example 26		A
I-C-002 Example 27		A
I-C-003 Example 28		A

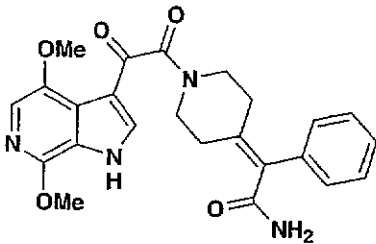
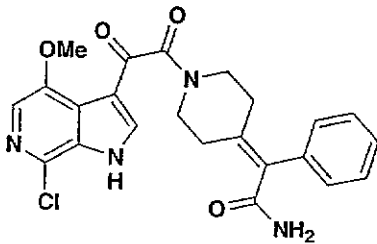
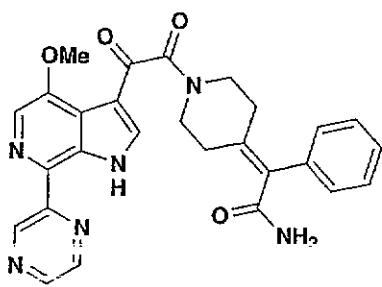
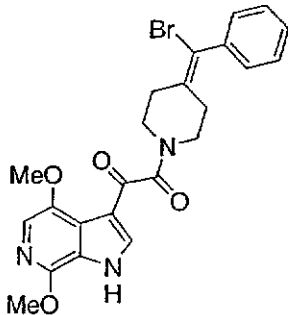
I-C-004 Example 29		A
I-C-005 Example 30		A
I-C-006 Example 31		A
I-C-007 Example 32		A

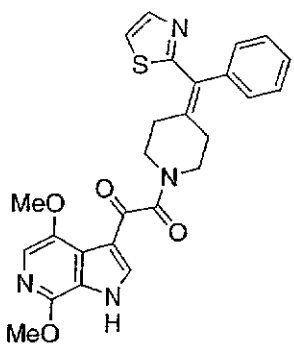
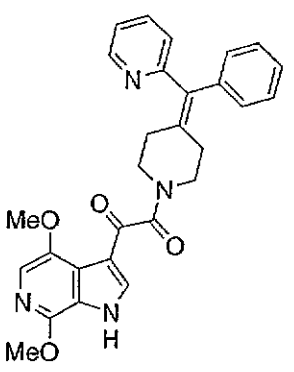
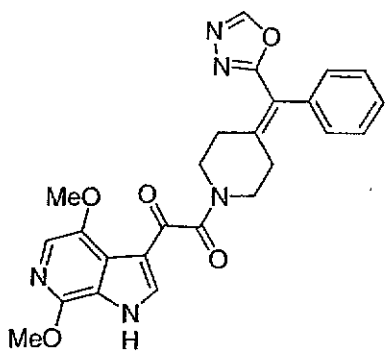
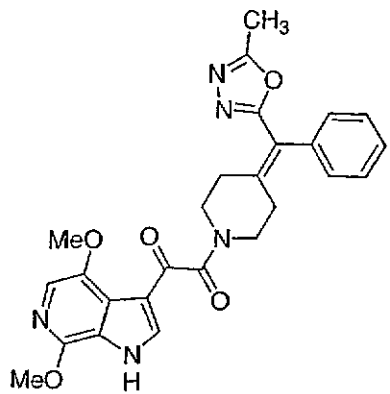
I-C-008 Example 33		A
I-C-009 Example 34		A
I-C-010 Example 35		A
I-C-011 Example 36		A

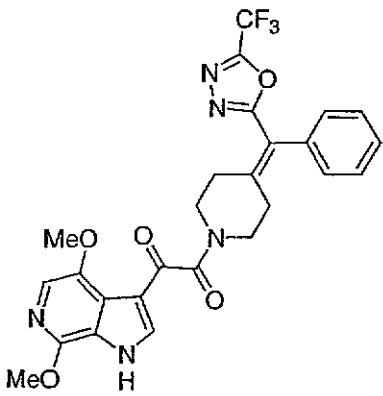
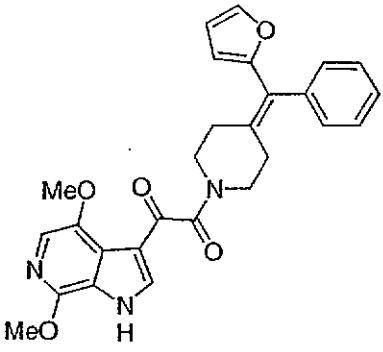
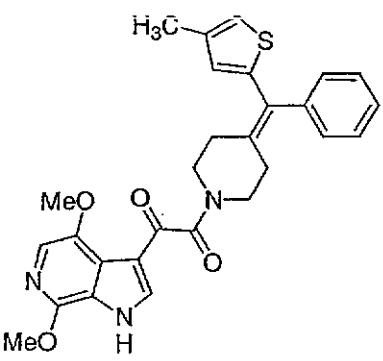
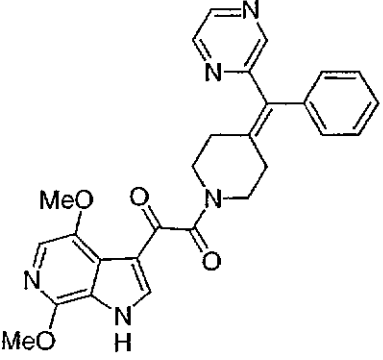
I-C-012 Example 37		A
I-C-013 Example 38		A
I-C-014 Example 39		A

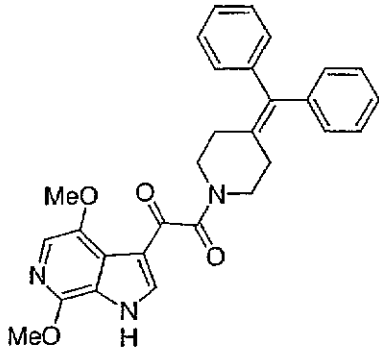
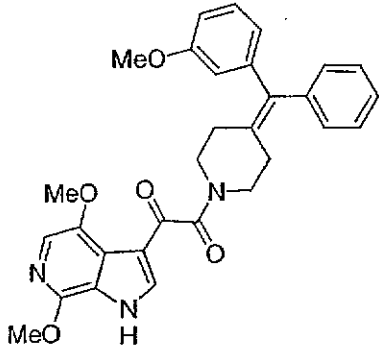
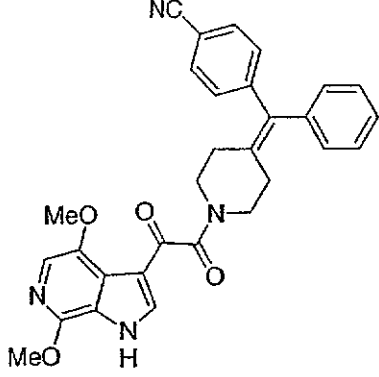
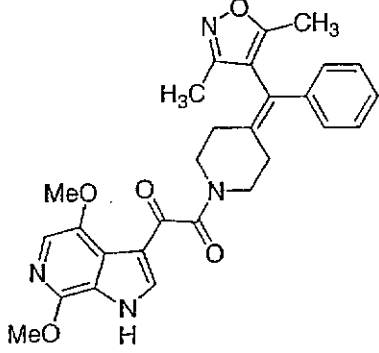
I-C-015 Example 40		A
I-C-016 Example 41		A
I-C-017 Example 42		A

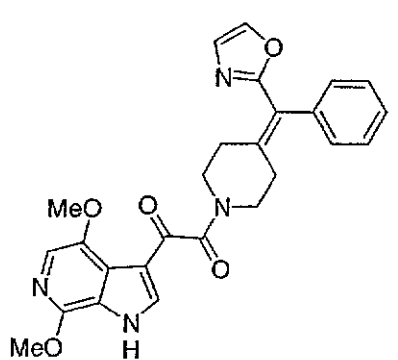
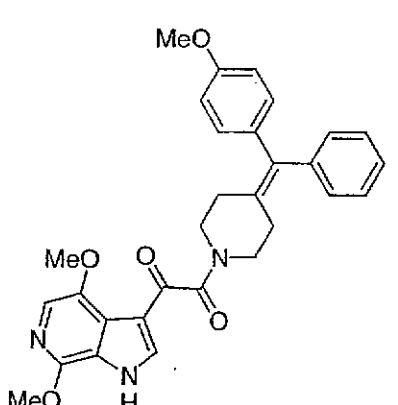
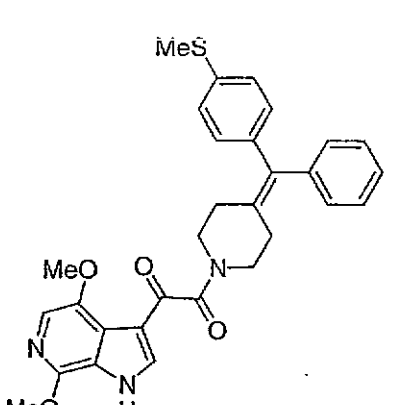
I-C-018 Example 43 -		A
I-C-019 Example 44		A
I-C-020 Example 45		A
I-C-021 Example 46		A

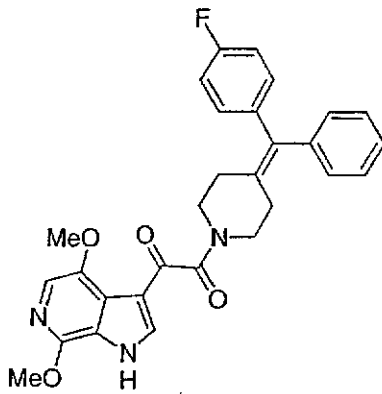
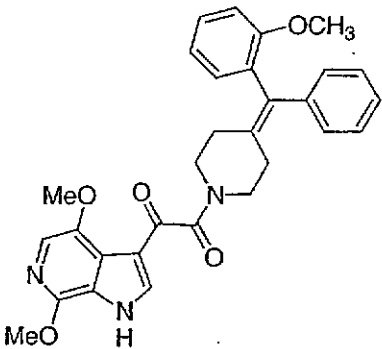
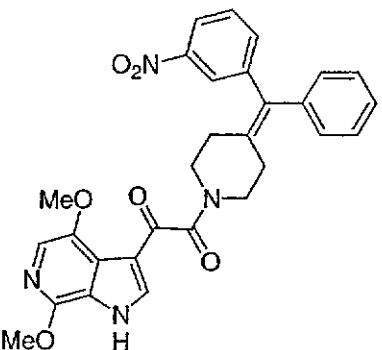
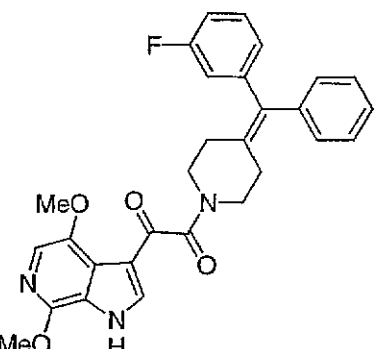
I-A-001 Example 47		A
I-A-002 Example 48		B
I-A-003 Example 49		A
Example 48a		A

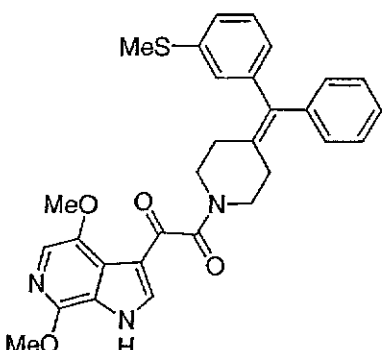
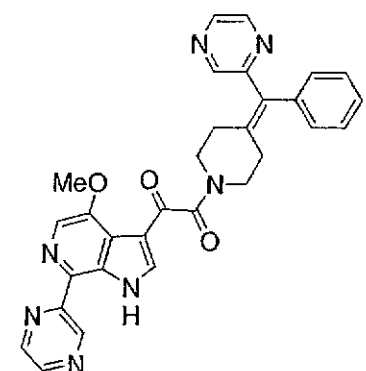
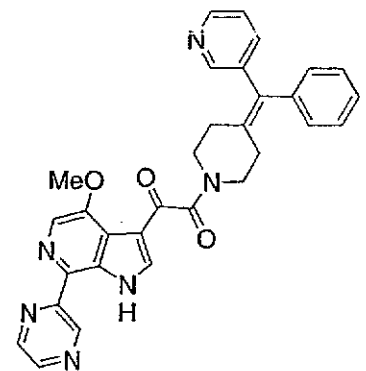
Example 49a		A
Example 50		A
Example 51		A
Example 52		A

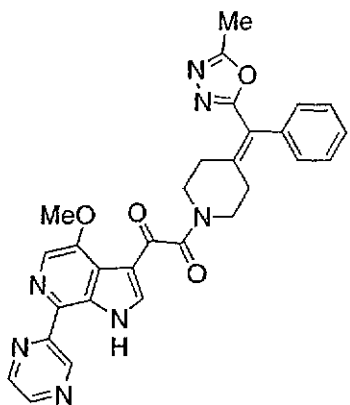
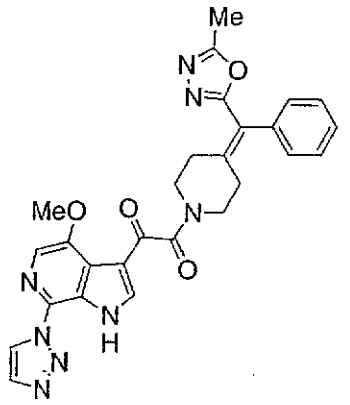
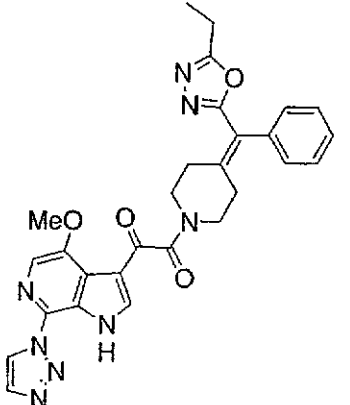
Example 53		A
Example 54		A
Example 55		A
Example 56		A

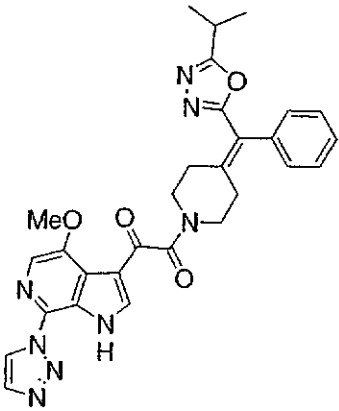
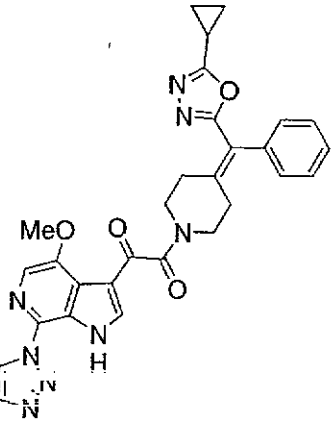
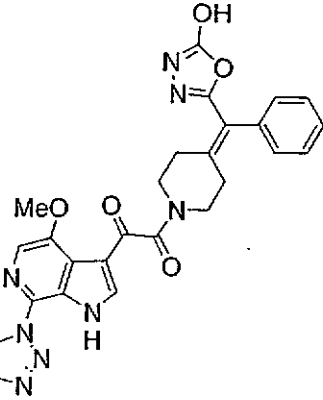
Example 57		A
Example 58		A
Example 59		A
Example 60		A

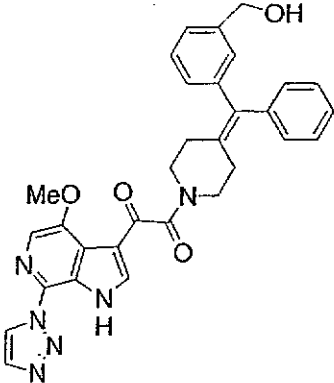
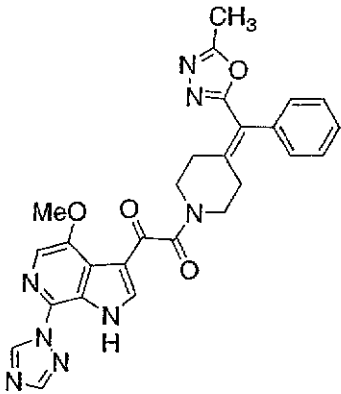
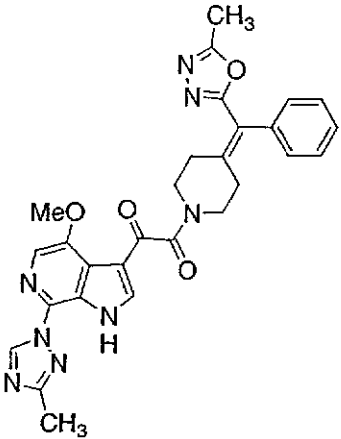
Example 61		A
Example 62		A
Example 63		A

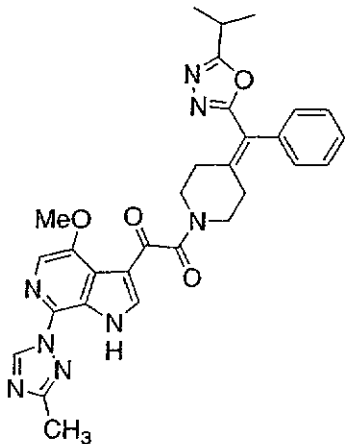
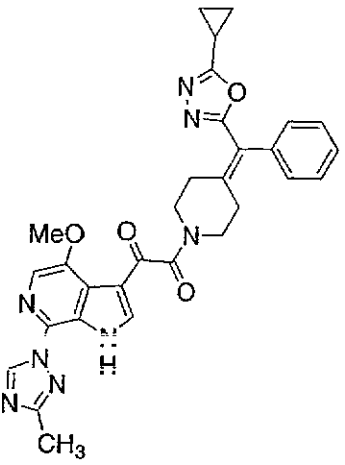
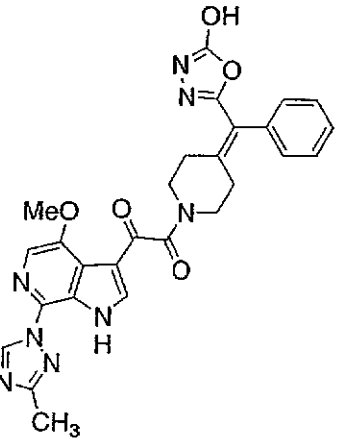
Example 64		A
Example 65		A
Example 66		A
Example 67		A

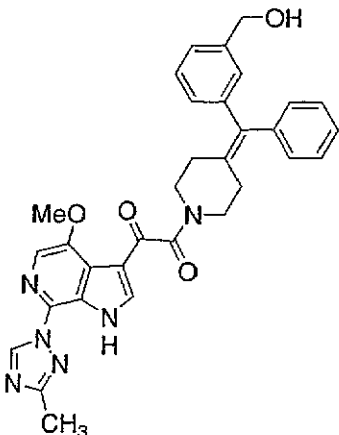
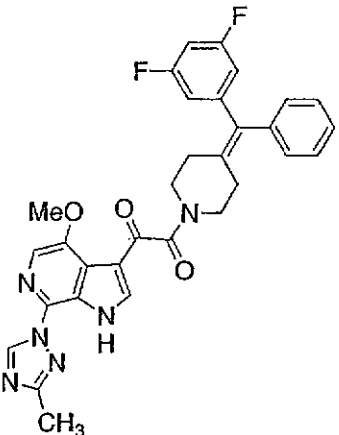
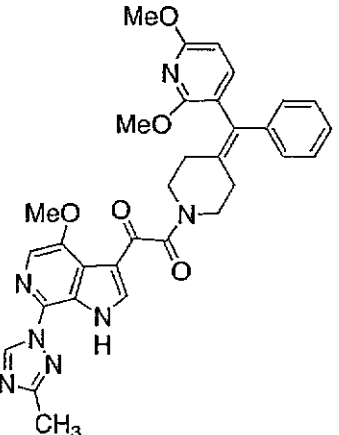
Example 68		A
Example 70		A
Example 71		A

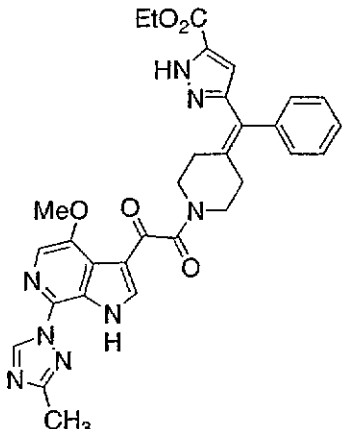
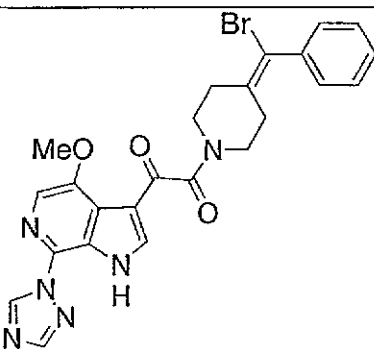
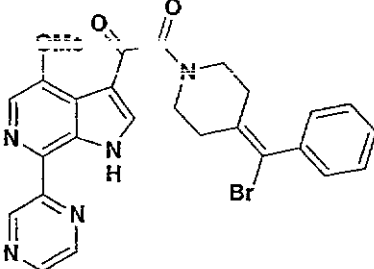
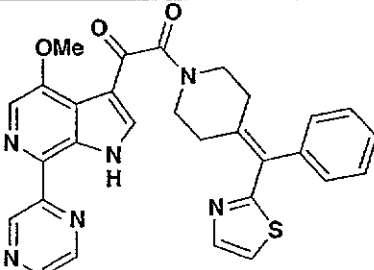
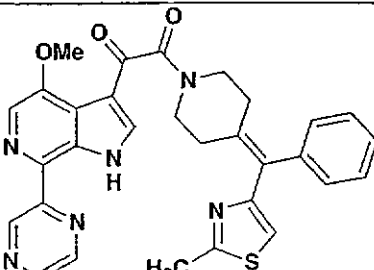
Example 72		A
Example 73		A
Example 74		A

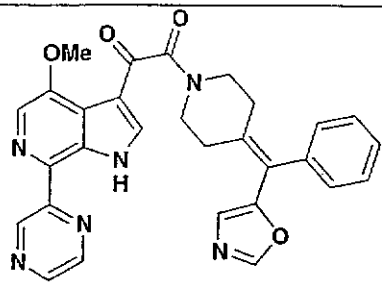
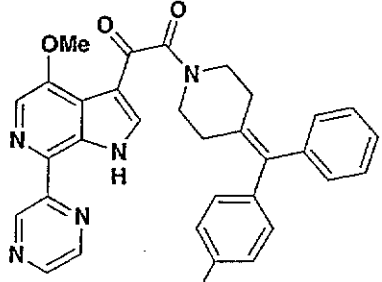
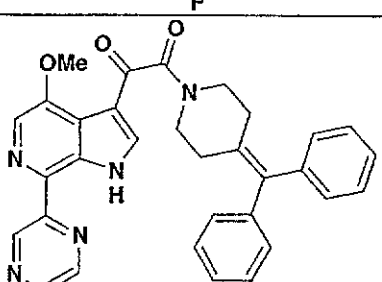
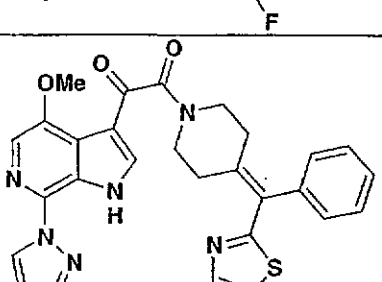
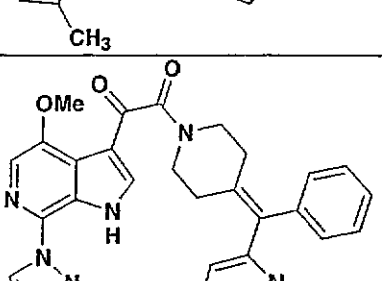
Example 75		A
Example 76		A
Example 77		A

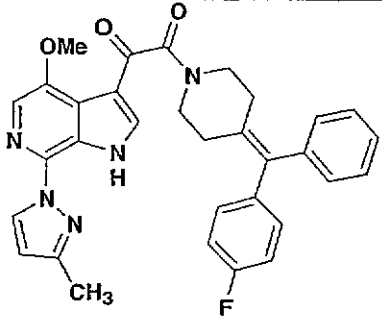
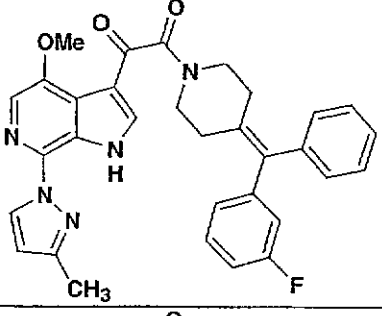
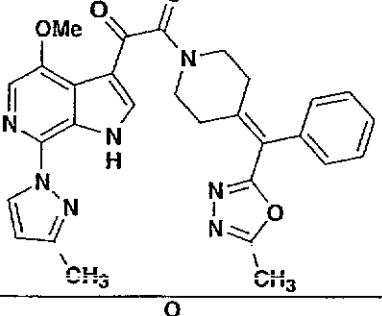
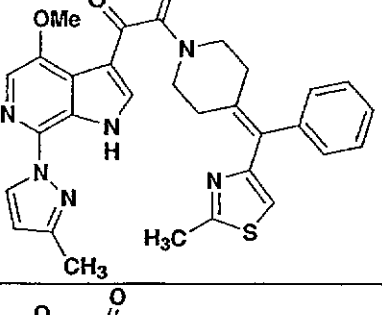
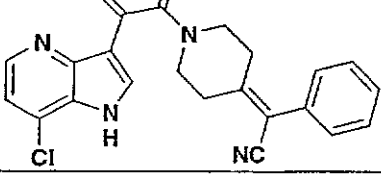
Example 78		A
Example 79		A
Example 80		A

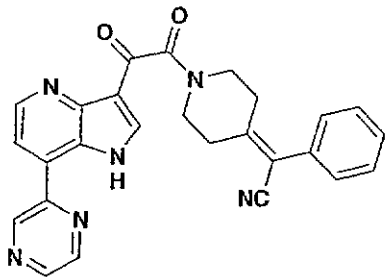
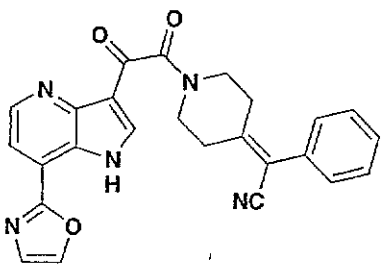
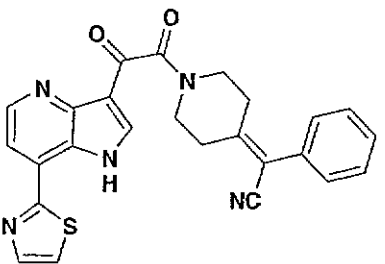
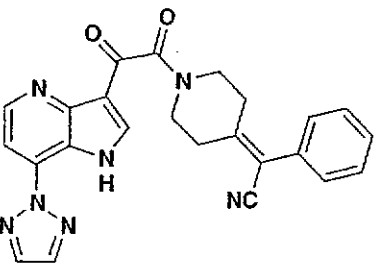
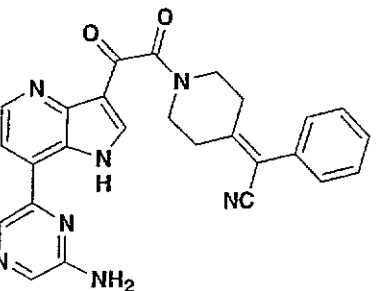
Example 81		A
Example 82		A
Example 83		A

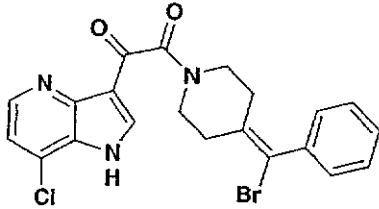
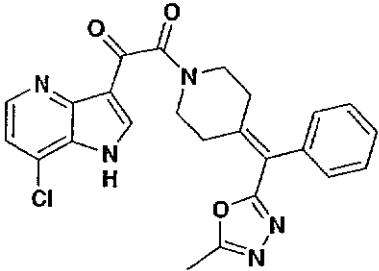
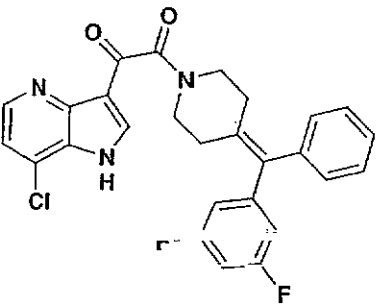
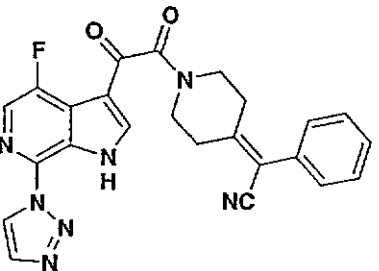
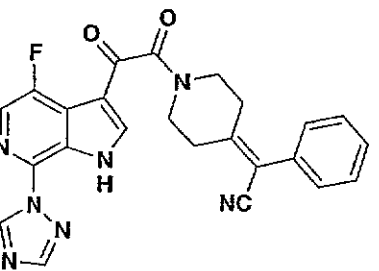
Example 84		A
Example 85		A
Example 86		

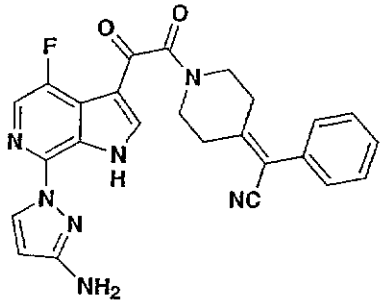
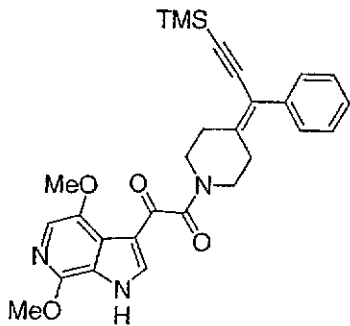
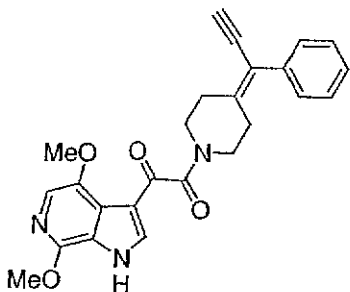
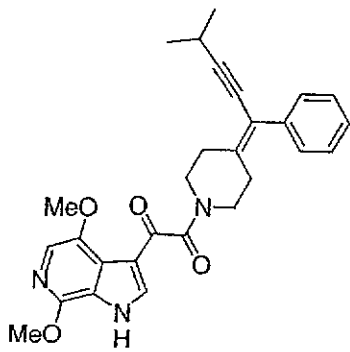
Example 87		A
Example 88		A
Example 89		A
Example 90		A
Example 91		A

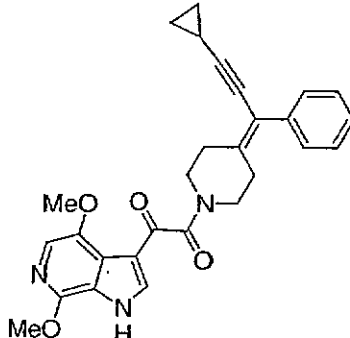
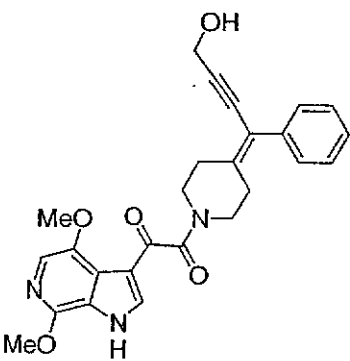
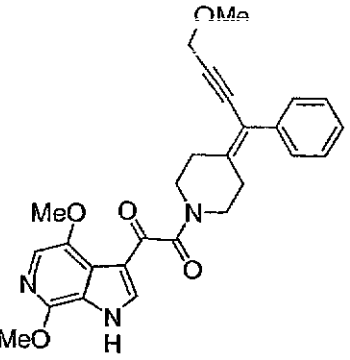
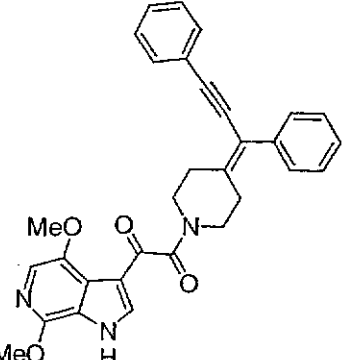
Example 92		A
Example 93		A
Example 94		A
Example 95		A
Example 96		A

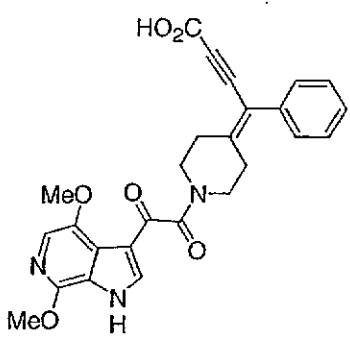
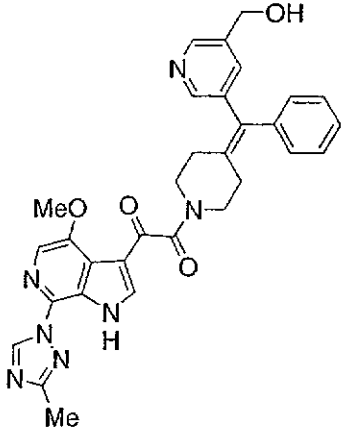
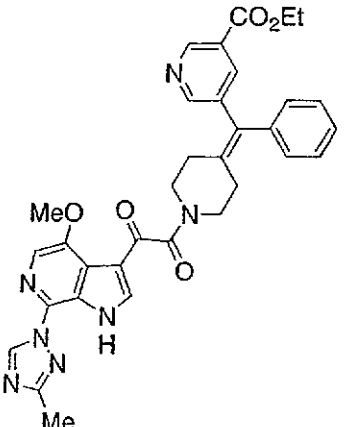
Example 97		A
Example 98		A
Example 99		A
Example 100		A
Example 101		A

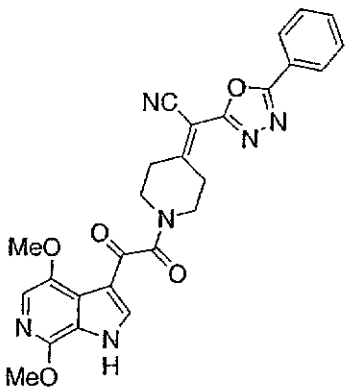
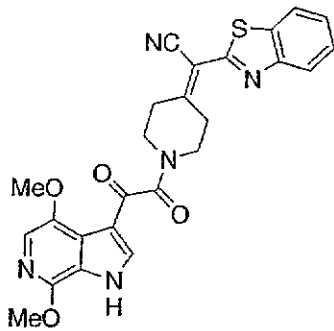
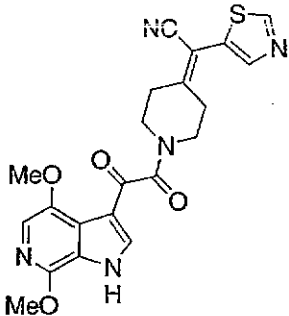
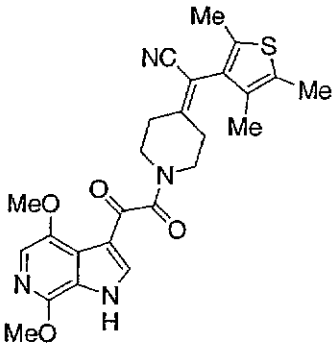
Example 102		A
Example 103		A
Example 104		A
Example 105		A
Example 106		A

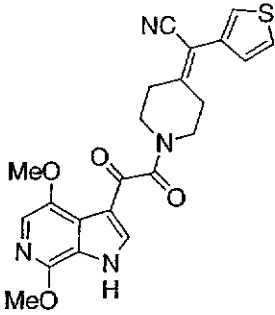
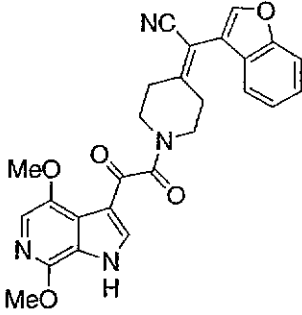
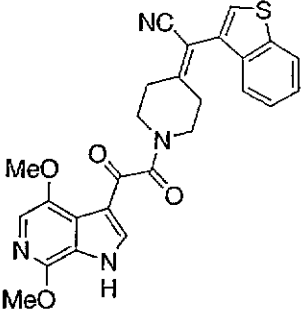
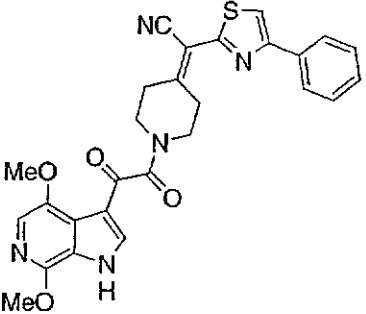
Example 107		A
Example 108		A
Example 109		A
Example 109A		A
Example 110		A

Example 111		A
Example 112		A
Example 113		A
Example 114		A

Example 115		A
Example 116		A
Example 117		A
Example 118		A

Example 119		A
Example 120		A
Example 121		AA

Example 122		C
Example 123		C
Example 124		A
Example 125		C

Example 126		A
Example 127		A
Example 128		A
Example 129		C

The compounds of the present invention may be administered orally, parenterally (including subcutaneous injections, intravenous, intramuscular, intrasternal injection or infusion techniques), by inhalation spray, or rectally, in

dosage unit formulations containing conventional non-toxic pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, adjuvants and diluents.

Thus, in accordance with the present invention, there is further provided a
5 method of treating and a pharmaceutical composition for treating viral infections such as HIV infection and AIDS. The treatment involves administering to a patient in need of such treatment a pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutical carrier and a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of the present invention.

10 The pharmaceutical composition may be in the form of orally administrable suspensions or tablets; nasal sprays, sterile injectable preparations, for example, as sterile injectable aqueous or oleagenous suspensions or suppositories.

When administered orally as a suspension, these compositions are prepared
15 according to techniques well known in the art of pharmaceutical formulation and may contain microcrystalline cellulose for imparting bulk, alginic acid or sodium alginate as a suspending agent, methylcellulose as a viscosity enhancer, and sweeteners/flavoring agents known in the art. As immediate release tablets, these compositions may contain microcrystalline cellulose, dicalcium phosphate, starch,
20 magnesium stearate and lactose and/or other excipients, binders, extenders, disintegrants, diluents, and lubricants known in the art.

The injectable solutions or suspensions may be formulated according to known art, using suitable non-toxic, parenterally acceptable diluents or solvents, such
25 as mannitol, 1,3-butanediol, water, Ringer's solution or isotonic sodium chloride solution, or suitable dispersing or wetting and suspending agents, such as sterile, bland, fixed oils, including synthetic mono- or diglycerides, and fatty acids, including oleic acid.

30 The compounds of this invention can be administered orally to humans in a dosage range of 1 to 100 mg/kg body weight in divided doses. One preferred dosage range is 1 to 10 mg/kg body weight orally in divided doses. Another preferred dosage range is 1 to 20 mg/kg body weight in divided doses. It will be understood, however,

that the specific dose level and frequency of dosage for any particular patient may be varied and will depend upon a variety of factors including the activity of the specific compound employed, the metabolic stability and length of action of that compound, the age, body weight, general health, sex, diet, mode and time of administration, rate
5 of excretion, drug combination, the severity of the particular condition, and the host undergoing therapy.

CLAIMS

What is claimed is:

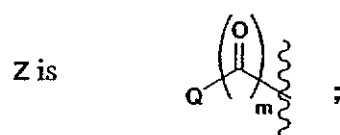
1. A compound of Formula I, including pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof,



10

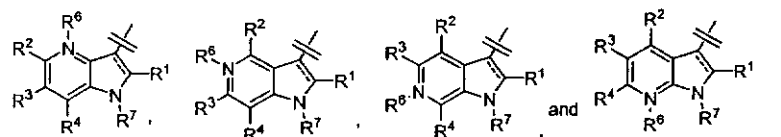
(I)

wherein:

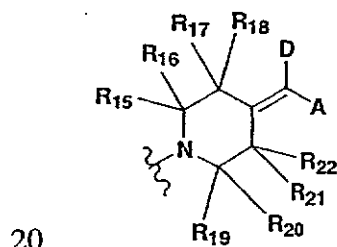


Q is selected from the group consisting of:

15



-W- is



R^1 , R^2 , R^3 , R^4 , and R^5 , are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halogen, cyano, nitro, COOR^8 , XR^9 , and B;

25 m is 1 or 2;

R^6 is O or does not exist;

R^7 is $(CH_2)_nR^{10}$;

5

n is 0-6;

R^{10} is selected from the group consisting of H, (C_{1-6}) alkyl, $-C(O)-(C_{1-6})$ alkyl, $C(O)$ -phenyl and $CONR^{11}R^{12}$;

10

R^{11} and R^{12} are each independently H, (C_{1-6}) alkyl or phenyl;

-- represents a carbon-carbon bond or does not exist;

- 15 D is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, (C_{1-6}) alkyl, (C_{1-6}) alkynyl, (C_{3-6}) cycloalkyl, halogen, cyano, $-CONR^{32}R^{33}$, $-SO_2R^{32}$, COR^{32} , $COOR^8$, tetrahydrofuryl, pyrrolidinyl, phenyl and heteroaryl ; wherein said (C_{1-6}) alkyl, (C_{1-6}) alkynyl, phenyl and heteroaryl are each independently optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group G;
- 20 heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of furanyl, thienyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, triazolyl, pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, and pyrimidinyl;

- A is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said phenyl and heteroaryl are each independently optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group K; and heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, furanyl, thienyl, benzothienyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, benzooxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, benzoimidazolyl, 1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl, 1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-yl,
- 25 oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, tetrazinyl, triazinyl and triazolyl; with the proviso that when m is 1 and A is benzoimidazolyl, 1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl or 1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-yl, D is not -H;
- 30

R^{15} , R^{16} , R^{17} , R^{18} , R^{19} , R^{20} , R^{21} , R^{22} are each independently selected from the group consisting of H and (C₁₋₆)alkyl; wherein (C₁₋₆)alkyl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogen, amino, OH, CN or NO₂;

5 B is selected from the group consisting of (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, C(O)NR²³R²⁴, phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkyl, phenyl and heteroaryl are independently optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogens or from one to three same or different substituents selected from F; heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, furanyl,
10 thienyl, benzothienyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, benzooxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, benzoimidazolyl, 1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl, 1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-yl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, tetrazinyl, triazinyl and triazolyl;

15 F is selected from the group consisting of (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl cyano, phenyl, heteroaryl, heteroalicyclic, hydroxy, (C₁₋₆)alkoxy, halogen, benzyl, -NR²⁵C(O)-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NR²⁶R²⁷, morpholino, nitro, -S(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -SPh, NR²⁵S(O)₂-R²⁶, piperazinyl, N-Me piperazinyl, C(O)H, (CH₂)_nCOOR²⁸ and -CONR²⁹R³⁰; wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkyl, heteroaryl, or phenyl is optionally substituted with one to
20 three same or different halogens or one to three methyl groups; heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of furanyl, thienyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, triazolyl, pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, and pyrimidinyl; heteroalicyclic is selected from the group consisting of aziridine, azetidine, pyrrolidine, piperazine, N-methyl piperazine,
25 piperidine, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydropyran, azepine and morpholine;

G is selected from the group consisting of (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl cyano, trimethylsilyl, phenyl, heteroaryl, heteroalicyclic, hydroxy, (C₁₋₆)alkoxy, halogen, benzyl, -NR²⁵C(O)-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NR²⁶R²⁷, -C(O)NR²⁶R²⁷, morpholino, nitro,
30 -S(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -SPh, NR²⁵S(O)₂-R²⁶, piperazinyl, N-Me piperazinyl, (CH₂)_nCOOR²⁸ and -CONR²⁹R³⁰; wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkyl, heteroaryl, or phenyl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogens or one to three methyl groups; heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of furanyl, thienyl, thiazolyl,

isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, triazolyl, pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, and pyrimidinyl; heteroalicyclic is selected from the group consisting of aziridine, azetidine, pyrrolidine, piperazine, N-methyl piperazine, piperidine, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydropyran, azepine and
 5 morpholine;

K is selected from the group consisting of (C₁₋₃)alkyl, hydroxy, (C₁₋₃)alkoxy, halogen and -NR²⁶R²⁷; wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkyl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogens;

10

R⁸, R⁹ and R²⁸ are selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and (C₁₋₆)alkyl;

X is selected from the group consisting of NR³¹, O and S;

15

R²³, R²⁴, R²⁵, R²⁶, R²⁷, R²⁹, R³⁰, R³¹ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkoxy, phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkyl, phenyl, and heteroaryl are independently optionally substituted with one to three same or different group J; heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of
 20 furanyl, thienyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, triazolyl, pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, and pyrimidinyl;

J is selected from the group consisting of (C₁₋₆)alkyl, phenyl, heteroaryl, hydroxy, (C₁₋₆)alkoxy, halogen, benzyl, -NR³²C(O)-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NR³²R³³, morpholino, nitro, -S(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -SPh, NR³²S(O)₂-R³³, piperazinyl, N-Me piperazinyl, (CH₂)_nCOOR²⁸ and -CONR³²R³³; wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkyl, heteroaryl, or phenyl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogens, amino, or methyl groups; heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of furanyl, thienyl, thiazolyl,
 25 isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, triazolyl, pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, and pyrimidinyl; and
 30

R^{32} and R^{33} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and (C₁₋₆)alkyl; wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkyl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogen, methyl, or CF₃ groups.

5 2. A compound of claim 1 wherein:



R^1 is hydrogen;

-- represents a carbon-carbon bond; and

R^6 does not exist.

15 3. A compound of claim 2 wherein:

R^7 is hydrogen; and

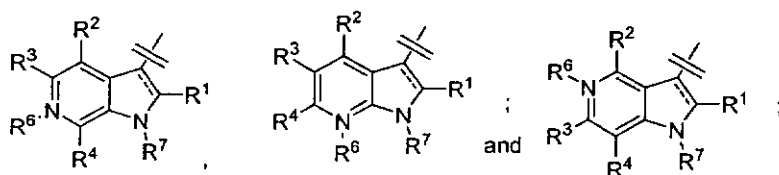
20 R^{15} , R^{16} , R^{17} , R^{18} , R^{19} , R^{20} , R^{21} , R^{22} are each independently H or methyl with the proviso that a maximum of one of R^{15} - R^{22} is methyl.

4. A compound of claim 3 wherein:

Q is a member selected from groups (A) and (B) consisting of:

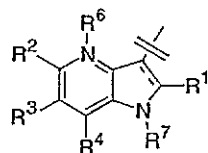
25

(A)



provided R^2 and R^3 are each independently hydrogen, methoxy or halogen; and

(B)



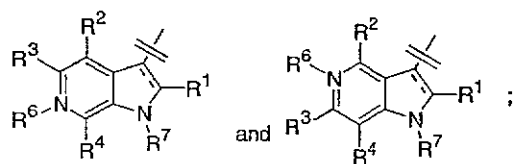
5

provided R^2 is hydrogen, methoxy or halogen.

5. A compound of claim 4 wherein:

10 Q is a member selected from groups (A), (B) and (C) consisting of:

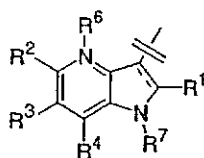
(A)



15 provided R^2 is hydrogen, methoxy or halogen;

R^3 is hydrogen;

(B)

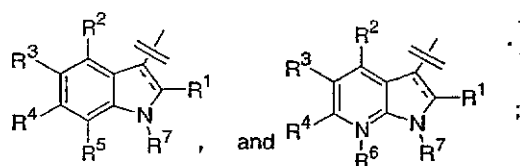


20

provided R^2 and R^3 are hydrogen; and

25

(C)



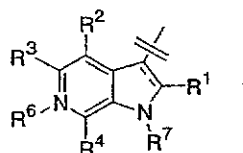
provided R² is hydrogen, methoxy or halogen; and

5

R³ and R⁴ are hydrogen.

6. A compound of claim 4 wherein:

10 Q is



provided R² is hydrogen, methoxy or halogen;

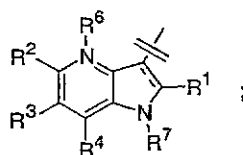
15 R³ is hydrogen; and

A is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said phenyl and heteroaryl are each independently optionally substituted with one fluorine, hydroxy, methyl, or amino; and heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of pyridinyl, furanyl and thienyl.

20

7. A compound of claim 4 wherein:

Q is



25

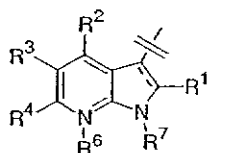
R^2 and R^3 are hydrogen; and

A is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said phenyl and heteroaryl are each independently optionally substituted with one fluorine,

5 hydroxy, methyl, or amino; and heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of pyridinyl, furanyl and thienyl.

8. A compound of claim 4 wherein:

10 Q is



R^2 is hydrogen, methoxy or halogen;

15 R^3 and R^4 are hydrogen; and

A is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said phenyl and heteroaryl are each independently optionally substituted with one fluorine,

20 hydroxy, methyl, or amino; and heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of pyridinyl, furanyl and thienyl.

9. A compound of claim 3 wherein:

B is selected from the group consisting of $-C(O)NR^{23}R^{24}$, phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said phenyl or heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogens or from one to two same or different substituents selected from the group F.

10. A compound of claim 5 wherein:

B is selected from the group consisting of $-C(O)NR^{23}R^{24}$, phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said phenyl or heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogens or from one to two same or different substituents selected from the group F.

11. A compound of claim 6 wherein:

B is selected from the group consisting of $-C(O)NR^{23}R^{24}$, phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said phenyl or heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogens or from one to two same or different substituents selected from the group F.

12. A compound of claim 7 wherein:

B is selected from the group consisting of $-C(O)NR^{23}R^{24}$, phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said phenyl or heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to three same or

different halogens or from one to two same or different substituents selected from the group F.

13. A compound of claim 10 wherein:

B is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{23}\text{R}^{24}$.

14. A compound of claim 10 wherein:

B is heteroaryl; wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogens or from one to two same or different substituents selected from the group F.

15. A compound of claim 11 wherein:

B is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{23}\text{R}^{24}$.

16. A compound of claim 11 wherein:

B is heteroaryl; wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogens or from one to two same or different substituents selected from the group F.

17. A compound of claim 12 wherein:

B is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{23}\text{R}^{24}$.

18. A compound of claim 12 wherein:

B is heteroaryl; wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogens or from one to two same or different substituents selected from the group F.

19. A compound of claim 13 wherein:

B is $-C(O)NR^{23}R^{24}$.

20. A compound of claim 13 wherein:

B is heteroaryl; wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogens or from one to two same or different substituents selected from the group F.

21. A compound of claim 3 wherein:

D is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, (C_{1-6}) alkyl, (C_{1-6}) alkynyl, (C_{3-6}) cycloalkyl, halogen, cyano, $-CONR^{32}R^{33}$, $-SO_2R^{32}$, COR^{32} , $COOR^8$, tetrahydrofuryl, pyrrolidinyl, phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said (C_{1-6}) alkyl, (C_{1-6}) alkynyl, phenyl and heteroaryl are each independently optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group G;

heteroaryl is (1) a five membered ring selected from the group consisting of furanyl, thienyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, and triazolyl; or (2) a six membered ring selected from the group consisting of pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, and pyrimidinyl; and

5

A is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said phenyl and heteroaryl are each independently optionally substituted with one fluorine, hydroxy, methyl, or amino; and heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of pyridinyl, furanyl and thienyl.

10

22. A compound of claim 5 wherein:

D is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkynyl, (C₃₋₆) cycloalkyl, halogen, cyano, -CONR³²R³³, -SO₂ R³², COR³², COOR⁸, tetrahydrofuryl, pyrrolidinyl phenyl and heteroaryl ; wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkynyl, phenyl and heteroaryl are each independently optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group G; heteroaryl is (1) a five membered ring selected from the group consisting of furanyl, thienyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, and triazolyl or (2) a six membered ring selected from the group consisting of pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, and pyrimidinyl; and

15

20

A is selected from the group consisting of phenyl and heteroaryl; wherein said phenyl and heteroaryl are each independently optionally substituted with one fluorine, hydroxy, methyl, or amino; and heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of pyridinyl, furanyl and thienyl.

25

23. A compound of claim 25 wherein:

30 D is (C₁₋₆)alkyl, wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkyl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group G.

24. A compound of claim 26 wherein:

D is (C₁₋₆)alkyl, wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkyl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group G.

25. A compound of claim 25 wherein:

5

D is (C₁₋₆)alkynyl, wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkynyl is optionally substituted with one of the group G.

26. A compound of claim 26 wherein:

10

D is (C₁₋₆)alkynyl, wherein said (C₁₋₆)alkynyl is optionally substituted with one of the group G.

27. A compound of claim 26 wherein:

15

D is (C₃₋₆) cycloalkyl.

28. A compound of claim 26 wherein:

20 D is -CONR³²R³³.

29. A compound of claim 26 wherein:

D is -SO₂ R³².

25

30. A compound of claim 26 wherein:

D is halogen.

30 31. A compound of claim 3 wherein:

D is phenyl wherein said phenyl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group G.

32. A compound of claim 5 wherein:

D is phenyl wherein said phenyl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group G.

5

33. A compound of claim 26 wherein:

D is phenyl wherein said phenyl is optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group G.

10

34. A compound of claim 37 wherein:

D is phenyl wherein said phenyl is optionally substituted with one to two same or different members selected from the group G; and

15

A is phenyl or pyridyl.

35. A compound of claim 38 wherein:

20 D is 3,5-difluoro phenyl.

36. A compound of claim 38 wherein:

D is 3 hydroxymethyl phenyl.

25

37. A compound of claim 38 wherein:

30 D is 3-methyl-phenyl where the methyl is substituted by a single heteroaryl ; wherein said heteroaryl, is optionally substituted with one to three same or different halogens or one to three methyl groups; heteroaryl is selected from the group consisting of furanyl, thienyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrazolyl, tetrazolyl, triazolyl, pyridinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, and pyrimidinyl.

38. A compound of claim 3 wherein:

D is heteroaryl optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group G.

5

39. A compound of claim 26 wherein:

D is heteroaryl optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group G.

10

40. A compound of claim 43 wherein:

A is phenyl or pyridyl.

15 41. A compound of claim 6 wherein:

D is heteroaryl optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group G.

20 42. A compound of claim 6 wherein:

D is heteroaryl optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group G; and

25 A is phenyl or pyridyl.

43. A compound of claim 7 wherein:

D is heteroaryl optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group G.

30

44. A compound of claim 7 wherein:

A is phenyl or pyridyl.

45. A compound of claim 8 wherein:

D is heteroaryl optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group G.

46. A compound of claim 43 wherein: heteroaryl is pyridyl is heteroaryl optionally substituted with one to three same or different members selected from the group G.

47. A compound of claim 43 wherein:

D is oxadiazolyl independently optionally substituted with one to two same or different members selected from the group G.

48. A compound of claim 44 wherein:

D is oxadiazolyl independently optionally substituted with one to two same or different members selected from the group G.

49. A compound of claim 43 wherein:

D is oxazolyl independently optionally substituted with one to two same or different members selected from the group G.

50. A compound of claim 44 wherein:

5

D is oxazolyl independently optionally substituted with one to two same or different members selected from the group G.

51. A compound of claim 43 wherein:

10

D is pyrazolyl independently optionally substituted with one to two same or different members selected from the group G.

52. A compound of claim 44 wherein:

15

D is pyrazolyl independently optionally substituted with one to two same or different members selected from the group G.

53. A compound of claim 6 wherein:

20

D is oxadiazolyl independently optionally substituted with one halogen or methyl group;

A is pyridyl or phenyl; and

25

B is heteroaryl optionally substituted with one or two groups F.

54. A compound of claim 6 wherein:

30 D is oxadiazolyl independently optionally substituted with one halogen or methyl group;

A is pyridyl or phenyl; and

B is imidazolyl, triazolyl, pyrazolyl, or tetrazolyl, each independently optionally substituted with one or two groups F.

55. A compound of claim 44 wherein:

5

D is oxadiazolyl independently optionally substituted with one to two same or different members selected from the group G.

56. A compound of claim 5 wherein:

10

B is $-C(O)NH$ -heteroaryl wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to two substituent selected from the group consisting of halogen, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, amino, $-NHC(O)-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl, -methoxy, $-COOH$, $-CH_2COOH$, $-CH_2CH_2COOH$, $-NH(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl and $-N(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl₂.

15

57. A compound of claim 6 wherein:

B is $-C(O)NH$ -heteroaryl wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to two substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, amino, $-NHC(O)-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl, -methoxy, $-COOH$, $-CH_2COOH$, $-CH_2CH_2COOH$, $-NH(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl and $-N(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl₂.

20

58. A compound of claim 7 wherein:

25 B is $-C(O)NH$ -heteroaryl wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to two substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, amino, $-NHC(O)-(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl, -methoxy, $-COOH$, $-CH_2COOH$, $-CH_2CH_2COOH$, $-NH(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl and $-N(C_1-C_6)$ alkyl₂.

59. A compound of claim 5 wherein:

B is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$ or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NHCH}_3$.

60. A compound of claim 6 wherein:

B is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$ or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NHCH}_3$.

61. A compound of claim 7 wherein:

B is $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH}_2$ or $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NHCH}_3$.

62. A compound of claim 4 wherein:

B is heteroaryl optionally substituted with one to two same or different substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6$ alkyl, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6$ alkoxy, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$ thioalkoxy, amino, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{H}$, $-\text{COOH}$, $-\text{COOC}_1\text{-C}_6$ alkyl, $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{ alkyl)}$, $-\text{NHS}(\text{O})_2\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{ alkyl)}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{-NH}_2$, $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NHMe}$, $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NMe}_2$, trifluoromethyl, $-\text{NR}^{26}\text{R}^{27}$, $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^{29}\text{R}^{30}$, -thiazolyl, pyrrolyl, piperazinyl, pyrrolidinyl and N-pyrrolidonyl, $-\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$, $-\text{NH}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{ alkyl})$ and $-\text{N}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{ alkyl})_2$.

63. A compound of claim 5 wherein:

- B is heteroaryl optionally substituted with one to two same or different substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₃ thioalkoxy, amino, -C(O)H, -COOH, -COOC₁-C₆ alkyl, -NHC(O)-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -NHS(O)₂-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -C(O)-NH₂, C(O)NHMe, C(O)NMe₂,
 5 trifluoromethyl, -NR²⁶R²⁷, C(O) NR²⁹R³⁰, -thiazolyl, pyrrolyl, piperazinyl, pyrrolidinyl and N-pyrrolidonyl, -CH₂COOH, -CH₂CH₂COOH, -NH(C₁-C₆ alkyl) and -N(C₁-C₆ alkyl)₂.

64. A compound of claim 6 wherein:

10

- B is heteroaryl optionally substituted with one to two same or different substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₃ thioalkoxy, amino, -C(O)H, -COOH, -COOC₁-C₆ alkyl, -NHC(O)-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -NHS(O)₂-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -C(O)-NH₂, C(O)NHMe, C(O)NMe₂,
 15 trifluoromethyl, -NR²⁶R²⁷, C(O) NR²⁹R³⁰, -thiazolyl, pyrrolyl, piperazinyl, pyrrolidinyl and N-pyrrolidonyl, -CH₂COOH, -CH₂CH₂COOH, -NH(C₁-C₆ alkyl) and -N(C₁-C₆ alkyl)₂.

65. A compound of claim 7 wherein:

20

- B is heteroaryl optionally substituted with one to two same or different substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₃ thioalkoxy, amino, -C(O)H, -COOH, -COOC₁-C₆ alkyl, -NHC(O)-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -NHS(O)₂-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -C(O)-NH₂, C(O)NHMe, C(O)NMe₂,
 25 trifluoromethyl, -NR²⁶R²⁷, C(O) NR²⁹R³⁰, -thiazolyl, pyrrolyl, piperazinyl, pyrrolidinyl and N-pyrrolidonyl, -CH₂COOH, -CH₂CH₂COOH, -NH(C₁-C₆ alkyl) and -N(C₁-C₆ alkyl)₂.

66. A compound of claim 3 wherein:

B is heteroaryl selected from the group consisting of thiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, isothiazolyl, imidazolyl, furyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, triazinyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and pyridyl; wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to two same or different substituents selected from the group F consisting of hydroxy, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₃ thioalkoxy, amino, -C(O)H, -COOH, -COOC₁-C₆ alkyl, -NHC(O)-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -NHS(O)₂-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -C(O)-NH₂, C(O)NHMe, C(O)NMe₂, -C(O)NR²⁹R³⁰, -NR²⁶R²⁷, -CH₂COOH, -CH₂CH₂COOH, -NH(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -N(C₁-C₆ alkyl)₂, heteroaryl, piperazinyl, pyrrolidinyl, N-pyrrolidonyl and trifluoromethyl.

67. A compound of claim 4 wherein:

B is heteroaryl selected from the group consisting of thiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, isothiazolyl, imidazolyl, furyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, triazinyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and pyridyl; wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to two same or different substituents selected from the group F consisting of hydroxy, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₃ thioalkoxy, amino, -C(O)H, -COOH, -COOC₁-C₆ alkyl, -NHC(O)-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -NHS(O)₂-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -C(O)-NH₂, C(O)NHMe, C(O)NMe₂, -C(O)NR²⁹R³⁰, -NR²⁶R²⁷, -CH₂COOH, -CH₂CH₂COOH, -NH(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -N(C₁-C₆ alkyl)₂, heteroaryl, piperazinyl, pyrrolidinyl, N-pyrrolidonyl and trifluoromethyl.

68. A compound of claim 5 wherein:

- B is heteroaryl selected from the group consisting of thiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, isothiazolyl, imidazolyl, furyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, triazinyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and pyridyl; wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to two same or different
- 5 substituents selected from the group F consisting of hydroxy, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₃ thioalkoxy, amino, -C(O)H, -COOH, -COOC₁-C₆ alkyl, -NHC(O)-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -NHS(O)₂-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -C(O)-NH₂, C(O)NHMe, C(O)NMe₂, -C(O)NR²⁹R³⁰, -NR²⁶R²⁷, -CH₂COOH, -CH₂CH₂COOH, -NH(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -N(C₁-C₆ alkyl)₂, heteroaryl, piperazinyl, pyrrolidinyl, N-
- 10 pyrrolidonyl and trifluoromethyl.

69. A compound of claim 6 wherein:

- B is heteroaryl selected from the group consisting of thiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, isothiazolyl, imidazolyl, furyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, triazinyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and pyridyl; wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to two same or different
- 15 substituents selected from the group F consisting of hydroxy, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₃ thioalkoxy, amino, -C(O)H, -COOH, -COOC₁-C₆ alkyl, -NHC(O)-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -NHS(O)₂-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -C(O)-NH₂, C(O)NHMe, C(O)NMe₂, -C(O)NR²⁹R³⁰, -NR²⁶R²⁷, -CH₂COOH, -CH₂CH₂COOH, -NH(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -N(C₁-C₆ alkyl)₂, heteroaryl, piperazinyl, pyrrolidinyl, N-
- 20 pyrrolidonyl and trifluoromethyl.

25 70. A compound of claim 7 wherein:

- B is heteroaryl selected from the group consisting of thiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, isothiazolyl, imidazolyl, furyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, triazinyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and pyridyl;
- 30 wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to two same or different substituents selected from the group F consisting of hydroxy, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₃ thioalkoxy, amino, -C(O)H, -COOH, -COOC₁-C₆ alkyl,

-NHC(O)-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -NHS(O)₂-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -C(O)-NH₂, C(O)NHMe, C(O)NMe₂, -C(O)NR²⁹R³⁰, -NR²⁶R²⁷, -CH₂COOH, -CH₂CH₂COOH, -NH(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -N(C₁-C₆ alkyl)₂, heteroaryl, piperazinyl, pyrrolidinyl, N-pyrrolidonyl and trifluoromethyl.

71. A compound of claim 5 wherein:

B is heteroaryl selected from the group consisting of thiazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, isothiazolyl, imidazolyl, furyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazolyl, triazinyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and pyridyl; wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to two same or different substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, C₁-C₆ alkyl, amino, methoxy, -NHC(O)-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -COOH, -CH₂COOH, -CH₂CH₂COOH, -C(O)-NH₂, C(O)NHMe, C(O)NMe₂ and -NR²⁶R²⁷.

72. A compound of claim 81 wherein:

B is heteroaryl selected from the group consisting of pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyrazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and pyridyl; wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to two same or different substituents selected from the group

consisting of halogen, hydroxy, C₁-C₆ alkyl, amino, methoxy, -NHC(O)-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -COOH, -CH₂COOH, -CH₂CH₂COOH, -C(O)-NH₂, C(O)NHMe, C(O)NMe₂ and -NR²⁶R²⁷.

5 73. A compound of claim 82 wherein:

B is heteroaryl selected from the group consisting of pyrazolyl, triazolyl, and tetrazolyl; wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to two same or different substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy,
 10 C₁-C₆ alkyl, amino, methoxy, -NHC(O)-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -COOH, -CH₂COOH, -CH₂CH₂COOH, -C(O)-NH₂, C(O)NHMe, C(O)NMe₂ and -NR²⁶R²⁷.

74. A compound of claim 83 wherein:

15 B is heteroaryl selected from the group consisting of pyrazolyl; wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to two same or different substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, C₁-C₆ alkyl, amino, methoxy, -NHC(O)-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -COOH, -CH₂COOH, -CH₂CH₂COOH, -C(O)-NH₂, C(O)NHMe, C(O)NMe₂ and -NR²⁶R²⁷.

20

75. A compound of claim 83 wherein:

B is heteroaryl selected from the group consisting of triazolyl; wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to two same or different substituents selected from
 25 the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy, C₁-C₆ alkyl, amino, methoxy, -NHC(O)-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -COOH, -CH₂COOH, -CH₂CH₂COOH, -C(O)-NH₂, C(O)NHMe, C(O)NMe₂ and -NR²⁶R²⁷.

76. A compound of claim 83 wherein:

30

B is heteroaryl selected from the group consisting of tetrazolyl; wherein said heteroaryl is optionally substituted with one to two same or different substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen, hydroxy,

C₁-C₆ alkyl, amino, methoxy, -NHC(O)-(C₁-C₆ alkyl), -COOH, -CH₂COOH, -CH₂CH₂COOH, -C(O)-NH₂, C(O)NHMe, C(O)NMe₂ and -NR²⁶R²⁷.

77. A compound selected from Examples 1-121.

78. A pharmaceutical formulation which comprises an antiviral effective amount of a compound of Formula I, including pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, as claimed in any of claims 1-8, 10-13, 15-22, 25-50, 53, 64, 66-68, 70-73, 75-79, 81-87, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

79. The pharmaceutical formulation of claim 88, useful for treating infection by HIV, which additionally comprises an antiviral effective amount of an AIDS treatment agent selected from the group consisting of:

- (a) an AIDS antiviral agent;
- (b) an anti-infective agent;
- (c) an immunomodulator; and
- (d) HIV entry inhibitors.

80. A method for treating mammals infected with a virus, comprising administering to said mammal an antiviral effective amount of a compound of Formula I, including pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, as claimed in any of claims 1-8, 10-13, 15-22, 25-50, 53, 64, 66-68, 70-73, 75-79, 81-87.

81. The method of claim 90, comprising administering to said mammal an antiviral effective amount of a compound of Formula I in combination with an antiviral effective amount of an AIDS treatment agent selected from the group consisting of: an AIDS antiviral agent, an anti-infective agent, an immunomodulator and HIV entry inhibitors.

82. The method of claim 90 wherein the virus is HIV.

83. The method of claim 91 wherein the virus is HIV.